NED MOHAN

Power Electronics
Interface
Converter
Source
Load
Controller

power ElectronicS

A FIRST COURSE

VISIT…

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Power Electronics

A First Course

Power Electronics

A First Course

NED MOHAN
Oscar A. Schott Professor of Power Electronics and Systems
Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, MN
USA

WILEY
John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

VP & PUBLISHER:	Don Fowley
EDITOR:	Dan Sayre
PROJECT EDITOR:	Nithyanand Rao
EDITORIAL ASSISTANT:	Charlotte Cerf
MARKETING MANAGER:	Christopher Ruel
MARKETING ASSISTANT:	Ashley Tomeck
DESIGNER:	James O'Shea
SENIOR PRODUCTION MANAGER:	Janis Soo
SENIOR PRODUCTION EDITOR:	Joyce Poh

PSpice is a registered trademark of the OrCAD Corporation.
SIMULINK is a registerd trademark of The Mathworks, Inc.

This book was set in 10/12 TimesNewRoman by MPS Limited, a Macmillan Company, Chennai and printed and bound by Hamilton Printing. The cover was printed by Hamilton Printing.

This book is printed on acid free paper.

Founded in 1807, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. has been a valued source of knowledge and understanding for more than 200 years, helping people around the world meet their needs and fulfill their aspirations. Our company is built on a foundation of principles that include responsibility to the communities we serve and where we live and work. In 2008, we launched a Corporate Citizenship Initiative, a global effort to address the environmental, social, economic, and ethical challenges we face in our business. Among the issues we are addressing are carbon impact, paper specifications and procurement, ethical conduct within our business and among our vendors, and community and charitable support. For more information, please visit our website: www.wiley.com/go/citizenship.

Copyright © 2012 John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, website www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201)748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, website http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Evaluation copies are provided to qualified academics and professionals for review purposes only, for use in their courses during the next academic year. These copies are licensed and may not be sold or transferred to a third party. Upon completion of the review period, please return the evaluation copy to Wiley. Return instructions and a free of charge return mailing label are available at www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel. If you have chosen to adopt this textbook for use in your course, please accept this book as your complimentary desk copy. Outside of the United States, please contact your local sales representative.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Mohan, Ned.
Power electronics : a first course / Ned Mohan.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-1-118-07480-0 (hardback : acid free paper)
1. Power electronics—Textbooks. 2. Electric current converters—Textbooks. I. Title.
TK7881.15.M638 2012
621.31′7—dc23
2011029128

Printed in the United States of America
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

To my family and friends

CONTENTS

PREFACE **xiii**

CHAPTER 1 **POWER ELECTRONICS: AN ENABLING TECHNOLOGY** **1**

1.1 Introduction to Power Electronics 1
1.2 Applications and the Role of Power Electronics 2
1.3 Energy and the Environment: Role of Power Electronics in Providing Sustainable Electric Energy 4
1.4 Need for High Efficiency and High Power Density 8
1.5 Structure of Power Electronics Interface 9
1.6 Voltage-Link-Structure 11
1.7 Recent and Potential Advancements 16
References 16
Problems 17

CHAPTER 2 **DESIGN OF SWITCHING POWER-POLES** **21**

2.1 Power Transistors and Power Diodes 21
2.2 Selection of Power Transistors 22
2.3 Selection of Power Diodes 24
2.4 Switching Characteristics and Power Losses in Power-Poles 25
2.5 Justifying Switches and Diodes as Ideal 30
2.6 Design Considerations 30
2.7 The PWM IC 33
References 33
Problems 34
Appendix 2A Diode Reverse-Recovery and Power Losses 35

CHAPTER 3 **SWITCH-MODE DC-DC CONVERTERS: SWITCHING ANALYSIS, TOPOLOGY SELECTION AND DESIGN** **38**

3.1 DC-DC Converters 38
3.2 Switching Power-Pole in DC Steady State 38
3.3 Simplifying Assumptions 42
3.4 Common Operating Principles 43

3.5 Buck Converter Switching Analysis in DC Steady State 43
3.6 Boost Converter Switching Analysis in DC Steady State 45
3.7 Buck-Boost Converter Analysis in DC Steady State 50
3.8 Topology Selection 56
3.9 Worst-Case Design 57
3.10 Synchronous-Rectified Buck Converter for Very Low Output Voltages 57
3.11 Interleaving of Converters 58
3.12 Regulation of DC-DC Converters by PWM 58
3.13 Dynamic Average Representation of Converters in CCM 59
3.14 Bi-Directional Switching Power-Pole 61
3.15 Discontinuous-Conduction Mode (DCM) 62
References 68
Problems 68

CHAPTER 4 DESIGNING FEEDBACK CONTROLLERS IN SWITCH-MODE DC POWER SUPPLIES 74
4.1 Introduction and Objectives of Feedback Control 74
4.2 Review of Linear Control Theory 75
4.3 Linearization of Various Transfer Function Blocks 77
4.4 Feedback Controller Design in Voltage-Mode Control 83
4.5 Peak-Current Mode Control 86
4.6 Feedback Controller Design in DCM 91
References 93
Problems 93
Appendix 4A Bode Plots of Transfer Functions with Poles and Zeros 94
Appendix 4B Transfer Functions in Continuous Conduction Mode (CCM) (on accompanying website) 97
Appendix 4C Derivation of Parameters of the Controller Transfer Functions (on accompanying website: www.wiley.com/college/mohan) 97

CHAPTER 5 RECTIFICATION OF UTILITY INPUT USING DIODE RECTIFIERS 98
5.1 Introduction 98
5.2 Distortion and Power Factor 99
5.3 Classifying the “Front-End” of Power Electronic Systems 107
5.4 Diode-Rectifier Bridge “Front-Ends” 107

5.5 Means to Avoid Transient Inrush Currents at Starting 113
5.6 Front-Ends with Bi-Directional Power Flow 114
Reference 114
Problems 114

CHAPTER 6 POWER-FACTOR-CORRECTION (PFC) CIRCUITS AND DESIGNING THE FEEDBACK CONTROLLER 116
6.1 Introduction 116
6.2 Operating Principle of Single-Phase PFCs 116
6.3 Control of PFCs 119
6.4 Designing the Inner Average-Current-Control Loop 120
6.5 Designing the Outer Voltage-Control Loop 122
6.6 Example of Single-Phase PFC Systems 124
6.7 Simulation Results 125
6.8 Feedforward of the Input Voltage 125
6.9 Other Control Methods for PFCs 125
References 127
Problems 127
Appendix 6A Proving that $\frac{\hat{I}_{s3}}{\hat{I}_{L2}} = \frac{1}{2}$ 128
Appendix 6B Proving that $\frac{\tilde{v}_d}{\tilde{i}_L}(s) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\frac{R/2}{1+s(R/2)C}$ 129

CHAPTER 7 MAGNETIC CIRCUIT CONCEPTS 130
7.1 Ampere-Turns and Flux 130
7.2 Inductance L 131
7.3 Faraday's Law: Induced Voltage in a Coil Due to Time-Rate of Change of Flux Linkage 133
7.4 Leakage and Magnetizing Inductances 134
7.5 Transformers 136
Reference 139
Problems 139

CHAPTER 8 SWITCH-MODE DC POWER SUPPLIES 141
8.1 Applications of Switch-Mode DC Power Supplies 141
8.2 Need for Electrical Isolation 142
8.3 Classification of Transformer-Isolated DC-DC Converters 142
8.4 Flyback Converters 142
8.5 Forward Converters 145
8.6 Full-Bridge Converters 148

8.7 Half-Bridge and Push-Pull Converters 152
8.8 Practical Considerations 152
Reference 152
Problems 153

CHAPTER 9 DESIGN OF HIGH-FREQUENCY INDUCTORS AND TRANSFORMERS 155
9.1 Introduction 155
9.2 Basics of Magnetic Design 155
9.3 Inductor and Transformer Construction 156
9.4 Area-Product Method 156
9.5 Design Example of an Inductor 159
9.6 Design Example of a Transformer for a Forward Converter 161
9.7 Thermal Considerations 161
References 161
Problems 162

CHAPTER 10 SOFT-SWITCHING IN DC-DC CONVERTERS AND CONVERTERS FOR INDUCTION HEATING AND COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS 163
10.1 Introduction 163
10.2 Hard-Switching in Switching Power-Poles 163
10.3 Soft-Switching in Switching Power-Poles 165
10.4 Inverters for Induction Heating and Compact Fluorescent Lamps 169
References 170
Problems 170

CHAPTER 11 APPLICATIONS OF SWITCH-MODE POWER ELECTRONICS IN MOTOR DRIVES, UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLIES, AND POWER SYSTEMS 172
11.1 Introduction 172
11.2 Electric Motor Drives 172
11.3 Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS) 184
11.4 Utility Applications of Switch-Mode Power Electronics 185
References 187
Problems 187

CHAPTER 12 SYNTHESIS OF DC AND LOW-FREQUENCY SINUSOIDAL AC VOLTAGES FOR MOTOR DRIVES, UPS AND POWER SYSTEMS APPLICATIONS 189

12.1 Introduction 189
12.2 Bi-Directional Switching Power-Pole as the Building-Block 190
12.3 Converters for DC Motor Drives ($-V_d < \overline{v}_o < V_d$) 194
12.4 Synthesis of Low-Frequency AC 200
12.5 Single-Phase Inverters 201
12.6 Three-Phase Inverters 204
12.7 Multilevel Inverters 212
12.8 Converters for Bi-Directional Power Flow 213
12.9 Matrix Converters (Direct Link System) 214
References 221
Problems 221
Appendix 12A Space Vector Pulse-Width-Modulation (SV-PWM) 223

CHAPTER 13 THYRISTOR CONVERTERS 230

13.1 Introduction 230
13.2 Thyristors (SCRs) 230
13.3 Single-Phase, Phase-Controlled Thyristor Converters 232
13.4 Three-Phase, Full-Bridge Thyristor Converters 237
13.5 Current-Link Systems 243
Reference 244
Problems 245

CHAPTER 14 UTILITY APPLICATIONS OF POWER ELECTRONICS 247

14.1 Introduction 247
14.2 Power Semiconductor Devices and Their Capabilities 248
14.3 Categorizing Power Electronic Systems 248
14.4 Distributed Generation (DG) Applications 250
14.5 Power Electronic Loads 255
14.6 Power Quality Solutions 255
14.7 Transmission and Distribution (T&D) Applications 257
References 261
Problems 261

PREFACE

Role of Power Electronics in Providing Sustainable Electric Energy

As discussed in the introductory chapter of this textbook, power electronics is an enabling technology for powering information technology and making factory automation feasible. In addition, power electronics has a crucial role to play in providing sustainable electric energy. Most scientists now believe that carbon-based fuels for energy production contribute to climate change, which is a serious threat facing our civilization. In the United States, the Department of Energy reports that approximately 40% of all the energy consumed is first converted into electricity. Potentially, use of electric and plug-in hybrid cars, high speed rails, and so on may increase this to even 60%. Therefore, it is essential that we generate electricity from renewable sources such as wind and solar, which at present represent only slightly over 4%, build the next-generation smarter and robust grid to utilize renewable resources often in remote locations, and use electricity in more energy-efficient ways. Undoubtedly, using electricity efficiently and generating it from renewable sources are the twin pillars of sustainability, and as described in this textbook, power electronic systems are a key to them both!

This textbook focuses on *Power Electronic Systems* as one of the topics in an integrated Electric Energy Systems curriculum consisting of *Power Electronics*, *Power Systems* and *Electric Machines and Drives*. This textbook follows a top-down systems-level approach to *Power Electronics* to *highlight* interrelationships between these subfields within this curriculum, and is intended to cover both the fundamentals and practical design in a single-semester course.

This textbook follows a building-block approach to power electronics that allows an in-depth discussion of several important topics that are left out in a conventional course, for example, designing feedback control, power-factor-correction circuits, soft-switching, and Space-Vector PWM, which is a PWM technique, far superior to Sine-PWM, to name a few. Topics in this book are carefully sequenced to maintain continuity and student interest throughout the course.

In a fast-paced course with proper student background, this book can be covered from front-to-back in one semester. However, the material is arranged in such a way that an instructor, to accommodate the students' background, can either omit an entire topic or cover it quickly to provide just an overview using the accompanying slides, without interrupting the flow.

1

POWER ELECTRONICS: AN ENABLING TECHNOLOGY

Power electronic systems are essential for energy sustainability, which can be defined as meeting our present needs without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. Using renewable energy for generating electricity, and increasing the efficiency of transmitting and consuming it, are the twin pillars of sustainability. Some of the applications of power electronics in doing so are as mentioned below:

- Harnessing renewable energy such as wind energy, solar energy using photovoltaics, and so on.
- Storage of electricity in batteries and flywheels to offset the variability in the electricity generated by renewables.
- Increasing the efficiency of transmitting electricity.
- Increasing efficiency in consuming the electricity in motor-driven systems and lighting, for example.

This introductory chapter highlights all the points mentioned above, which are discussed in further detail, in the context of describing the fundamentals of power electronics, in the subsequent chapters.

1.1 INTRODUCTION TO POWER ELECTRONICS

Power electronics is an enabling technology, providing the needed interface between an electrical source and an electrical load, as depicted in Figure 1.1 [1]. The electrical source and the electrical load can, and often do, differ in frequency, voltage amplitudes, and the number of phases. The power electronics interface facilitates the transfer of power from the source to the load by converting voltages and currents from one form to another, in which it is possible for the source and load to reverse roles. The controller shown in Figure 1.1 allows management of the power transfer process in which the conversion of voltages and currents should be achieved with as high energy-efficiency and high power density as possible. Adjustable-speed electric drives, for example in wind turbines, represent an important application of power electronics.

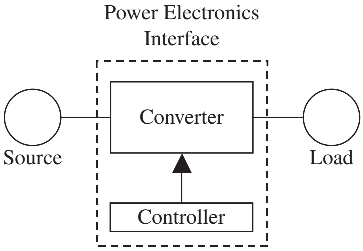


FIGURE 1.1 Power electronics interface between the source and load.

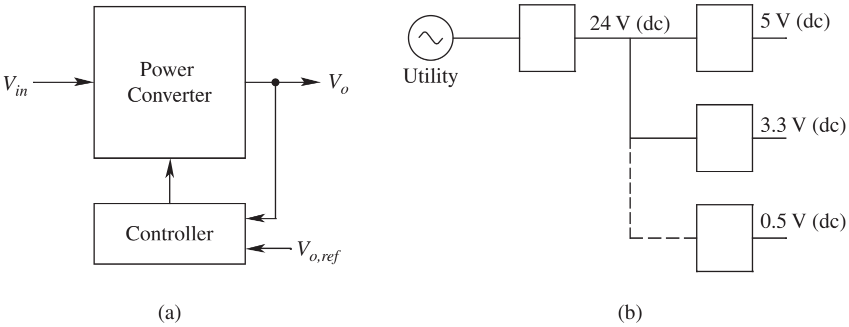


FIGURE 1.2 Regulated low-voltage dc power supplies.

1.2 APPLICATIONS AND THE ROLE OF POWER ELECTRONICS

Power electronics and drives encompass a wide array of applications. A few important applications and their role are described below.

1.2.1 Powering the Information Technology

Most of the consumer electronics equipment such as personal computers (PCs) and entertainment systems supplied from the utility mains need very low dc voltages internally. They, therefore, require power electronics in the form of switch-mode dc power supplies for converting the input line voltage into a regulated low dc voltage, as shown in Figure 1.2a. Figure 1.2b shows the distributed architecture typically used in computers in which the incoming ac voltage from the utility is converted into dc voltage, for example, at 24 V. This semi-regulated voltage is distributed within the computer where on-board power supplies in logic-level printed circuit boards convert this 24 V dc input voltage to a lower voltage, for example 5 V dc, which is very tightly regulated. Very large-scale integration and higher logic circuitry speed require operating voltages much lower than 5 V, hence 3.3 V, 1 V, and eventually, 0.5 V levels would be needed.

Many devices such as cell phones operate from low battery voltages with one or two battery cells as inputs. However, the electronic circuitry within them requires higher

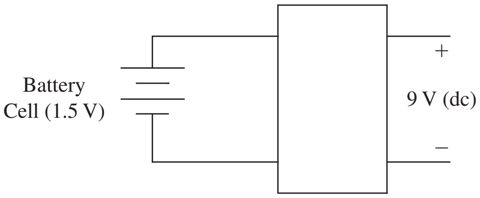

Battery
Cell (1.5 V)
+
9 V (dc)
–

FIGURE 1.3 Boost dc-dc converter needed in cell operated equipment.

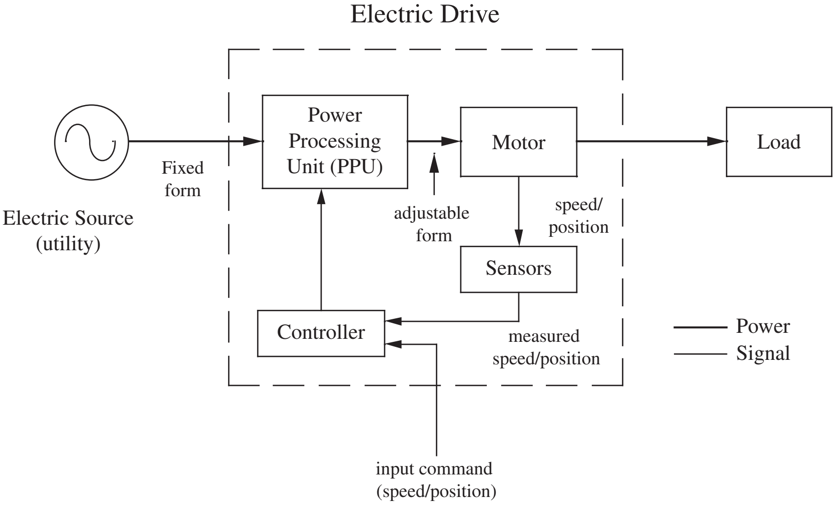

Electric Drive
Power
Processing
Unit (PPU)
Motor
Load
Fixed
form
Electric Source
(utility)
adjustable
form
speed/
position
Sensors
Controller
measured
speed/position
Power
Signal
input command
(speed/position)

FIGURE 1.4 Block diagram of adjustable-speed drives.

voltages, thus necessitating a circuit to boost input dc to a higher dc voltage as shown in the block diagram of Figure 1.3.

1.2.2 Robotics and Flexible Production

Robotics and flexible production are now essential to industrial competitiveness in a global economy. These applications require adjustable-speed drives for precise speed and position control. Figure 1.4 shows the block diagram of adjustable-speed drives in which the ac input from a 1-phase or a 3-phase utility source is at the line frequency of 50 or 60 Hz. The role of the power electronics interface, as a power-processing unit, is to provide the required voltage to the motor. In the case of a dc motor, dc voltage is supplied with adjustable magnitude that controls the motor speed. In the case of an ac motor, the power electronics interface provides sinusoidal ac voltages with adjustable amplitude and frequency to control the motor speed. In certain cases, the power electronics interface may be required to allow bi-directional power flow through it, between the utility and the motor-load.

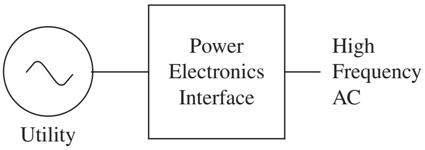


FIGURE 1.5 Power electronics interface required for induction heating.

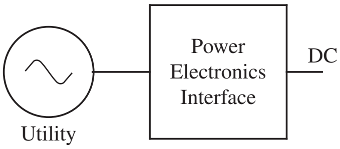


FIGURE 1.6 Power electronics interface required for electric welding.

Induction heating and electric welding, shown in Figure 1.5 and Figure 1.6 by their block diagrams are other important industrial applications of power electronics for flexible production.

1.3 ENERGY AND THE ENVIRONMENT: ROLE OF POWER ELECTRONICS IN PROVIDING SUSTAINABLE ELECTRIC ENERGY

As mentioned in the preface of this textbook, power electronics is an enabling technology in providing sustainable electric energy. Most scientists now believe that carbon-based fuels for energy production contribute to climate change, which is threatening our civilization. In the United States, the Department of Energy reports that approximately 40% of all the energy consumed is first converted into electricity. Potentially, use of electric and plug-in hybrid cars, high speed rails, and so on may increase this to even 60%. Therefore, it is essential that we generate electricity from renewable sources such as wind and solar that, at present, represent only slightly over 4%, build the next-generation smarter grid to utilize renewable resources often in remote locations, and use electricity in more energy-efficient ways. **Undoubtedly, using electricity efficiently and generating it from renewable sources are the twin pillars of sustainability, and power electronic systems discussed in this textbook are a key to them both!**

1.3.1 Energy Conservation

It's an old adage: a penny saved is a penny earned. Not only does energy conservation lead to financial savings, it also helps the environment. The pie chart in Figure 1.7 shows the percentages of electricity usage in the United States for various applications. The potentials for energy conservation in these applications are discussed below.

1.3.1.1 Electric-Motor Driven Systems

Figure 1.7 shows that electric motors, including their applications in heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC), are responsible for consuming one-half to two-thirds of all the electricity generated. Traditionally, motor-driven systems run at a nearly constant speed and their output, for example, flow rate in a pump, is controlled by wasting a

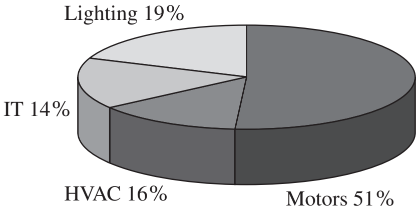


FIGURE 1.7 Percentage use of electricity in various sectors in the U.S.

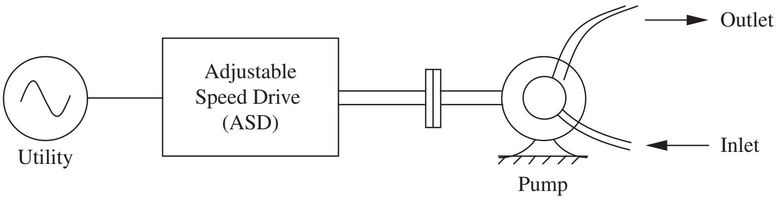


FIGURE 1.8 Role of adjustable-speed drives in pump-driven systems.

portion of the input energy across a throttling valve. This waste is eliminated by an adjustable-speed electric drive, as shown in Figure 1.8, by efficiently controlling the motor speed, hence the pump speed, by means of power electronics [2].

One out of three new homes in the United States now uses an electric heat pump, in which an adjustable-speed drive can reduce energy consumption by as much as 30% [3] by eliminating on-off cycling of the compressor and running the heat pump at a speed that matches the thermal load of the building. The same is true for air conditioners.

A Department of Energy report [4] estimates that by operating all these motor-driven systems more efficiently in the United States could annually save electricity equivalent to the annual electricity usage by the entire state of New York!

1.3.1.2 Lighting

As shown in the pie chart in Figure 1.7, approximately one-fifth of electricity produced is used for lighting. Fluorescent lights are more efficient than incandescent lights by a factor of three to four. The efficiency of fluorescent lights can be further improved by using high-frequency power electronic ballasts that supply 30 kHz to 40 kHz to the light bulb, as shown by the block diagram in Figure 1.9, further increasing the efficiency by approximately 15%. Compared to incandescent light bulbs, high-frequency compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs) improve efficiency by a factor of nearly four, last much longer (several thousand hours more), and their cost, although high in the past has become highly affordable.

At present, there is a great deal of excitement about LED (Light-Emitting Diode) lighting. However, LED lights must have higher efficiencies and longer lifetime to offset their higher initial cost.

1.3.1.3 Transportation

Electric drives offer huge potential for energy conservation in transportation. While efforts to introduce commercially-viable Electric Vehicles (EVs) continue with progress

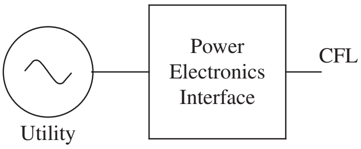


FIGURE 1.9 Power electronics interface required for CFL.

FIGURE 1.10 Hybrid electric vehicles with much higher gas mileage.

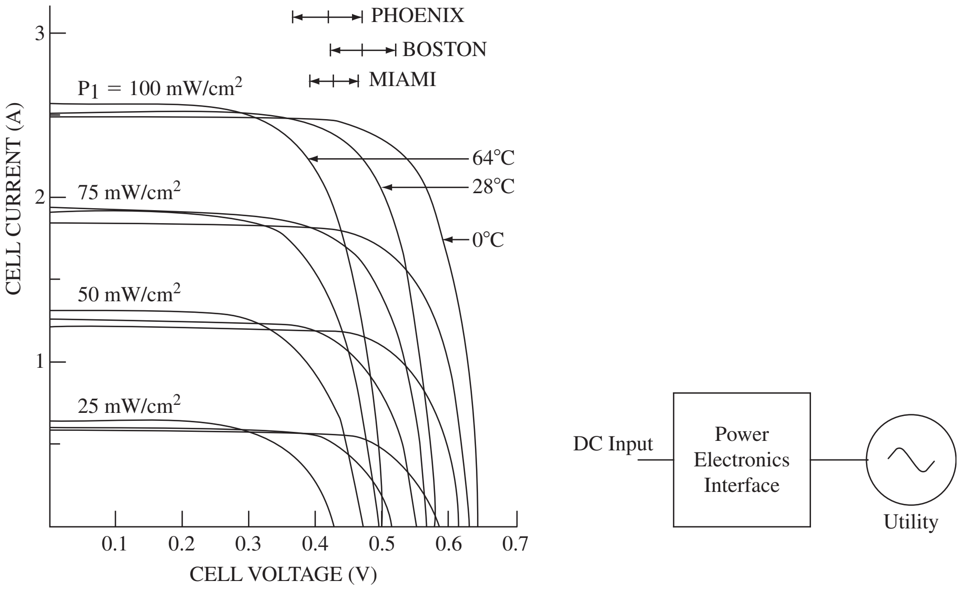
in battery [5] and fuel cell technologies [6] being reported, hybrid electric vehicles (HEVs) are sure to make a huge impact [7]. According to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, the estimated gas mileage of the hybrid-electrical vehicle shown in Figure 1.10 in combined city and highway driving is 48 miles per gallon [8]. This is in comparison to the gas mileage of 22.1 miles per gallon for an average passenger car in the United States in the year 2001 [9]. Since automobiles are estimated to account for about 20% of emission of all CO_2 [10] that is a greenhouse gas, doubling the gas mileage of automobiles would have an enormous positive impact.

Conventional automobiles need power electronics for various applications [11]. EVs and HEVs, of course, need power electronics in the form of adjustable-speed electric drives. Add to automobiles other transportation systems, such as light rail, fly-by-wire planes, all-electric ships, and drive-by-wire automobiles, and transportation represents a major application area of power electronics.

1.3.2 Renewable Energy

Clean and renewable energy that is environmentally friendly can be derived from the sun and the wind. In photovoltaic systems, solar cells produce dc, with an *i-v* characteristic shown in Figure 1.11a that requires a power electronics interface to transfer power to the utility system, as shown in Figure 1.11b.

Wind is the fastest-growing energy resource with enormous potential [12]. Figure 1.12 shows the need of power electronics in wind-electric systems to interface variable-frequency ac to the line-frequency ac voltages of the utility grid.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 1.11 Photovoltaic systems.

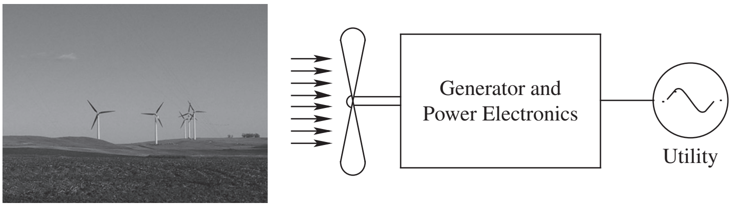


FIGURE 1.12 Wind-electric systems.

1.3.3 Utility Applications of Power Electronics

Applications of power electronics and electric drives in power systems are growing rapidly. In distributed generation, power electronics is needed to interface nonconventional energy sources such as wind, photovoltaic, and fuel cells to the utility grid. Use of power electronics allows control over the flow of power on transmission lines, an attribute that is especially significant in a deregulated utility environment. Also, the security and the efficiency aspects of power systems operation necessitate increased use of power electronics in utility applications.

Uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) are used for critical loads that must not be interrupted during power outages. The power electronics interface for UPS, shown in Figure 1.13, has line-frequency voltages at both ends, although the number of phases may be different, and a means for energy storage is provided usually by batteries, which supply power to the load during the utility outage.

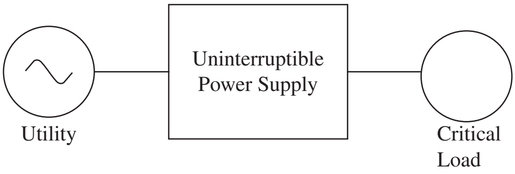


FIGURE 1.13 Uninterruptible power supply (UPS) system.

1.3.4 Strategic Space and Defense Applications

Power electronics is essential for space exploration and for interplanetary travel. Defense has always been an important application, but it has become critical in the post-September 11th world. Power electronics will play a huge role in tanks, ships, and planes in which replacement of hydraulic drives by electric drives can offer significant cost, weight and reliability advantages.

1.4 NEED FOR HIGH EFFICIENCY AND HIGH POWER DENSITY

Power electronic systems must be energy efficient and reliable, have a high power density thus reducing their size and weight, and be low cost to make the overall system economically feasible. High energy efficiency is important for several reasons: it lowers operating costs by avoiding the cost of wasted energy, contributes less to global warming, and reduces the need for cooling (by heat sinks discussed later in this book) therefore increasing power density.

We can easily show the relationship in a power electronic system between the energy efficiency, η, and the power density. The energy efficiency of a system in Figure 1.14a is defined in Equation 1.1 in terms of the output power P_o and the power loss P_{loss} within the system as,

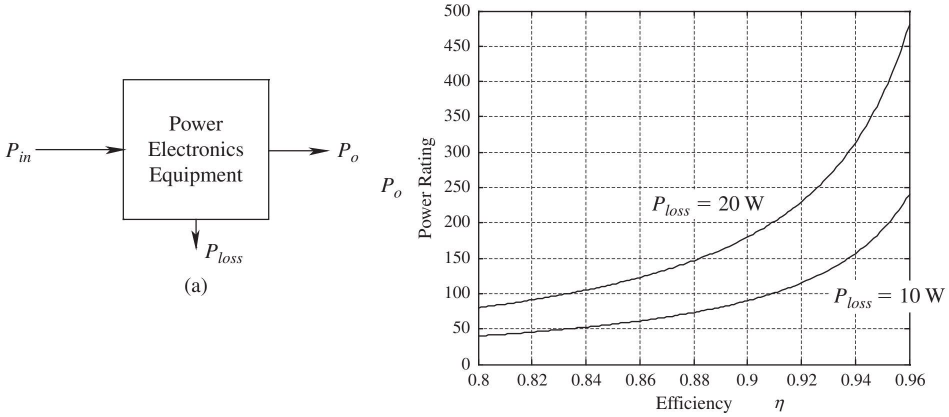
$$\eta = \frac{P_o}{P_o + P_{loss}} \tag{1.1}$$

Equation 1.1 can be rewritten for the output power in terms of the efficiency and the power loss as,

$$P_o = \frac{\eta}{1-\eta} P_{loss} \tag{1.2}$$

Using Equation 1.2, the output power rating is plotted in Figure 1.14b, as a function of efficiency, for two values of P_{loss}.

In power electronics equipment, the cooling system is designed to transfer dissipated power, as heat, without allowing the internal temperatures to exceed certain limits. Therefore for an equipment package designed to handle certain power loss dissipation, the plots in Figure 1.14b based on Equation 1.2 show that increasing the conversion efficiency from 84% to 94%, for example, increases the power output capability, same as the power rating, of that equipment by a factor of three. This could mean an increase in the power density, which is the power rating divided by the volume of the package, by approximately the same factor. This is further illustrated by the example on the following page.



(a)

(b)

FIGURE 1.14 Power output capability as a function of efficiency.

Example 1.1
A power electronics package is designed to handle 200 W of power dissipation. Compare the two values of the output power capability if the conversion efficiency is increased from 89% to 94%.

Solution In this example, $P_{loss} = 200\,\text{W}$. Using Equation 1.2, at $\eta = 89\%$, $P_o = \frac{\eta}{1-\eta} P_{loss} = \frac{0.89}{1-0.89} \times 200 \simeq 1.6\,\text{kW}$, and at $\eta = 94\%$, $P_o = \frac{0.94}{1-0.94} \times 200 \simeq 3.13\,\text{kW}$.

This example shows the importance of high energy conversion efficiency, where the power output capability and the power density (in watts per unit volume) of this package are nearly doubled by increasing the efficiency from 89% to 94%.

1.5 STRUCTURE OF POWER ELECTRONICS INTERFACE

By reviewing the role of power electronics in various applications discussed earlier, we can summarize that a power electronics interface is needed to efficiently control the transfer of power between dc-dc, dc-ac, and ac-ac systems. In general, the power is supplied by the utility and hence, as depicted by the block diagram of Figure 1.15, the line-frequency ac is at one end. At the other end, one of the following is synthesized: adjustable magnitude dc, sinusoidal ac of adjustable frequency and amplitude, or high frequency ac as in the case of compact fluorescent lamps (CFLs) and induction heating. Applications that do not require utility interconnection can be considered as the subset of the block diagram shown in Figure 1.15.

1.5.1 Voltage-Link Structure

To provide the needed functionality to the interface in Figure 1.15, the transistors and diodes, which can block voltage only of one polarity, have led to a commonly used voltage-link-structure shown in Figure 1.16.

This structure consists of two separate converters, one on the utility side and the other on the load side. The dc ports of these two converters are connected to each other

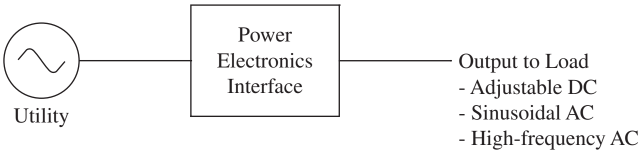


FIGURE 1.15 Block diagram of power electronic interface.

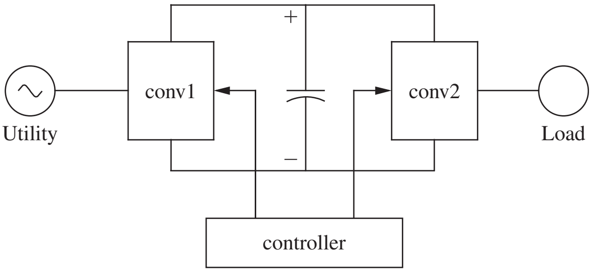


FIGURE 1.16 Voltage-link structure of power electronics interface.

with a parallel capacitor forming a dc-link, across which the voltage polarity does not reverse, thus allowing unipolar voltage-blocking transistors to be used within these converters.

In the structure of Figure 1.16, the capacitor in parallel with the two converters forms a dc voltage-link, hence this structure is called a *voltage-link* (or a *voltage-source*) structure. This structure is used in a very large power range, from a few tens of watts to several megawatts, even extending to hundreds of megawatts in utility applications. Therefore, we will mainly focus on this voltage-link structure in this book.

1.5.2 Current-Link Structure

At extremely high power levels, usually in utility-related applications, which we will discuss in the last two chapters in this book, it may be advantageous to use a *current-link* (also called *current-source*) structure, where, as shown in Figure 1.17, an inductor in series between the two converters acts as a current-link. These converters generally consist of thyristors and the current in them, as discussed in Chapter 14, is “commutated” from one ac phase to another by means of the ac line voltages.

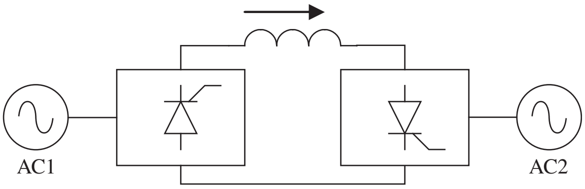


FIGURE 1.17 Current-link structure of power electronics interface.

1.5.3 Matrix Converters (Direct-Link Structure) [13]

Lately in certain applications, a *matrix converter* structure as shown in Figure 1.18 is being reevaluated, where theoretically there is no energy storage element between the input and the output sides. Therefore, we can consider it to be a direct-link structure where input ports are connected to output ports by switches that can carry currents in both directions when *on*, and block voltages of either polarity when *off*. A brief discussion of matrix converters and their control is provided in Chapter 12 of this book.

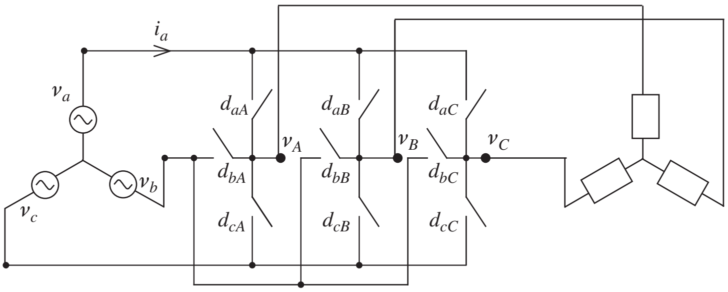


FIGURE 1.18 Matrix converter structure of power electronics interface [13].

1.6 VOLTAGE-LINK-STRUCTURE

In the voltage-link structure shown in Figure 1.16 and repeated in Figure 1.19, the role of the utility-side converter is to convert line-frequency utility voltages to an unregulated dc voltage. This can be done by a diode-rectifier circuit like that discussed in basic electronics courses, and also discussed in Chapter 5 of this textbook. However, the power quality concerns often lead to a different structure, discussed in Chapter 6. At present, we will focus our attention on the load-side converter in the voltage-link structure, where a dc voltage is applied as the input on one end, as shown in Figure 1.19.

Applications dictate the functionality needed of the load-side converter. Based on the desired output of the converter, we can group these functionalities as follows:

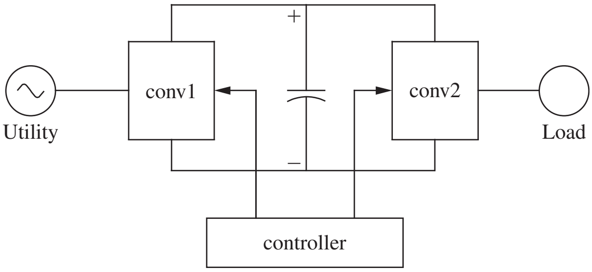


FIGURE 1.19 Load-side converter in a voltage-source structure.

Group 1

- Adjustable dc or a low-frequency sinusoidal ac output in
  - dc and ac motor drives
  - uninterruptible power supplies
  - regulated dc power supplies without electrical isolation
  - utility-related applications

Group 2

- High-frequency ac in
  - compact fluorescent lamps
  - induction heating
  - regulated dc power supplies where the dc output voltage needs to be electrically isolated from the input, and the load-side converter internally produces high-frequency ac, which is passed through a high-frequency transformer and then rectified into dc.

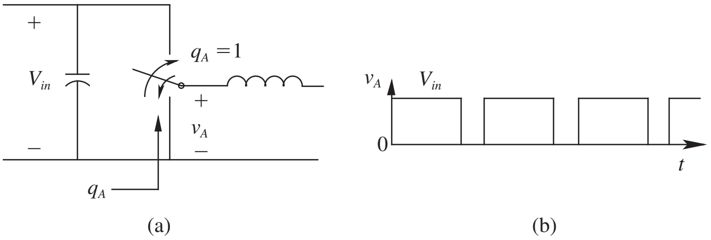
We will discuss converters used in applications belonging to both groups. However, we will begin with converters for group-1 applications where the load-side voltages are dc or low-frequency ac.

1.6.1 Switch-Mode Conversion: Switching Power-Pole as the Building Block

Achieving high energy-efficiency for applications belonging to either group mentioned above requires switch-mode conversion, where in contrast to linear power electronics, transistors (and diodes) are operated as switches, either on or off.

This switch-mode conversion can be explained by its basic building block, a switching power-pole *A*, as shown in Figure 1.20a. It effectively consists of a bi-positional switch, which forms a two-port: a voltage-port across a capacitor with a voltage V_{in} that cannot change instantaneously, and a current-port due to the series inductor through which the current cannot change instantaneously. For now, we will assume the switch is ideal with two positions: up or down, dictated by a switching signal q_A which takes on two values: 1 and 0, respectively. The practical aspects of implementing this bi-positional switch is what we will consider in the next chapter.

The bi-positional switch "chops" the input dc voltage V_{in} into a train of high-frequency voltage pulses, shown by v_A waveform in Figure 1.20b, by switching up or down at a high repetition rate, called the switching frequency f_s. Controlling the pulse width within a switching cycle allows control over the switching-cycle-averaged value of



(a) (b)

FIGURE 1.20 Switching power-pole as the building block in converters.

the pulsed output, and this pulse-width modulation forms the basis of synthesizing adjustable dc and low-frequency sinusoidal ac outputs, as described in the next section. High-frequency pulses are clearly needed in applications such as compact fluorescent lamps, induction heating, and internally in dc power supplies where electrical isolation is achieved by means of a high-frequency transformer. A switch-mode converter consists of one or more such switching power-poles.

1.6.2 Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) of the Switching Power-Pole (constant f_s)

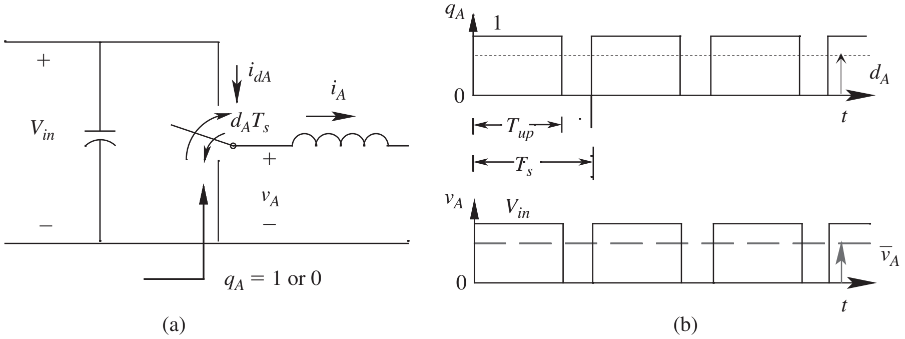
For the applications in Group 1, the objective of the switching power-pole redrawn in Figure 1.21a is to synthesize the output voltage such that its *switching-cycle-average* is of the desired value: dc or ac that varies sinusoidally at a low-frequency, compared to f_s. Switching at a constant switching-frequency f_s produces a train of voltage pulses in Figure 1.21b that repeat with a constant switching time-period T_s, equal to $1/f_s$.

Within each switching cycle with the time-period $T_s(=1/f_s)$ in Figure 1.21b, the switching-cycle-averaged value $\bar{v}_A$ of the waveform is controlled by the pulse width T_{up} (during which the switch is in the up position and v_A equals V_{in}), as a ratio of T_s:

$$\bar{v}_A = \frac{T_{up}}{T_s} V_{in} = d_A V_{in} \quad 0 \le d_A \le 1 \tag{1.3}$$

where $d_A(=T_{up}/T_s)$, which is the average of the q_A waveform as shown in Figure 1.21b, is defined as the duty-ratio of the switching power-pole A, and the switching-cycle-averaged voltage is indicated by a "–" on top. The switching-cycle-averaged voltage and the switch duty-ratio are expressed by lowercase letters since they may vary as functions of time. The control over the switching-cycle-averaged value of the output voltage is achieved by adjusting or modulating the pulse width, which later on will be referred to as pulse-width-modulation (PWM). This switching power-pole and the control of its output by PWM set the stage for switch-mode conversion with high energy-efficiency.

We should note that $\bar{v}_A$ and d_A in the above discussion are discrete quantities and their values, calculated over a k^{th} switching cycle, for example, can be expressed as $\bar{v}_{A,k}$ and $d_{A,k}$. However in practical applications, the pulse-width T_{up} changes very slowly over



(a) (b)

FIGURE 1.21 PWM of the switching power-pole.

many switching cycles, and hence we can consider them analog quantities as $\bar{v}_A(t)$ and $d_A(t)$ that are continuous functions of time. For simplicity, we may not show their time dependence explicitly.

1.6.3 Switching Power-Pole in a Buck DC-DC Converter: An Example

As an example, we will consider the switching power-pole in a *Buck* converter to step-down the input dc voltage V_{in}, as shown in Figure 1.22a, where a capacitor is placed in parallel with the load, to form a low-pass L-C filter with the inductor, to provide a smooth voltage to the load.

In steady state, the dc (average) input to this L-C filter has no attenuation, hence the average output voltage V_o equals the switching-cycle-average, $\bar{v}_A$, of the applied input voltage. Based on Equation 1.3, by controlling d_A, the output voltage can be controlled in a range from V_{in} down to 0:

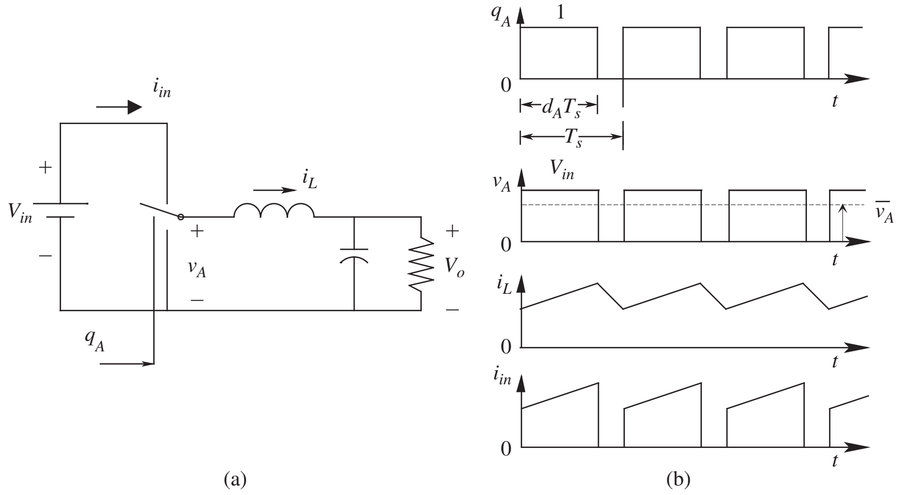
$$V_o = \bar{v}_A = d_A V_{in} \quad (0 \leq V_o \leq V_{in}) \tag{1.4}$$

In spite of the pulsating nature of the instantaneous output voltage $v_A(t)$, the series inductance at the current-port of the pole ensures that the current $i_L(t)$ remains relatively smooth, as shown in Figure 1.22b.

Example 1.2

In the converter of Figure 1.22a, the input voltage $V_{in} = 20\,\text{V}$. The output voltage $V_o = 12\,\text{V}$. Calculate the duty-ratio d_A and the pulse width T_{up}, if the switching frequency $f_s = 200\,\text{kHz}$.

Solution $\bar{v}_A = V_o = 12\,\text{V}$. Using Equation 1.4, $d_A = \frac{V_o}{V_{in}} = \frac{12}{20} = 0.6$ and $T_s = \frac{1}{f_s} = 5\,\mu\text{s}$. Therefore, as shown in Figure 1.23, $T_{up} = d_A T_s = 0.6 \times 5\,\mu\text{s} = 3\,\mu\text{s}$.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 1.22 Switching power-pole in a Buck converter.

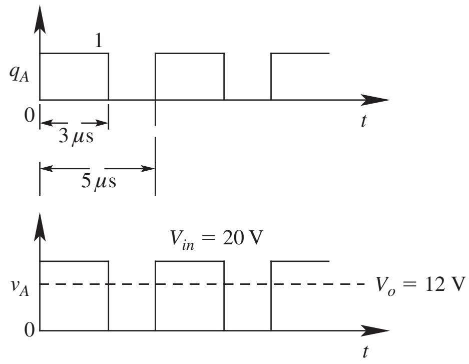


FIGURE 1.23 Waveforms in the converter of Example 1.2.

1.6.3.1 Realizing the Bi-Positional Switch in a Buck Converter

As shown in Figure 1.24a, the bi-positional switch in the power-pole can be realized by using a transistor and a diode. When the transistor is gated on (through a gate circuitry discussed in the next chapter by a switching signal $q_A = 1$), it carries the inductor current, and the diode is reversed biased, as shown in Figure 1.24b. When the transistor is switched off ($q_A = 0$), as shown in Figure 1.24c, the inductor current "freewheels" through the diode until the next switching cycle when the transistor is turned back on. The switching waveforms, shown earlier in Figure 1.22b, are discussed in detail in Chapter 3.

In the switch-mode circuit of Figure 1.22a, the higher the switching frequency, that is the frequency of the pulses in the $v_A(t)$ waveform, the smaller the values needed of the low-pass L-C filter. On the other hand, higher switching frequency results in higher switching losses in the bi-positional switch, which is the subject of the next chapter. Therefore, an appropriate switching frequency must be selected, keeping these trade-offs in mind.

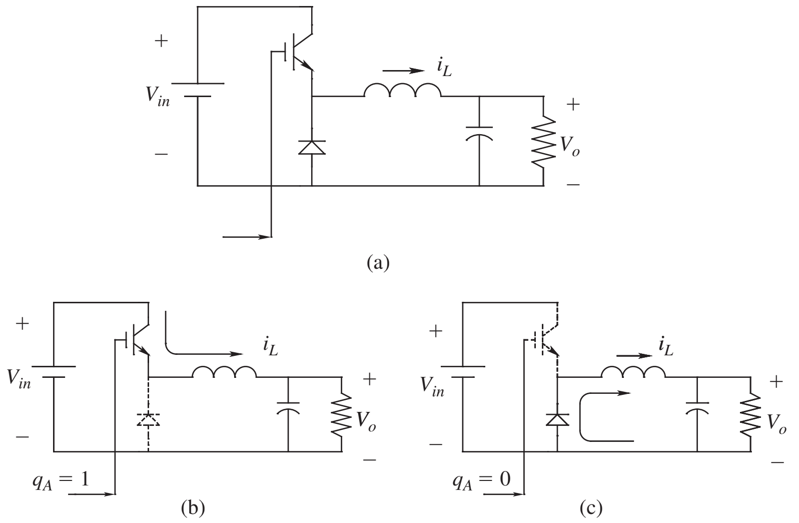


FIGURE 1.24 Transistor and diode forming a switching power-pole in a Buck converter.

1.7 RECENT AND POTENTIAL ADVANCEMENTS

Given the need in a plethora of applications, the rapid growth of this field is fueled by revolutionary advances in semiconductor fabrication technology. The power electronics interface of Figure 1.1 consists of solid-state devices, which operate as switches, changing from on to off and vice versa at a high switching frequency. There has been a steady improvement in the voltage and current handling capabilities of solid-state devices such as diodes and transistors, and their switching speeds (from on to off, and vice versa) have increased dramatically, with some devices switching in tens of *ns*. Devices that can handle voltages in kVs and currents in kAs are now available. Moreover, the costs of these devices are in a steady decline.

These semiconductor switches are integrated in a single package with all the circuitry needed to make them switch, and to provide the necessary protection. A progressive integration, as defined by the concept of Power Electronics Building Block (PEBB) below has numerous benefits such as technology insertion and upgrade via standard interfaces, reduced maintenance via plug and play modules, reduced cost via increased product development efficiency, reduced time to market, reduced commissioning cost, reduced design and development risk, and increased competition in critical technologies [14]:

> Power Electronics Building Block (PEBB) [15] is a broad concept that incorporates the progressive integration of power devices, gate drives, and other components into building blocks, with clearly defined functionality that provides interface capabilities able to serve multiple applications. This building block approach results in reduced cost, losses, weight, size, and engineering effort for the application and maintenance of power electronics systems. Based on the functional specifications of PEBB and the performance requirements of the intended applications, the PEBB designer addresses the details of device stresses, stray inductances, switching speed, losses, thermal management, protection, measurements of required variables, control interfaces, and potential integration issues at all levels.

Power electronics has benefited from advances in the semiconductor fabrication technology in another important way. The availability of Application Specific Integrated Circuits (ASICs), Digital Signal Processor (DSPs), micro-controllers, and Field Programmable Gate Arrays (FPGA) at very low costs makes the controller function in the block diagram of Figure 1.1 easy and inexpensive to implement, while greatly increasing functionality.

Significant areas for potential advancements in power electronic systems are in integrated and intelligent power modules, packaging, SiC-based solid-state devices, improved high energy density capacitors, and improved topologies and control.

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design, 3rd ed. (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).

2. N. Mohan and R.J. Ferraro, "Techniques for Energy Conservation in AC Motor Driven Systems," EPRI-Report EM-2037, Project 1201–1213, Sept. 1981.

3. N. Mohan and James Ramsey, "Comparative Study of Adjustable-Speed Drives for Heat Pumps," EPRI-Report EM-4704, Project 2033-4, Aug. 1986.
4. U.S. Department of Energy (DOE), Turning Point Newsletter, A Motor Challenge Bimonthly Publication, November 1998, www.oit.doe.gov.
5. R. Stempel et al., "Nickel-Metal Hydride: Ready to Serve," IEEE-Spectrum, Nov. 1998, pp. 29–34.
6. D. Collins, "DOE FE Distributed Generation (DG) Fuel Cells Program," IEEE Applied Power Electronics Conference, March 6–10, 2005, Austin, TX.
7. D. Hermance and S. Sasaki, "Hybrid Electric Vehicles Take to the Streets," IEEE-Spectrum, Nov. 1998, pp. 48–52.
8. Toyota Motor Corporation, http://www.toyota.com/html/shop/vehicles/prius.
9. Energy Information Administration Monthly Energy Review, December 2002, http://www.eia.doe.gov/emeu/mer/overview.html.
10. http://www.scientificamerican.com/podcast/episode.cfm?id=carbon-dioxide-from-cars-09-01-08.
11. IEEE Vehicular Technology Society, http://www.vtsociety.org/.
12. American Wind Energy Association, http://www.awea.org.
13. Krushna Mohapatra et al., "A Novel Carrier-Based PWM Scheme for Matrix Converters that Is Easy to Implement," Proceedings of the IEEE-PESC Conference, Recife, Brazil, June 2005, pp. 2410–2014.
14. T. Ericsen, "Power Electronics Building Blocks—a systematic approach to power electronics," Proceedings of the 2000 IEEE Power Engineering Society Summer Meeting, pp. 1216–1218.
15. IEEE Power Engineering Society, "Power Electronics Building Block (PEBB) Concepts," Document Number 04TP170 prepared by Task Force 2 of Working Group i8 of Power Electronics Subcommittee of IEEE PES Substations Committee.
16. Edison Electric Institute's Statistical Yearbook, http://www.eei.org.
17. "'Infinity' Variable-Capacity Units Boast SEERS Above16," Air Conditioning, Heating and Refrigeration News, Jan. 21, 1991, pp. 79–80.
18. http://www.energystar.gov/index.cfm?fuseaction=find_a_product.showProductGroup&pgw_code=LB.
19. http://www.howstuffworks.com/question417.htm.
20. http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/ohim/1996/in3.pdf.
21. http://www.eia.doe.gov/emeu/25opec/sld000.htm.
22. http://www1.eere.energy.gov/hydrogenandfuelcells.

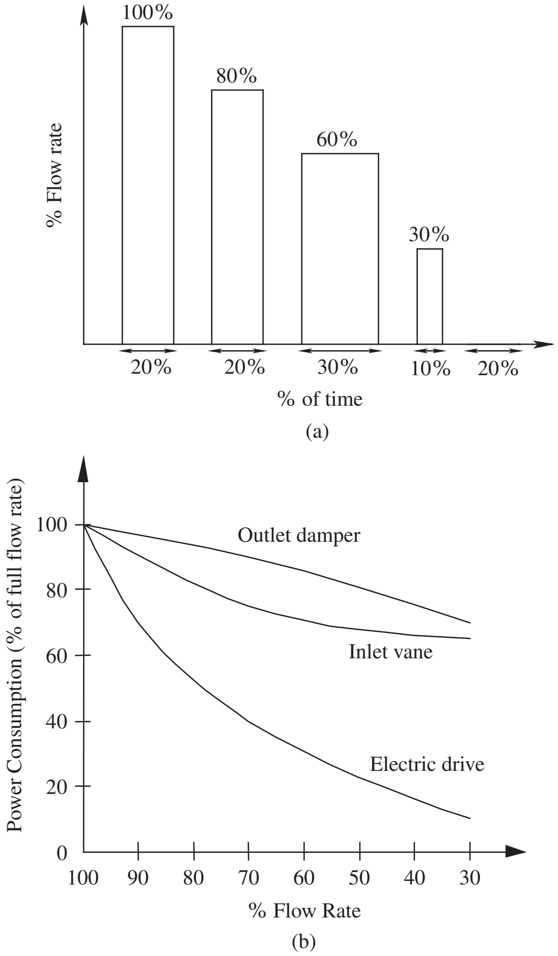
PROBLEMS

Applications and Energy Conservation

1.1. A U.S. Department of Energy report [4] estimates that over 122 billion kWh/year can be saved in the manufacturing sector in the United States by using mature and cost-effective conservation technologies. Calculate (a) how many 1,100-MW generating plants are needed to operate constantly to supply this wasted energy, and (b) the annual savings in dollars if the cost of electricity is 0.12 cents/kWh.

1.2. In a process, a blower is used with the flow-rate profile shown in Figure P1.1a.

Using the information in Figure P1.1b, estimate the percentage reduction in power consumption resulting from using an adjustable-speed drive rather than a system with (a) an outlet damper and (b) an inlet vane.



(a)

(b)

FIGURE P1-1

1.3. In a system, if the system size is based on power dissipation capacity, calculate the improvement in the power density if the efficiency is increased from 87% to 95%.

1.4. According to [16], electricity generation in the United States in the year 2000 was approximately 3.8×10^9 MW-hrs. Figure 1.7 shows that 16% of that is used for heating, ventilating and air conditioning. Based on [3, 17], as much as 30% of the energy can be saved in such systems by using adjustable-speed drives. On this basis, calculate the savings in energy per year and relate that to 1,100-MW generating plants needed to operate constantly to supply this wasted energy.

1.5. According to [12], the total amount of electricity that could potentially be generated from wind in the United States has been estimated at 10.8×10^9 MW-hrs annually. If one-tenth of this potential is developed, estimate the number of 1.5 MW windmills that would be required, assuming that on average a windmill produces only 30% of the energy that it is capable of.

1.6. In Problem 1.5, if each 1.5 MW windmill has all its output power flowing through the power electronics interface, estimate the total rating of these interfaces in MW.

1.7. As the pie chart of Figure 1.7 shows, lighting in the United States consumes 19% of the generated electricity. Compact Fluorescent Lamps (CFLs) consume power one-fourth of that consumed by the incandescent lamps for the same light output [18]. According to [16], electricity generation in the United States in year 2000 was approximately 3.8×10^9 MW-hrs. Based on this information, estimate the savings in MW-hrs annually, assuming that all lighting at present is by incandescent lamps, which are to be replaced by CFLs.

1.8. An electric-hybrid vehicle offers 52 miles per gallon in mixed (city and highway) driving conditions according to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. This is in comparison to the gas mileage of 22.1 miles per gallon for an average passenger car in the United States in the year 2001 [9], with an average of 11,766 miles driven. Calculate the savings in terms of barrels of oil per automobile annually, if a conventional car is replaced by an electric-hybrid vehicle. In calculating this, assume that a barrel of oil that contains 42 gallons yields approximately 20 gallons of gasoline [19].

1.9. Based on the estimate in [20] of approximately 136 million automobiles in 1995, we can project that today there are 150 million cars in the United States. Using the results of Problem 1.8, calculate the total annual reduction of carbon into the atmosphere, if the consumption of each gallon of gasoline releases approximately 5 pounds of carbon [19].

1.10. Relate the savings of barrels of oil annually, as calculated in Problem 1.9, to the imported oil, if the United States imports approximately 35,000 million barrels of crude oil per year [21].

1.11. Fuel-cell systems that also utilize the heat produced can achieve efficiencies approaching 80% [22], more than double of the gas-turbine based electrical generation. Assume that 20 million households produce an average of 5 kW. Calculate the percentage of electricity generated by these fuel-cell systems compared to the annual electricity generation in the United States of 3.8×10^9 MW-hrs [16].

1.12. Induction cooking based on power electronics is estimated to be 80% efficient compared to 55% for conventional electric cooking. If an average home consumes 2 kW-hrs daily using conventional electric cooking, and that 20 million households switch to induction cooking in the United States, calculate the annual savings in electricity usage.

1.13. Assume the average energy density of sunlight to be 800 W/m^2 and the overall photovoltaic system efficiency to be 10%. Calculate the land area covered with photovoltaic cells needed to produce 1,000 MW, the size of a typical large central power plant.

1.14. In Problem 1.13, the solar cells are distributed on top of roofs, each in area of 40 m^2. Calculate the number of homes needed to produce the same power.

1.15. Describe the role of power electronics in harnessing onshore and offshore wind energy.

1.16. Describe the role of power electronics in photovoltaic systems to harness solar energy.

1.17. Describe the role of power electronics in battery storage and fuel-cell systems.

1.18. Describe the role of power electronics in electric vehicles, hybrid-electric vehicles, and plug-in hybrid-electric vehicles.

1.19. Describe the role of power electronics in transportation systems by means of high-speed rails.

1.20. Describe the role of power electronics for energy conservation in lighting using CFLs and LEDs.

1.21. Describe the role of power electronics for energy conservation in heat pumps and air conditioners.

1.22. Describe the role of power electronics in transmitting electricity by means of High Voltage DC (HVDC) transmission.

PWM of the Switching Power-Pole

1.23. In a Buck converter, the input voltage $V_{in} = 12\,\text{V}$. The output voltage V_o is required to be 9 V. The switching frequency $f_s = 400\,\text{kHz}$. Assuming an ideal switching power-pole, calculate the pulse width T_{up} of the switching signal, and the duty-ratio d_A of the power pole.

1.24. In the Buck converter of Problem 1.23, assume the current through the inductor to be ripple-free with a value of 1.5 A (the ripple in this current is discussed later in Chapter 3). Draw the waveforms of the voltage v_A at the current-port and the input current i_{in} at the voltage-port.

1.25. Using the input-output specifications given in Problem 1.23, calculate the maximum energy-efficiency expected of a linear regulator where the excess input voltage is dropped across a transistor, that functions as a controllable resistor, and is placed in series between the input and the output.

Simulation Problems

1.26. In the circuit diagram of the Buck converter in Figure 1.22a, the low-pass filter has the following values: $L = 5\,\mu\text{H}$ and $C = 100\,\mu\text{F}$. The output load resistance is $R = 0.5\,\Omega$. The input voltage v_A is a pulse waveform between 0 and 10 volts, with a pulse width of 7.5 μs and a frequency $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$.

   (a) Plot the input voltage v_A and the output voltage v_o for the last 10 switching cycles after v_o waveform has reached its steady state.

   (b) How does V_o relate to $\bar{v}_A$ (the average of v_A)?

   (c) What is the ratio of the switching frequency to the L-C resonance frequency? By means of Fourier analysis, compute the attenuation of the fundamental-frequency component in the input voltage by the filter at the switching frequency?

1.27. In Problem 1.26, plot the gain of the transfer function $V_o(s)/V_A(s)$ in dB, as a function of frequency. Does the frequency at which the transfer-function gain is peaking coincide with the L-C resonance frequency? Calculate the attenuation of the fundamental-frequency component by the filter. How does it compare with that obtained by the Fourier analysis in Problem 1.26c?

2

DESIGN OF SWITCHING POWER-POLES

In the previous chapter, we discussed the role of power electronics for energy sustainability. Power electronics is an applied field of study where theory must be translated into practice to realize the immediate challenges that we face. We also discussed a switching power-pole as the building block of power electronic converters, consisting of an ideal bi-positional switch with an ideal transistor and an ideal diode, and pulse-width-modulated (PWM) to control the output. In this chapter, we will discuss the availability of various power semiconductor devices that are essential in power electronic systems, their switching characteristics and various tradeoffs in designing a switching power-pole, that can be used in various applications discussed in Chapter 1. We will also briefly discuss a PWM-IC, which is used in regulating and controlling the average output of such switching power-poles.

2.1 POWER TRANSISTORS AND POWER DIODES [1]

The power-level diodes and transistors have evolved over decades from their signal-level counterparts to the extent that they can handle voltages and currents in kVs and kAs respectively, with fast switching times of the order of a few tens of *ns* to a few μs. Moreover, these devices can be connected in series and parallel to satisfy any voltage and current requirements.

Selection of power diodes and power transistors in a given application is based on the following characteristics:

1. *Voltage Rating:* The maximum instantaneous voltage that the device is required to block in its off-state, beyond which it "breaks down" and irreversible damage occurs.
2. *Current Rating:* The maximum current, expressed as instantaneous, average, and/or rms, that a device can carry in its on-state, beyond which excessive heating within the device destroys it.
3. *Switching Speeds:* The speeds with which a device can make a transition from its on-state to off-state, or vice versa. Small switching times associated with fast-switching devices result in low switching losses, or considering it differently, fast-switching devices can be operated at high switching frequencies with acceptable switching power losses.

4. *On-State Voltage:* The voltage drop across a device during its on-state while conducting a current. The smaller this voltage, the smaller will be the on-state power loss.

2.2 SELECTION OF POWER TRANSISTORS [2–5]

Transistors are controllable switches, which are available in several forms for switch-mode power electronics applications:

- MOSFETs (Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field-Effect Transistors)
- IGBTs (Insulated-Gate Bipolar Transistors)
- IGCTs (Integrated-Gate-Controlled Thyristors)
- GTOs (Gate-Turn-Off thyristors)
- Niche devices for power electronics applications, such as BJTs (Bipolar-Junction Transistors), SITs (Static Induction Transistors), MCTs (MOS-Controlled Thyristors), and so on.

In switch-mode converters, there are two types of transistors that are primarily used: MOSFETs are typically used below a few hundred volts at switching frequencies in excess of 100 kHz, whereas IGBTs dominate very large voltage, current and power ranges extending to MW levels, provided the switching frequencies are below a few tens of kHz. IGCTs and GTOs are used in utility applications of power electronics at power levels beyond a few MWs. The following subsections provide a brief overview of MOSFET and IGBT characteristics and capabilities.

2.2.1 MOSFETs

In applications at voltages below 200 V and switching frequencies in excess of 100 kHz, MOSFETs are clearly the device of choice because of their low on-state losses in low voltage ratings, their fast switching speeds, and a high impedance gate that requires a small voltage and charge to facilitate on/off transition. The circuit symbol of an n-channel MOSFET is shown in Figure 2.1a. It consists of three terminals: drain (D), source (S), and gate (G). The forward current in a MOSFET flows from the drain to the source terminal. MOSFETs can block only the forward polarity voltage; that is, a positive v_{DS}. They cannot block a negative-polarity voltage due to an intrinsic antiparallel diode, which can

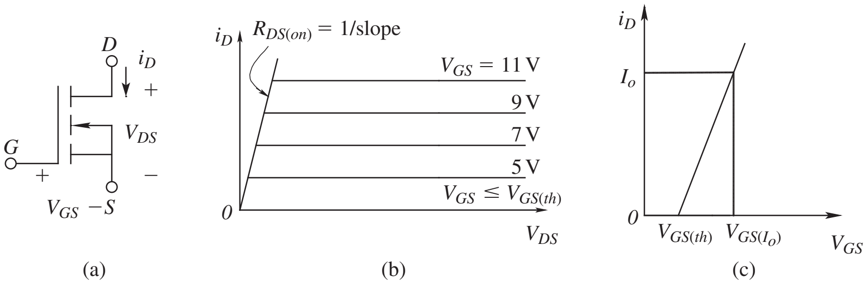


FIGURE 2.1 MOSFET: (a) symbol, (b) *i-v* characteristics, (c) transfer characteristic.

be used effectively in most switch-mode converter designs. MOSFET *i*-*v* characteristics for various gate voltage values are shown in Figure 2.1b.

For gate voltages below a threshold value $v_{GS(th)}$, typically in a range of 2 to 4 V, a MOSFET is completely off, as shown by the *i*-*v* characteristics in Figure 2.1b, and approximates an open switch. Beyond $v_{GS(th)}$, the drain current i_D through the MOSFET depends on the applied gate voltage v_{GS}, as shown by the transfer characteristic shown in Figure 2.1c, which is valid almost for any value of the voltage v_{DS} across the MOSFET (note the horizontal nature of *i*-*v* characteristics in Figure 2.1b). To carry $i_D(= I_o)$ would require a gate voltage of a value, at least equal to $v_{GS(I_o)}$, as shown in Figure 2.1c. Typically, a higher gate voltage, approximately 10 V, is maintained in order to keep the MOSFET in its on-state and carrying $i_D(= I_o)$.

In its on-state, a MOSFET approximates a very small resistor $R_{DS(on)}$, and the drain current that flows through it depends on the external circuit in which it is connected. The on-state resistance, inverse of the slope of *i*-*v* characteristics as shown in Figure 2.1b, is a strong function of the blocking voltage rating V_{DSS} of the device:

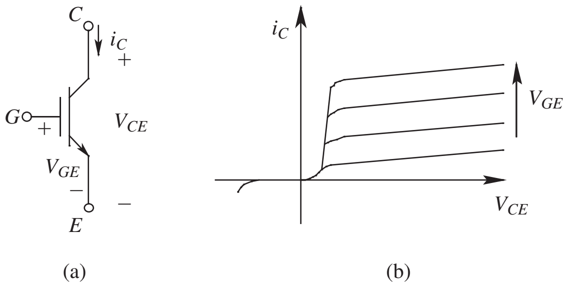
$$R_{DS(on)} \ \alpha \ V_{DSS}^{2.5\ to\ 2.7} \tag{2.1}$$

The relationship in Equation 2.1 explains why MOSFETs in low-voltage applications, at less than 200 V, are an excellent choice. The on-state resistance goes up with the junction temperature within the device and proper heatsinking must be provided to keep the temperature below the design limit.

2.2.2 IGBTs

IGBTs combine ease of control, as in MOSFETs, with low on-state losses even at fairly high voltage ratings. Their switching speeds are sufficiently fast for switching frequencies up to 30 kHz. Therefore, they are used for converters in a vast voltage and power range—from a fractional kW to several MWs where switching frequencies required are below a few tens of kHz.

The circuit symbol for an IGBT is shown in Figure 2.2a and the *i*-*v* characteristics are shown in Figure 2.2b. Similar to MOSFETs, IGBTs have a high impedance gate, which requires only a small amount of energy to switch the device. IGBTs have a small on-state voltage, even in devices with large blocking-voltage rating, for example, V_{on} is approximately 2 V in 1200-V devices.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 2.2 IGBT: (a) symbol, (b) *i*-*v* characteristics.

IGBTs can be designed to block negative voltages, but most commercially available devices, by design to improve other properties, cannot block any appreciable reverse-polarity voltage. IGBTs have turn-on and turn-off times on the order of a microsecond and are available as modules in ratings as large as 3.3 kV and 1200 A. Voltage ratings of up to 5 kV are projected.

2.2.3 Power-Integrated Modules and Intelligent-Power Modules [2–4]

Power electronic converters, for example for three-phase ac drives, require six power transistors. Power-integrated modules (PIMs) combine several transistors and diodes in a single package. Intelligent-power modules (IPMs) include power transistors with the gate-drive circuitry. The input to this gate-drive circuitry is a signal that comes from a microprocessor or an analog integrated circuit, and the output drives the MOSFET gate. IPMs also include fault protection and diagnostics, thereby immensely simplifying the power electronics converter design.

2.2.4 Costs of MOSFETs and IGBTs

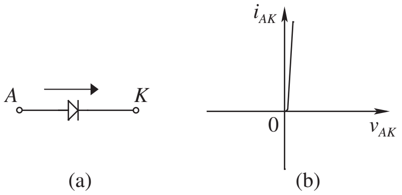
As these devices evolve, their relative costs continue to decline. The costs of single devices are approximately 0.25 cents/A for 600-V devices and 0.50 cents/A for 1200-V devices. Power modules for the 3 kV class of devices cost approximately 1 cents/A.

2.3 SELECTION OF POWER DIODES

The circuit symbol of a diode is shown in Figure 2.3a, and its *i*-*v* characteristic in Figure 2.3b shows that a diode is an uncontrolled device that blocks reverse polarity voltage. Power diodes are available in large ranges of reverse voltage blocking and forward current carrying capabilities. Similar to transistors, power diodes are available in several forms as follows, and their selection must be based on their application:

- Line-frequency diodes
- Fast-recovery diodes
- Schottky diodes
- SiC-based Schottky diodes

Rectification of line-frequency ac to dc can be accomplished by slower switching *p*-*n* junction power (line-frequency) diodes, which have relatively a slightly lower on-state voltage drop, and are available in voltage ratings of up to 9 kV and current



(a) (b)

FIGURE 2.3 Diode: (a) symbol, (b) *i*-*v* characteristic.

ratings of up to 5 kA. The on-state voltage drop across these diodes is usually on the order of 1 to 3 V, depending on the voltage blocking capability.

Switch-mode converters operating at high switching frequencies, from several tens of kHz to several hundred kHz, require fast-switching diodes. In such applications, fast-recovery diodes, also formed by *p-n* junction as the line-frequency diodes, must be selected to minimize switching losses associated with the diodes.

In applications with very low output voltages, the forward voltage drop of approximately a volt across the conventional *p-n* junction diodes becomes unacceptably high. In such applications, another type of device called the Schottky diode is used with a voltage drop in the range of 0.3 to 0.5 V. Being majority-carrier devices, Schottky diodes switch extremely fast and keep switching losses to a minimum.

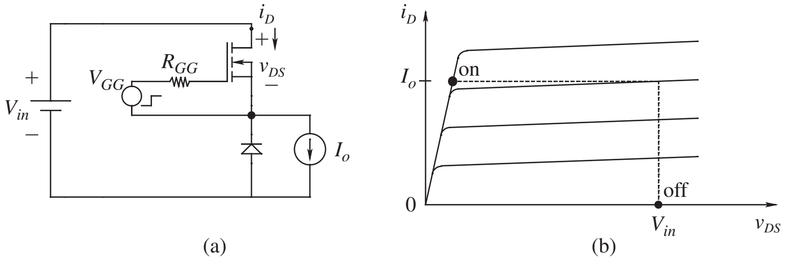
All devices, transistors, and diodes discussed above are silicon based. Lately, silicon-carbide (SiC) based Schottky diodes in voltage ratings of up to 1200 V have become available [6]. In spite of their large on-state voltage drop (1.7 V, for example), their capability to switch with a minimum of switching losses makes them attractive in converters with voltages in excess of a few hundred volts.

2.4 SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS AND POWER LOSSES IN POWER-POLES

In switch-mode converters, it is important to understand switching characteristics of the switching power-pole. As discussed in the previous chapter, the power-pole in a Buck converter shown in Figure 2.4a is implemented using a transistor and a diode, where the current through the current port is assumed a constant dc, I_o, for discussing switching characteristics. We will assume the transistor to be a MOSFET, although a similar discussion applies if an IGBT is selected.

For the n-channel MOSFET (p-channel MOSFETs have poor characteristics and are seldom used in power applications), the typical i_D versus v_{DS} characteristics are shown in Figure 2.4b for various gate voltages. The off-state and the on-state operating points are labeled on these characteristics.

Switching characteristics of MOSFETs, hence of the switching power-pole in Figure 2.4a, are dictated by a combination of factors: the speed of charging and discharging of junction capacitances within the MOSFET, i_D versus v_{DS} characteristics, the circuit of Figure 2.4a in which the MOSFET is connected and its gate-drive circuitry. We should note that the MOSFET junction capacitances are highly nonlinear functions of drain-source voltage and go up dramatically by several orders of magnitude at lower voltages. In Figure 2.4a, the gate-drive voltage for the MOSFET is represented as a



(a) (b)

FIGURE 2.4 MOSFET in a switching power-pole.

voltage source, which changes from 0 to V_{GG}, approximately 10 V, and vice versa, and charges or discharges the gate through a resistance R_{gate} that is the sum of an external resistance R_{GG} and the internal gate resistance.

Only a simplified explanation of the turn-on and turn-off characteristics, assuming an ideal diode, is presented here. The switching details including the diode reverse recovery are discussed in the Appendix to this chapter.

2.4.1 Turn-on Characteristic

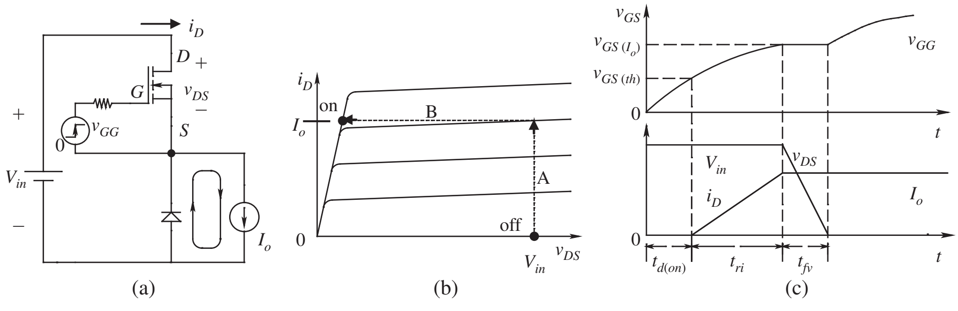
Prior to turn-on, Figure 2.5a shows the circuit in which the MOSFET is off and blocks the input dc voltage V_{in}; I_o "freewheels" through the diode. By applying a positive voltage to the gate, the turn-on characteristic describes how the MOSFET goes from the off-point to the on-point in Figure 2.5b. To turn the MOSFET on, the gate-drive voltage goes up from 0 to V_{GG}, and it takes the gate-drive a finite amount of time, called the turn-on delay-time $t_{d(on)}$, to charge the gate-source capacitance through the gate-circuit resistance R_{gate} to the threshold value of $V_{GS(th)}$. During this turn-on delay time, the MOSFET remains off and I_o continues to freewheel through the diode, as shown in Figure 2.5a.

For the MOSFET to turn on, first the current i_D through it rises. As long as the diode is conducting a positive net current $(I_o - i_D)$, the voltage across it is zero, and the MOSFET must block the entire input voltage V_{in}. Therefore, during the current rise-time t_{ri}, the MOSFET voltage and the current are along the trajectory A in the i-v characteristics of Figure 2.5b, and are plotted in Figure 2.5c. Once the MOSFET current reaches I_o, the diode becomes reverse biased, and the MOSFET voltage falls. During the voltage fall-time t_{fv}, as depicted by the trajectory B in Figure 2.5b and the plots in Figure 2.5c, the gate-to-source voltage remains at $V_{GS(I_o)}$. Once the turn-on transition is complete, the gate charges to the gate-drive voltage V_{GG}, as shown in Figure 2.5c.

Example 2.1

In the converter of Figure 2.4a, the transistor is a MOSFET which carries a current of 5 A when it is fully on. If the current through the transistor is to be limited to 40 A during a malfunction in which case the entire input voltage of 50 V appears across the transistor, what should be the maximum on-state gate voltage that the gate-drive circuit should provide? Assume the junction temperature T_j of the MOSFET to be 175 °C.

Solution The transfer characteristic of this MOSFET is shown in Figure 2.6. It shows that if $V_{GS} = 7.5\,\text{V}$ is used, the current through the MOSFET will be limited to 40 A.



(a) (b) (c)

FIGURE 2.5 MOSFET turn-on.

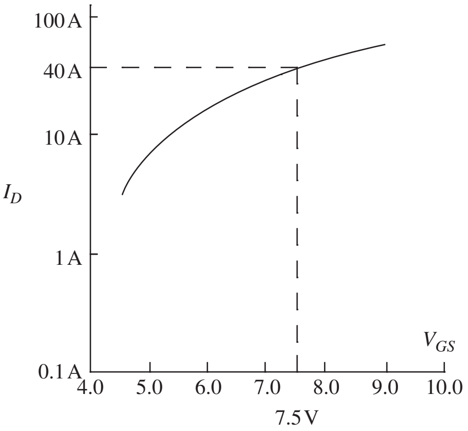


FIGURE 2.6 MOSFET transfer characteristic.

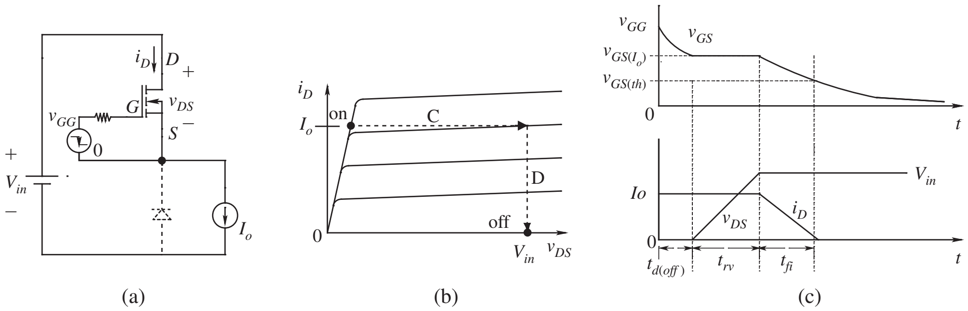


FIGURE 2.7 MOSFET turn-off.

2.4.2 Turn-off Characteristic

The turn-off sequence is opposite to the turn-on process. Prior to turn-off, the MOSFET is conducting I_o, and the diode is reverse biased as shown in Figure 2.7a. The MOSFET *i*-*v* characteristics are re-plotted in Figure 2.7b. The turn-off characteristic describes how the MOSFET goes from the on-point to the off-point in Figure 2.7b. To turn the MOSFET off, the gate-drive voltage goes down from V_{GG} to 0. It takes the gate-drive a finite amount of time, called the turn-off delay-time $t_{d(off)}$, to discharge the gate-source capacitance through the gate-circuit resistance R_{gate}, from a voltage of V_{GG} to $V_{GS(I_o)}$. During this turn-off delay time, the MOSFET remains on.

For the MOSFET to turn off, the output current must be able to “freewheel” through the diode. This requires the diode to become forward biased, and thus the voltage across the MOSFET must rise as shown by the trajectory *C* in Figure 2.7b, while the current through it remains I_o. During this voltage rise-time t_{rv}, the voltage and current are plotted in Figure 2.7c, while the gate-to-source voltage remains at $V_{GS(I_o)}$. Once the voltage across the MOSFET reaches V_{in}, the diode becomes forward biased, and the MOSFET current falls. During the current fall-time t_{fi}, depicted by the trajectory *D* in

Figure 2.7b and the plots in Figure 2.7c, the gate-to-source voltage declines to $V_{GS(th)}$. Once the turn-off transition is complete, the gate discharges to 0.

2.4.3 Calculating Power Losses within the MOSFET (assuming an ideal diode)

Power losses in the gate-drive circuitry are negligibly small except at very high switching frequencies. The primary source of power losses is across the drain and the source, which can be divided into two categories: the conduction loss, and the switching losses. Both of these are discussed in the following sections.

2.4.3.1 Conduction Loss

In the on-state, the MOSFET conducts a drain current for an interval T_{on} during every switching time-period T_s, with the switch duty-ratio $d = T_{on}/T_s$. Assuming this current to be at a constant I_o during dT_s, since it is zero during the rest of the switching time-period, the rms value of the MOSFET current is

$$I_T(\text{rms}) = \sqrt{d}I_o \tag{2.2a}$$

Hence, the average power loss in the on-state resistance $R_{DS(on)}$ of the MOSFET is

$$P_{cond} = R_{DS(on)} d\, I_o^2 \tag{2.2b}$$

As pointed out earlier, $R_{DS(on)}$ varies significantly with the junction temperature, and data sheets often provide its value at the junction temperature equal to 25 °C. However, it will be more realistic to use twice this resistance value that corresponds to the junction temperature equal to 120 °C, for example. Equation 2.3 can be refined to account for the effect of a ripple in the drain current on the conduction loss. The conduction loss is highest at the maximum load on the converter when the drain current would also be at its maximum.

2.4.3.2 Switching Losses

At high switching frequencies, switching power losses can be even higher than the conduction loss. The switching waveforms for the MOSFET voltage v_{DS} and the current i_D, corresponding to the turn-on and the turn-off trajectories in Figures 2.5 and 2.7, assuming linear with time, are re-plotted in Figure 2.8.

During each transition from on to off, and vice versa, the transistor has simultaneously high voltage and current, as seen from the switching waveforms in Figure 2.8. The instantaneous power loss $p_{sw}(t)$ in the transistor is the product of v_{DS} and i_D, as plotted. The average value of the switching losses from the plots in Figure 2.8 is

$$P_{sw} = \frac{1}{2} V_{in} I_o (t_{c,on} + t_{c,off}) f_s \tag{2.3}$$

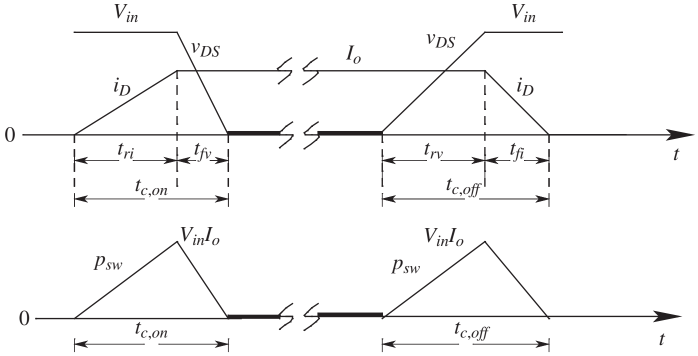


FIGURE 2.8 MOSFET switching losses.

where $t_{c,on}$ and $t_{c,off}$ are defined in Figure 2.8 as the sum of the rise and the fall times associated with the MOSFET voltage and current:

$$t_{c,on} = t_{ri} + t_{fv} \tag{2.4}$$

$$t_{c,off} = t_{rv} + t_{fi} \tag{2.5}$$

2.4.4 Gate Driver Integrated Circuits (ICs) with Built-in Fault Protection [2]

Application-Specific ICs (ASICs) for controlling the gate voltages of MOSFETs and IGBTs greatly simplify converter design by including various protection features, for example, the over-current protection that turns off the transistor under fault conditions. This functionality, as discussed earlier, is integrated into Intelligent Power Modules along with the power semiconductor devices.

The IC to drive the MOSFET gate is shown in Figure 2.9 in a block diagram form. To drive the high-side MOSFET in the power-pole, the input signal v_c from the controller is referenced to the logic level ground, V_{CC} is the logic supply voltage, and V_{ext} to drive the gate is supplied by an isolated power supply referenced to the MOSFET source S.

One of the ICs for this purpose is IR2127, which can source 200 mA for gate charging and sink 420 mA for gate discharging, with typical turn-on and turn-off times of 200 ns and 150 ns, respectively. This IC, although it has relatively large switching times, may be a good choice due to its easy-to-use fault protection capability, in which the

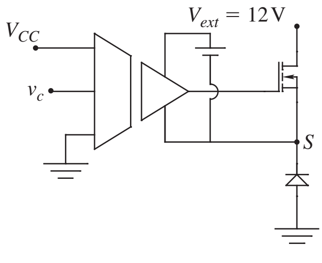


FIGURE 2.9 Gate-driver IC functional diagram.

transistor current, measured via the voltage drop across a small resistance in series with the transistor, disables the gate-drive voltage under over-current conditions.

2.5 JUSTIFYING SWITCHES AND DIODES AS IDEAL

Product reliability and high energy-efficiency are two very important criteria. In designing converters, it is essential that in the selection of semiconductor devices we consider their voltage and current ratings with proper safety margins for reliability purposes. Achieving high energy-efficiency from converters requires that in selecting power devices, we consider their on-state voltage drops and their switching characteristics. We also need to calculate the heat that needs to be removed for proper thermal design.

Typically, the converter energy efficiency of approximately 90% or higher is realized. This implies that semiconductor devices have a very small loss associated with them. Therefore, in analyzing various converter topologies and comparing them against each other, we can assume transistors and diodes ideal. Their non-idealities, although essential to consider in the actual selection and the subsequent design process, represent a second-order phenomena, that will be ignored in analyzing various converter topologies. We will use a generic symbol shown earlier for transistors, regardless of their type, and ignore the need for a specific gate-drive circuitry.

2.6 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

In designing any converter, the overall objectives are to optimize their cost, size, weight, energy efficiency, and reliability. With these goals in mind, we will briefly discuss some important considerations as the criteria for selecting the topology and the components in a given application.

2.6.1 Switching Frequency f_s

As discussed in the Buck converter example of the previous chapter, a switching power-pole results in a waveform pulsating at a high switching frequency at the current-port. The high frequency components in the pulsating waveform need to be filtered. It is intuitively obvious that the benefits of increasing the switching frequencies lie in reducing the filter component values, L and C, hence their physical sizes in a converter. (This is true up to a certain value, for example, up to a few hundred kHz, beyond which, for example, magnetic losses in inductors and the internal inductance within capacitors reverse the trend.) Hence, higher switching frequencies allow a higher control bandwidth, as we will see in Chapter 4.

The negative consequences of increasing the switching frequency are in increasing the switching losses in the transistor and the diode, as discussed earlier. Higher switching frequencies also dictate a faster switching of the transistor by appropriately designed gate-drive circuitry, generating greater problems of electromagnetic interference due to higher di/dt and dv/dt that introduce switching noise in the control loop and the rest of the system. We can minimize these problems, at least in dc-dc converters, by adopting a soft-switching topology discussed in Chapter 10.

2.6.2 Selection of Transistors and Diodes

Earlier we discussed the voltage and the switching frequency ranges for selecting between MOSFETs and IGBTs. Similarly, the diode types should be chosen appropriately. The voltage rating of these devices is based on the peak voltage $\hat{V}$ in the circuit (including voltage spikes due to parasitic effects during switching). The current ratings should consider the peak current $\hat{I}$ that the devices can handle and which dictates the switching power loss, the rms current I_{rms} for MOSFETs which behave as a resistor with $R_{DS(on)}$ in their on-state, and the average current I_{avg} for IGBTs and diodes, which can be approximated to have a constant on-state voltage drop. Safety margins, which depend on the application, dictate that the device ratings be greater than the worst-case stresses by a certain factor.

2.6.3 Magnetic components

As discussed earlier, the filter inductance value depends on the switching frequency. Inductor design is discussed later in Chapter 9, which shows that the physical size of a filter inductor, to a first approximation, depends on a quantity called the area-product (A_p) given by the equation below:

$$A_p = L\hat{I}I_{\text{rms}} \tag{2.6}$$

Increasing L in many topologies reduces the peak and the rms values (also reducing the transistor and the diode current stresses) but has the negative consequence of increasing the overall inductor size and possibly reducing the control bandwidth.

2.6.4 Capacitor Selection [7]

Capacitors have switching losses designated by an equivalent series resistance, ESR, as shown in Figure 2.10. They also have an internal inductance, represented as an equivalent series inductance, ESL. The resonance frequency, the frequency beyond which ESL begins to dominate C, depends on the capacitor type. Electrolytic capacitors offer high capacitance per unit volume but have low resonance frequency. On the other hand, capacitors such as metal-polypropylene have relatively high resonance frequency. Therefore, in switch-mode dc power supplies, an electrolytic capacitor with high C may often be paralleled with a metal-polyester capacitor to form the output filter capacitor.

2.6.5 Thermal Design [8, 9]

Power dissipated in the semiconductor and the magnetic devices must be removed to limit temperature rise within the device. The reliability of converters and their life expectancy depend on the operating temperatures, which should be well below their maximum allowed values. On the other hand, letting them operate at a high temperature decreases the cost and the size of the heat sinks required. There are several cooling techniques, but for general-purpose applications converters are often designed for cooling by normal air convection, without the use of forced air or liquid.

Semiconductor devices come in a variety of packages, which differ in cost, ruggedness, thermal conduction, and the radiation hardness if the application demands it. Figure 2.11a shows a semiconductor device affixed to a heat sink through an isolation pad

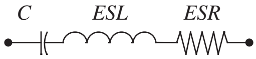


FIGURE 2.10 Capacitor ESR and ESL.

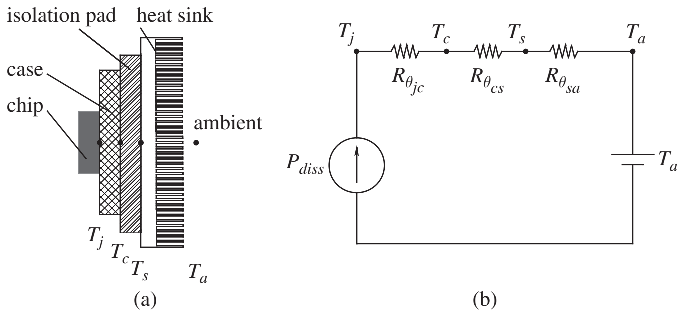


FIGURE 2.11 Thermal design: (a) semiconductor on a heat sink, (b) electrical analog.

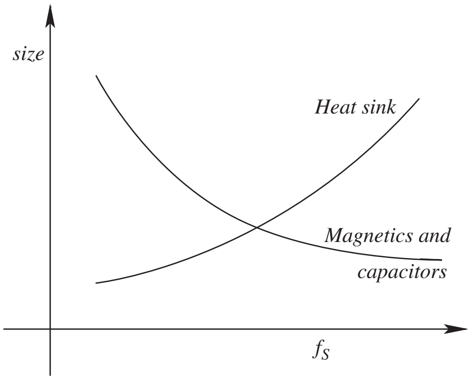


FIGURE 2.12 Size of magnetic components and heat sink as a function of frequency.

that is thermally conducting but provides electrical isolation between the device case and the heat sink.

An analogy can be drawn with an electrical circuit of Figure 2.11b where the power dissipation within the device is represented as a dc current source, thermal resistances offered by various paths are represented as series resistances, and the temperatures at various points as voltages. The data sheets specify various thermal resistance values. The heat transfer mechanism is primarily conduction from the semiconductor device to its case and through the isolation pad. The resulting thermal resistances can be represented by $R_{\theta jc}$ and $R_{\theta cs}$, respectively. From the heat sink to the ambient, the heat transfer mechanisms are primarily convection and radiation, and the thermal resistance can be represented by $R_{\theta sa}$. Based on the electrical analogy, the junction temperature can be calculated as follows for the dissipated power P_{diss}:

$$T_j = T_a + (R_{\theta jc} + R_{\theta cs} + R_{\theta sa})P_{diss} \tag{2.7}$$

2.6.6 Design Tradeoffs

As a function of switching frequency, Figure 2.12 qualitatively shows the plot of physical sizes for the magnetic components and the capacitors, and the heat sink. Based on the

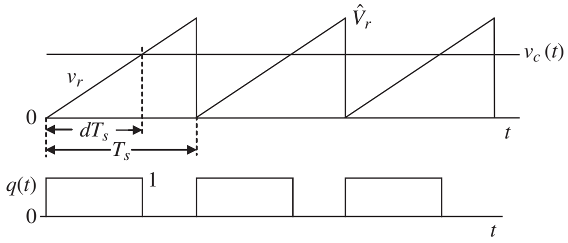


FIGURE 2.13 PWM IC waveforms.

present state-of-the-art, optimum values of switching frequencies to minimize the overall size in dc-dc converters using MOSFETs range from 200 kHz to 300 kHz with a slight upward trend.

2.7 THE PWM IC [10]

In the pulse-width-modulation of the power-pole in a dc-dc converter, a high-speed PWM IC such as the UC3824 from Unitrode/Texas Instruments may be used. Functionally within this PWM-IC, the control voltage $v_c(t)$ generated by the controller is compared with a ramp signal v_r of amplitude $\hat{V}_r$, at a constant switching frequency f_s, as shown in Figure 2.13. The output switching signal represents the transistor switching function $q(t)$, which equals 1 if $v_c(t) \geq v_r$; otherwise 0. The transistor duty-ratio based on Figure 2.13 is given as

$$d(t) = \frac{v_c(t)}{\hat{V}_r} \tag{2.8}$$

Thus, the control voltage $v_c(t)$ can provide regulation of the average output voltage of the switching power-pole, as discussed further in Chapters 3 and 4.

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design*, 3rd Edition. (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).
2. International Rectifier, http://www.irf.com.
3. POWEREX Corporation, http://www.pwrx.com.
4. Fuji Semiconductor, http://www.fujisemiconductor.com.
5. On Semiconductor, http://www.onsemiconductor.com.
6. Infineon Technologies, http://www.infineon.com.
7. Panasonic Capacitors, http://www.panasonic.com/industrial/electronic-components/capacitive-products.
8. Aavid Corporation for Heat Sinks, http://www.aavid.com.
9. Bergquist Company for thermal pads, http://www.bergquistcompany.com.
10. PWM Controller ICs, http://focus.ti.com/analog/docs/powerhome.tsp?familyId=64&content Type = 4.

PROBLEMS

MOSFET in a Power-Pole of Figure 2.4a (Problems 2.1 through 2.8)

2.1. A MOSFET is used in a switching power-pole shown in Figure 2.4a. Assume the diode ideal. The operating conditions are as follows: $V_{in} = 42\,\text{V}$, $I_o = 5\,\text{A}$, the switching frequency $f_s = 400\,\text{kHz}$, and the duty-ratio $d = 0.3$. Under the operating conditions, the MOSFET has the following switching times: $t_{d(on)} = 50\,\text{ns}$, $t_{ri} = 20\,\text{ns}$, $t_{fv} = 15\,\text{ns}$, $t_{d(off)} = 25\,\text{ns}$, $t_{rv} = 20\,\text{ns}$, $t_{fi} = 15\,\text{ns}$. The on-state resistance of the MOSFET is $R_{DS(on)} = 25\,\text{m}\Omega$. Assume V_{GG} as a step voltage between 0 V and 12 V.

(a) Draw and label the turn-on and turn-off characteristics of the MOSFET and sketch the MOSFET gate-source voltage v_{GS} waveform.

(b) Draw and label the diode voltage and current waveforms, assuming it to be ideal.

2.2. Plot the turn-on and the turn-off switching power losses in the MOSFET. Calculate the average switching power loss in the MOSFET.

2.3. Calculate the average conduction loss in the MOSFET.

2.4. Instead of an ideal diode, consider that the diode is actual and has a forward voltage drop $V_{FM} = 0.7\,\text{V}$. Calculate the average forward power loss in the diode.

2.5. In the diode reverse recovery characteristic shown in Figure 2A.1, $t_a = 12\,\text{ns}$, $t_{rr} = 20\,\text{ns}$, and $I_{RRM} = 2.5\,\text{A}$. Calculate the average switching power loss in the diode.

2.6. In the gate-drive circuitry of the MOSFET, assume that the external power supply V_{ext} in Figure 2.9 has a voltage of 12 V. To turn the MOSFET *on* each time, under the conditions given, requires a charge $Q_g = 40\,\text{nC}$ from the 12 V supply. Calculate the average gate-drive power loss, assuming that at turn-off of the MOSFET, no energy is returned to the 12 V supply.

2.7. In this problem, we will calculate new values of the turn-on and the turn-off delay times of the MOSFET, based on the gate driver IC IR2127, as described in section 2.4.4. This IC is supplied with a voltage $V_{ext} = 12\,\text{V}$ with respect to the MOSFET *Source*. Assume this voltage to equal V_{GG}. Also assume the internal series resistance of the MOSFET gate to be zero.

(a) For the turn-on, assume that this driver IC is a voltage source of V_{GG} with an internal resistance of $50\,\Omega$ in series. Calculate the turn-on delay time $t_{d(on)}$, assuming that the MOSFET threshold voltage $V_{GS(th)} = 3.5\,\text{V}$. Assume the MOSFET capacitance to be 1200 pF for this calculation.

(b) For turning-off of the MOSFET, assume that this driver IC shorts the MOSFET gate to its source through an internal resistance of $25\,\Omega$. Calculate the turn-off delay time $t_{d(off)}$, assuming that the MOSFET voltage $V_{GS(I_o)} = 4.25\,\text{V}$. Assume the MOSFET capacitance to be 1800 *pF* for this calculation.

2.8. The MOSFET losses are the sum of those computed in Problems 2.2 and 2.3. The junction temperature must not exceed 100 °C, and the ambient temperature is given as 40 °C. From the MOSFET datasheet, $R_{\theta jc} = 1.3\,^\circ\text{C/W}$. The thermal pad has $R_{\theta cs} = 1.9\,^\circ\text{C/W}$. Calculate the maximum value of $R_{\theta sa}$ that the heat sink can have.

Simulation Problem

2.9. To achieve the output capacitor in a Buck converter, an electrolytic capacitor $C_1 = 680\,\mu\text{F}$ is connected in parallel with a polypropylene capacitor $C_2 = 10\,\mu\text{F}$.

Each of these capacitors has the following ESR and ESL as shown in Figure 2.10: $ESR_1 = 0.037\,\Omega$, $ESL_1 = 16\,\text{nH}$, $ESR_2 = 0.04\,\Omega$ and $ESL_1 = 34\,\text{nH}$.

(a) Obtain the frequency response of the admittances associated with C_1 and C_2, and their parallel combination, in terms of their magnitude and the phase angles.

(b) Obtain the resonance frequency for the two capacitors and their combination.

Hint: Look at the phase plot.

APPENDIX 2A DIODE REVERSE-RECOVERY AND POWER LOSSES

In this appendix, the diode reverse-recovery characteristic is described and the associated power losses are calculated.

2A.1 Average Forward Loss in Diodes

The current flow through a diode results in a forward voltage drop V_{FM} across the diode. The average forward power loss $P_{diode,F}$ in the diode in the circuit of Figure 2.4a can be calculated as

$$P_{diode,F} = (1 - d) \cdot V_{FM} I_o \tag{2A.1}$$

where d is the MOSFET duty-ratio in the power-pole, and hence the diode conducts for $(1 - d)$ portion of each switching time-period.

2A.2 Diode Reverse-Recovery Characteristic

Forward current in power diodes, unlike in majority-carrier Schottky diodes, is due to the flow of electrons as well as holes. This current results in an accumulation of electrons in the p-region and of holes in the n-region. The presence of these charges allows a flow of current in the negative direction that sweeps away these excess charges, and the negative current quickly comes to zero, as shown in the plot of Figure 2A.1.

The peak reverse recovery current I_{RRM} and the reverse-recovery charge Q_{rr} shown in Figure 2A.1 depend on the initial forward current I_o and the rate di/dt at which this current decreases.

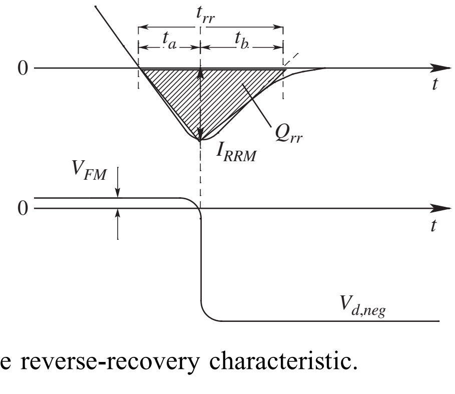


FIGURE 2A.1 Diode reverse-recovery characteristic.

2A.3 Diode Switching Losses

The reverse recovery current results in switching losses within the diode when a negative current is flowing beyond the interval t_a in Figure 2A.1, while the diode is blocking a negative voltage $V_{d,neg}$. This switching power loss in the diode can be estimated from the plots of Figure 2A.1 as

$$P_{diode,sw} = \left(\frac{1}{2} I_{RRM} t_b\right) \cdot V_{d,neg} \cdot f_s \tag{2A.2}$$

where f_s is the switching frequency. In switch-mode power electronics, increase in switching losses due to the diode reverse recovery can be significant, and diodes with ultra-fast reverse recovery characteristics are needed to avoid these from becoming excessive.

2A.4 Diode Switching Losses

The reverse recovery current of the diode also increases the turn-on losses in the associated MOSFET of the power-pole. This is illustrated by an example below.

Example 2.2

In the switching power-pole of Figure 2.4a, $V_{in} = 40\,\text{V}$ and the output current is $I_o = 5\,\text{A}$. The switching frequency $f_s = 200\,\text{kHz}$. The MOSFET switching times are $t_{ri} = 15\,\text{ns}$ and $t_{fv} = 15\,\text{ns}$. The diode snaps-off at reverse recovery such that $t_{rr} = t_a = 20\,\text{ns}$ (such that $t_b = 0$) and the peak reverse-recovery current $I_{RRM} = 2\,\text{A}$. Calculate the additional power loss in the MOSFET due to the diode reverse recovery.

Solution The waveforms are as shown in Figure 2A.2, where the drain current keeps rising for an additional value of $I_{RRM} = 2$ A, beyond $I_o = 5$ A, during $t_a = t_{rr} = 20$ ns. Beyond this interval, the drain-source voltage falls during the interval $t_{fv} = 15$ ns.

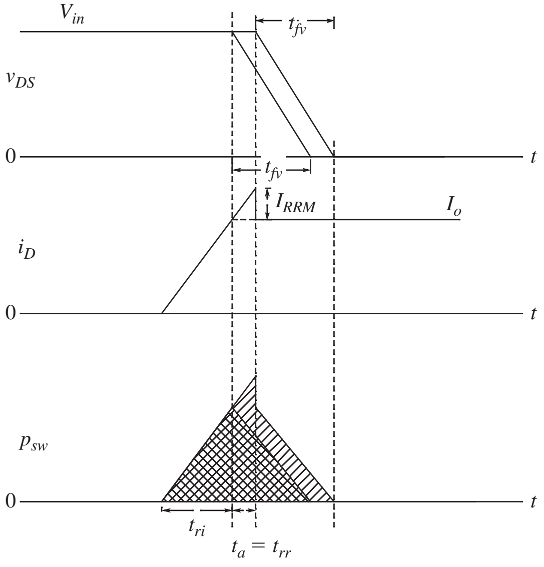


FIGURE 2A.2 Waveforms with diode reverse-recovery current.

With a near-ideal diode, as soon as the drain current reaches I_o, the MOSFET voltage v_{DS} begins to drop linearly in an interval t_{fv}, and the corresponding switching loss in the MOSFET is shown cross-hatched:

$$P_{sw,ideal} = \frac{1}{2} \times V_{in} \times I_o \times (t_{ri} + t_{fv}) \times f_s = 0.6\,\mathrm{W} \tag{2A.3}$$

With the diode with a reverse-recovery current, the switching loss in the MOSFET is

$$\begin{aligned} P_{sw,RR} &= \frac{1}{2} \times V_{in} \times (I_o + I_{RRM}) \times (t_{ri} + t_{rr}) \times f_s + \frac{1}{2} \times V_{in} \times I_o \times t_{fv} \times f_s \\ &= 1.28\,\mathrm{W} \end{aligned} \tag{2A.4}$$

Therefore, the additional power loss in the MOSFET is 0.68 W, which more than doubles the power loss in it.

3

SWITCH-MODE DC-DC CONVERTERS: SWITCHING ANALYSIS, TOPOLOGY SELECTION AND DESIGN

In Chapter 1, we discussed various applications of power electronics including those for energy sustainability. Some of these applications, like harnessing solar energy using photovoltaics, use of fuel cells and energy storage in batteries, require dc-dc converters to convert voltages and currents from one dc level to another, and to operate these systems optimally. In addition to these direct applications, dc-dc converters form the basic block of conversion between ac and dc voltages, required in applications such as harnessing of wind energy and efficiently adjusting the speed of drives in transportation and compressor systems for increasing energy efficiency.

3.1 DC-DC CONVERTERS [1]

Figure 3.1a shows Buck, Boost and Buck-Boost dc-dc converters by a block diagram and how the pulse-width modulation process regulates their output voltage. The design of the feedback controller is the subject of the next chapter. The power flow through these converters is in only one direction, thus their voltages and currents remain unipolar and unidirectional, as shown in Figure 3.1b. Based on these converters, several transformer-isolated dc-dc converter topologies, which are used in all types of electronics equipment, are discussed in Chapter 8.

3.2 SWITCHING POWER-POLE IN DC STEADY STATE

All the converters that we will discuss consist of a switching power-pole that was introduced in Chapter 1, and is redrawn in Figure 3.2a. In these converter circuits in dc steady state, the input voltage and the output load are assumed constant. The switching power-pole operates with a transistor switching function $q(t)$, whose waveform repeats, unchanged from one cycle to the next, and the corresponding switch duty-ratio remains constant at its dc steady state value D. Therefore, all waveforms associated with the

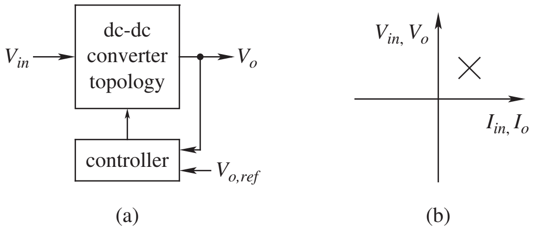


FIGURE 3.1 Regulated switch-mode dc power supplies.

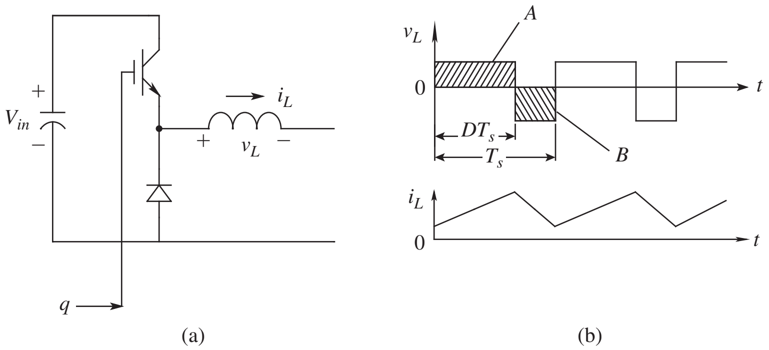


FIGURE 3.2 Switching power-pole as the building block of dc-dc converters.

power-pole repeat with the switching time-period T_s in the dc steady state, where the basic principles described below are extremely useful for analysis purposes.

First, let us consider the voltage and current of the inductor associated with the power-pole. The inductor current depends on the pulsating voltage waveform shown in Figure 3.2b. The inductor voltage and current are related by the conventional differential equation, which can be expressed in the integral form as follows:

$$v_L = L\frac{di_L}{dt} \quad \Rightarrow \quad i_L(t) = \frac{1}{L}\int_{\tau} v_L \cdot d\tau \tag{3.1}$$

where τ, representing time, is a variable of integration. For simplicity, we will consider the first time-period starting with $t = 0$ in Figure 3.2b. Using the integral form in Equation 3.1, the inductor current at a time t can be expressed in terms of its initial value $i_L(0)$ as:

$$i_L(t) = i_L(0) + \frac{1}{L}\int_0^t v_L \cdot d\tau \tag{3.2}$$

In the dc steady state, the waveforms of all circuit variables must repeat with the switching frequency time-period T_s, resulting in the following conclusions from Equation 3.2:

1. The inductor current waveforms repeats with T_s, and therefore in Equation 3.2

$$i_L(T_s) = i_L(0) \tag{3.3}$$

2. Integrating over one switching time-period T_s in Equation 3.2 and using Equation 3.3 show that the inductor voltage integral over T_s is zero. This leads to the conclusion that the average inductor voltage, averaged over T_s, is zero:

$$\frac{1}{L}\int_0^{T_s} v_L \cdot d\tau = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad V_L = \frac{1}{T_s}\left(\underbrace{\int_0^{DT_s} v_L \cdot d\tau}_{\text{area } A} + \underbrace{\int_{DT_s}^{T_s} v_L \cdot d\tau}_{\text{area } B}\right) = 0 \tag{3.4}$$

In Figure 3.2a, the area *A* in volt-s, that causes the current to rise, equals in magnitude the negative area *B* that causes the current to decline to its initial value.

Example 3.1

If the current waveform in steady state in an inductor of 50 μH is as shown in Figure 3.3a, calculate the inductor voltage waveform $v_L(t)$.

Solution During the current rise-time, $\frac{di}{dt} = \frac{(4-3)}{3\mu} = \left(\frac{1}{3\mu}\right)\frac{A}{s}$. Therefore,

$$v_L = L\frac{di}{dt} = 50\mu \times \frac{1}{3\mu} = 16.67 \text{ V}$$

During the current fall-time, $\frac{di}{dt} = \frac{(3-4)}{2\mu} = \left(-\frac{1}{2\mu}\right)\frac{A}{s}$. Therefore,

$$v_L = L\frac{di}{dt} = 50\mu \times \left(-\frac{1}{2\mu}\right) = -25 \text{ V}$$

Therefore, the inductor voltage waveform is as shown in Figure 3.3b.

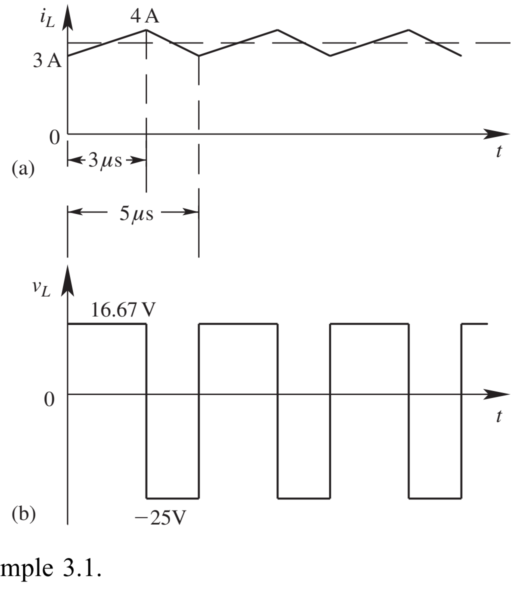


FIGURE 3.3 Example 3.1.

The above analysis applies to any inductor in a switch-mode converter circuit operating in a dc steady state. By analogy, a similar analysis applies to any capacitor in a switch-mode converter circuit, operating in the dc steady state, as follows: the capacitor voltage and current are related by the conventional differential equation, which can be expressed in the integral form as follows:

$$i_C = C\frac{dv_C}{dt} \quad \Rightarrow \quad v_C(t) = \frac{1}{C}\int_{\tau} i_C \cdot d\tau \tag{3.5}$$

where τ, representing time, is a variable of integration. Using the integral form of Equation 3.5, the capacitor voltage at a time t can be expressed in terms of its initial value $v_C(0)$ as:

$$v_C(t) = v_C(0) + \frac{1}{C}\int_0^t i_C \cdot d\tau \tag{3.6}$$

In the dc steady state, the waveforms of all circuit variables must repeat with the switching frequency time-period T_s, resulting in the following conclusions from Equation 3.6:

1. The capacitor voltage waveform repeats with T_s, and therefore in Equation 3.6

$$v_C(T_s) = v_C(0) \tag{3.7}$$

2. Integrating over one switching time-period T_s in Equation 3.6 and using Equation 3.7 show that the capacitor current integral over T_s is zero, which leads to the conclusion that the average capacitor current, averaged over T_s, is zero:

$$\frac{1}{C}\int_0^{T_s} i_C \cdot d\tau = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad I_C = \frac{1}{T_s}\int_0^{T_s} i_C \cdot d\tau = 0 \tag{3.8}$$

Example 3.2

The capacitor current i_C, shown in Figure 3.4a, is flowing through a capacitor of 100 μF. Calculate the peak-peak ripple in the capacitor voltage waveform due to this ripple current.

Solution For the given capacitor current waveform, the capacitor voltage waveform, as shown in Figure 3.4b, is at its minimum at time t_1, prior to which the capacitor current has been negative. This voltage waveform reaches its peak at time t_2, beyond which the current becomes negative.

The hatched area in Figure 3.4a equals the charge $Q = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} i_C \cdot dt = \frac{1}{2} \times 0.5 \times 2.5\ \mu = 0.625\ \mu\text{C}$

Using Equation 3.6, the peak-peak ripple in the capacitor voltage is $\Delta V_{p-p} = \frac{Q}{C} = 6.25$ mV.

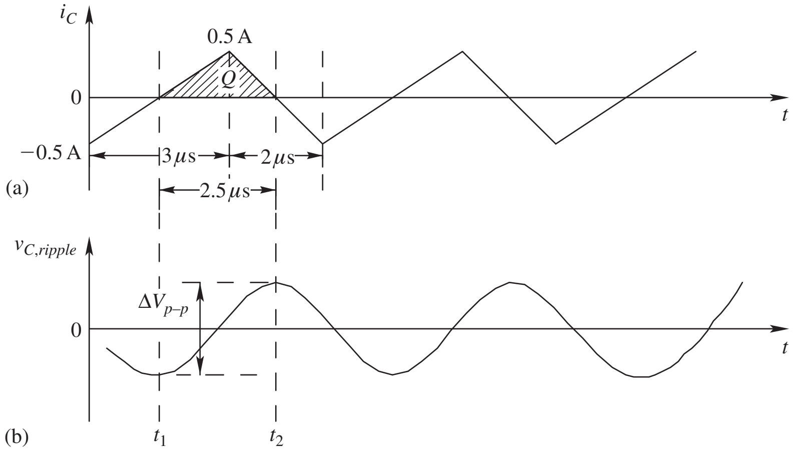


FIGURE 3.4 Example 3.2.

In addition to the above two conclusions, it is important to recognize that in dc steady state, just as with instantaneous quantities, the Kirchhoff's voltage and current laws apply to average quantities as well. In the dc steady state, average voltages sum to zero in a circuit loop, and average currents sum to zero at a node:

$$\sum_k V_k = 0 \tag{3.9}$$

$$\sum_k I_k = 0 \tag{3.10}$$

3.3 SIMPLIFYING ASSUMPTIONS

To gain a clear understanding in the dc steady state, we will first make certain simplifying assumptions by ignoring the second-order effects listed below, and later on include them for accuracy:

1. Transistors, diodes, and other passive components are all ideal unless explicitly stated. For example, we will ignore the inductor equivalent series resistance.
2. The input is a pure dc voltage V_{in}.
3. Design specifications require the ripple in the output voltage to be very small. Therefore, we will initially assume that the output voltage is purely dc without any ripple, that is $v_o(t) \simeq V_o$, and later calculate the ripple in it.
4. The current at the current-port of the power-pole through the series inductor flows continuously, resulting in a continuous conduction mode, CCM (the discontinuous conduction mode, DCM, is analyzed later on).

It is, of course possible to analyze a switching circuit in detail, without making the above simplifying assumptions as we will do in PSpice-based computer simulations. However, the two-step approach followed here, where the analysis is first carried out by neglecting the second-order effects and adding them later on, provides a deeper insight into converter operation and the design tradeoffs.

3.4 COMMON OPERATING PRINCIPLES

In all three converters that we will analyze, the inductor associated with the switching power-pole acts as an energy transfer means from the input to the output. Turning on the transistor of the power-pole increases the inductor energy by a certain amount, drawn from the input source, which is transferred to the output stage during the off-interval of the transistor. In addition to this inductive energy-transfer means, depending on the converter, there may be additional energy transfer directly from the input to the output, as discussed in the following sections.

3.5 BUCK CONVERTER SWITCHING ANALYSIS IN DC STEADY STATE

A Buck converter is shown in Figure 3.5a, with the transistor and the diode making up the bi-positional switch of the power-pole. The equivalent series resistance (ESR) of the capacitor will be ignored. Turning on the transistor increases the inductor current in the sub-circuit of Figure 3.5b. When the transistor is turned off, the inductor current "freewheels" through the diode, as shown in Figure 3.5c.

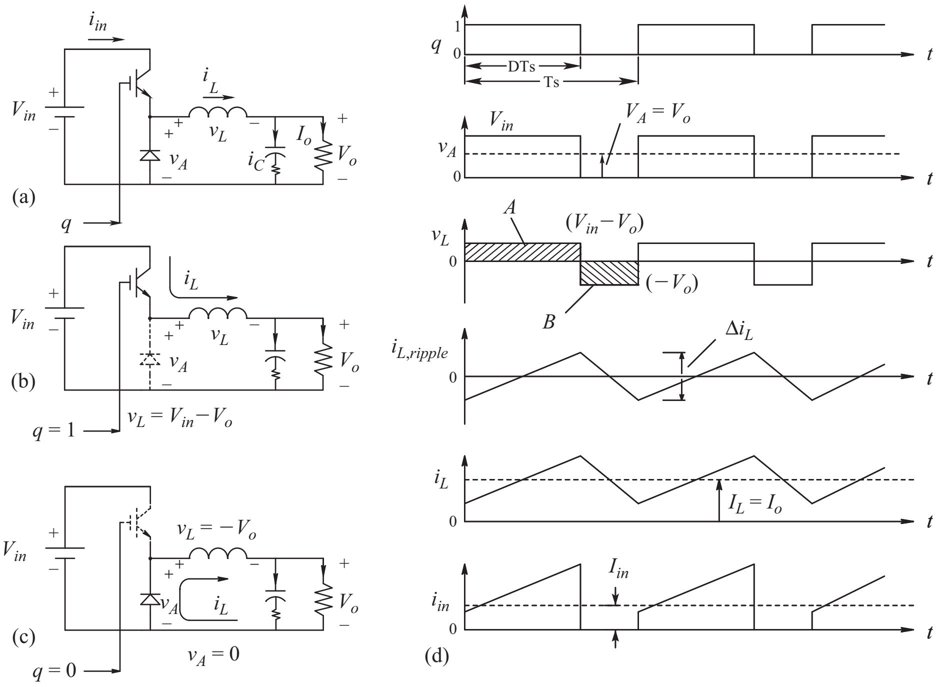


FIGURE 3.5 Buck dc-dc converter.

For a given transistor switching function waveform $q(t)$ shown in Figure 3.5d with a switch duty-ratio D in steady state, the waveform of the voltage v_A at the current-port follows $q(t)$ as shown. In Figure 3.5d, integrating v_A over T_s, the average voltage V_A equals DV_{in}. Recognizing that the average inductor voltage is zero (Equation 3.4) and the average voltages in the output loop sum to zero (Equation 3.9),

$$V_o = V_A = DV_{in} \tag{3.11}$$

The inductor voltage v_L pulsates between two values, $(V_{in} - V_o)$ and $(-V_o)$ as plotted in Figure 3.5d. Since the average inductor voltage is zero, the volt-second areas during two sub-intervals are equal in magnitude and opposite in sign. In dc steady state, the inductor current can be expressed as the sum of its average and the ripple component:

$$i_L(t) = I_L + i_{L,ripple}(t) \tag{3.12}$$

where the average current depends on the output load, and the ripple component is dictated by the waveform of the inductor voltage v_L in Figure 3.5d. As shown in Figure 3.5d, the ripple component consists of linear segments, rising when v_L is positive and falling when v_L is negative. The peak-peak ripple can be calculated as follows, using either area A or B:

$$\Delta i_L = \frac{1}{L}\underbrace{(V_{in} - V_o)DT_s}_{\text{Area A}} = \frac{1}{L}\underbrace{V_o(1 - D)T_s}_{\text{Area B}} \tag{3.13}$$

This ripple component is plotted in Figure 3.5d. Since the average capacitor current is zero in dc steady state, the average inductor current equals the output load current by the Kirchhoff's current law applied at the output node:

$$I_L = I_o = \frac{V_o}{R} \tag{3.14}$$

The inductor current waveform is shown in Figure 3.5d by superposing the average and the ripple components.

Next, we will calculate the ripple current through the output capacitor. In practice, the filter capacitor is large enough to achieve the output voltage, nearly dc $(v_o(t) \simeq V_o)$. Therefore, to the ripple-frequency current, the path through the capacitor offers much smaller impedance than through the load resistance, hence justifying the assumption that the ripple component of the inductor current flows entirely through the capacitor. That is, in Figure 3.5a,

$$i_C(t) \simeq i_{L,ripple}(t) \tag{3.15}$$

In practice, in a capacitor, the voltage drops across its Equivalent Series Resistance (ESR) and the Equivalent Series Inductance (ESL) dominate over the voltage drop $\frac{1}{C}\int i_C\,dt$ across C, given by Equation 3.6. The capacitor current i_C, equal to $i_{L,ripple}$ in Figure 3.5d, can be used to calculate the ripple in the output voltage.

The input current i_{in} pulsates, equal to i_L when the transistor is on, otherwise zero, as plotted in Figure 3.5d. An input L-C filter is often needed to prevent the pulsating current from being drawn from the input dc source. The average value of the input current in Figure 3.5d is

$$I_{in} = DI_L = DI_o \quad \text{(using Eq. 3.14)} \tag{3.16}$$

Using Equations 3.11 and 3.16, we can confirm that the input power equals the output power, as it should, in this idealized converter:

$$V_{in}I_{in} = V_oI_o \tag{3.17}$$

Equation 3.11 shows that the voltage conversion ratio of Buck converters in the continuous conduction mode (CCM) depends on D, but is independent of the output load. If the output load decreases (that is, if the load resistance increases) to the extent that the inductor current becomes discontinuous, then the input-output relationship in CCM is no longer valid, and, if the duty-ratio *D* were to be held constant, the output voltage in the discontinuous conduction mode would rise above that given by Equation 3.11. The discontinuous conduction mode will be considered fully in section 3.15.

Example 3.3

In the Buck dc-dc converter of Figure 3.5a, $L = 24\ \mu\text{H}$. It is operating in dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 20$ V, $D = 0.6$, $P_o = 14$ W, and $f_s = 200$ kHz. Assuming ideal components, calculate and draw the waveforms shown earlier in Figure 3.5d.

Solution With $f_s = 200$ kHz, $T_s = 5\ \mu\text{s}$ and $T_{on} = DT_s = 3\ \mu\text{s}$. $V_o = DV_{in} = 12$ V.

The inductor voltage v_L fluctuates between $(V_{in} - V_o) = 8$ V and $(-V_o) = -12$ V, as shown in Figure 3.6.

Therefore, from Equation 3.13, the ripple in the inductor current is $\Delta i_L = 1$ A. The average inductor current is $I_L = I_o = P_o/V_o = 1.167$ A. Therefore, $i_L = I_L + i_{L,ripple}$, as shown in Figure 3.6. When the transistor is on, $i_{in} = i_L$, otherwise zero. The average input currents is $I_{in} = DI_o = 0.7$ A.

3.6 BOOST CONVERTER SWITCHING ANALYSIS IN DC STEADY STATE

A Boost converter is shown in Figure 3.7a. It is conventional to show power flow from the left to the right. To follow this convention, the circuit of Figure 3.7a is flipped and drawn in Figure 3.7b. The output stage consists of the output load and a large filter capacitor that is used to minimize the output voltage ripple. This capacitor at the output initially gets charged to a voltage equal to V_{in} through the diode.

Compared to Buck converters, the Boost converters have two major differences:

1. Power flow is from a lower voltage dc input to the higher load voltage, in the opposite direction through the switching power-pole. Hence, the current direction through the series inductor of the power pole is chosen as shown, opposite to that in a Buck converter, and this current remains positive in the continuous conduction mode.
2. In the switching power-pole, the bi-positional switch is realized using a transistor and a diode that are placed as shown in Figure 3.7a. Across the output, a filter capacitor *C* is placed, which forms the voltage port and minimizes the output ripple voltage.

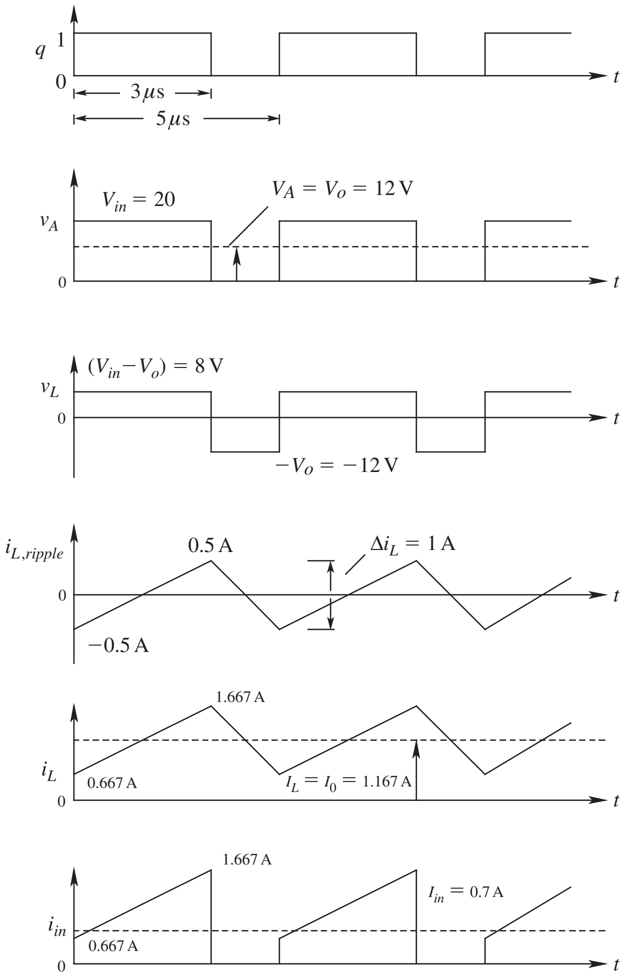


FIGURE 3.6 Example 3.3.

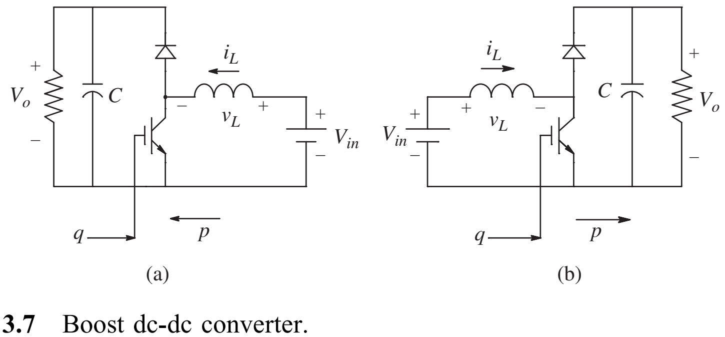

i_L
+
V_o
−
C
−
v_L
+
+
V_{in}
−
q
p
(a)
i_L
+
V_{in}
−
+
v_L
−
C
+
V_o
−
q
p
(b)

FIGURE 3.7 Boost dc-dc converter.

In a Boost converter, turning on the transistor in the bottom position applies the input voltage across the inductor such that v_L equals V_{in}, as shown in Figure 3.8a, and i_L linearly ramps up, increasing the energy in the inductor. Turning off the transistor forces the inductor current to flow through the diode as shown in Figure 3.8b, and some of the inductively stored energy is transferred to the output stage that consists of the filter capacitor and the output load across it.

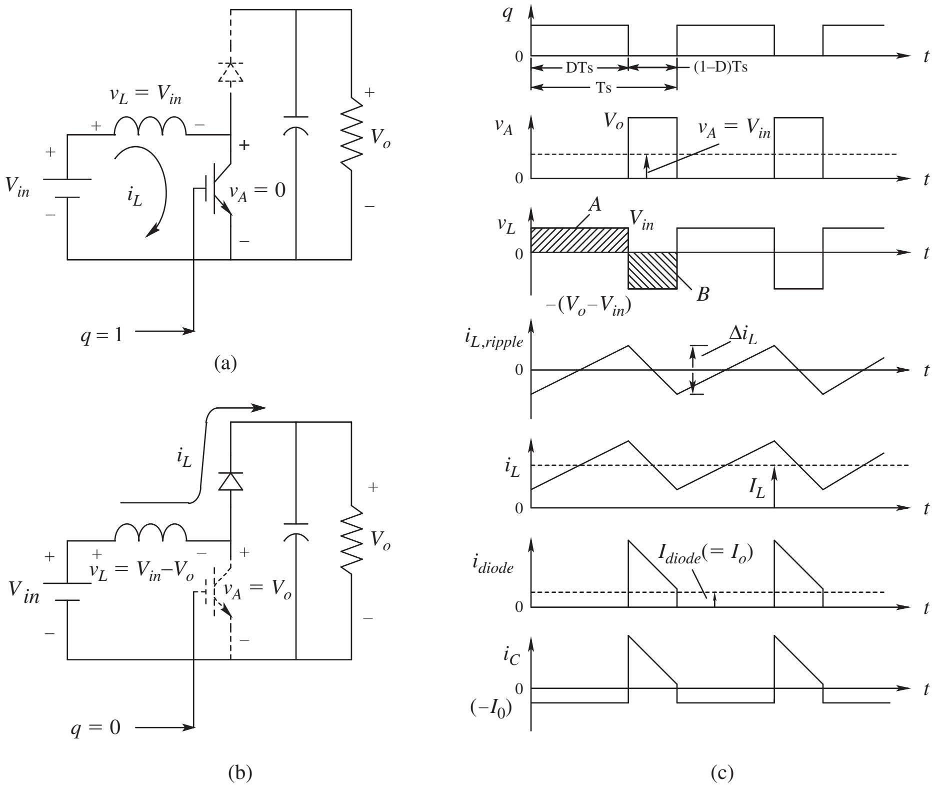
The transistor switching function is shown in Figure 3.8c, with a steady state duty-ratio D. Because of the transistor in the bottom position in the power-pole, the resulting v_A waveform is as plotted in Figure 3.8c. Since the average voltage across the inductor in the dc steady state is zero, the average voltage V_A equals the input voltage V_{in}. The inductor voltage v_L pulsates between two values: V_{in} and $-(V_o - V_{in})$ as plotted in Figure 3.8c. Since the average inductor voltage is zero, the volt-second areas during the two sub-intervals are equal in magnitude and opposite in sign.

The input/output voltage ratio can be obtained either by the waveform of v_A or v_L in Figure 3.8c. Using the inductor voltage waveform whose average is zero in dc steady state,

$$V_{in}(DT_s) = (V_o - V_{in})(1 - D)T_s \tag{3.18}$$

Hence,

$$\frac{V_o}{V_{in}} = \frac{1}{1 - D} \qquad (V_o > V_{in}) \tag{3.19}$$



(a)

(b)

(c)

FIGURE 3.8 Boost converter: operation and waveforms.

The inductor current waveform consists of its average value, which depends on the output load, and a ripple component that depends on v_L:

$$i_L(t) = I_L + i_{L,ripple}(t) \tag{3.20}$$

where as shown in Figure 3.8c, $i_{L,ripple}\left(= \frac{1}{L}\int v_L \cdot d\tau\right)$, whose average value is zero, consists of linear segments, rising when v_L is positive and falling when v_L is negative. The peak-peak ripple can be calculated by using either area A or B:

$$\Delta i_L = \frac{1}{L}\underbrace{V_{in}(DT_s)}_{\text{Area A}} = \frac{1}{L}\underbrace{(V_o - V_{in})(1-D)T_s}_{\text{Area B}} \tag{3.21}$$

In a Boost converter, the inductor current equals the input current, whose average can be calculated from the output load current by equating the input and the output powers:

$$V_{in}I_{in} = V_o I_o \tag{3.22}$$

Hence, using Equation 3.19 and $I_o = V_o/R$,

$$I_L = I_{in} = \frac{V_o}{V_{in}} I_o = \frac{I_o}{1-D} = \frac{1}{1-D}\frac{V_o}{R} \tag{3.23}$$

The inductor current waveform is shown in Figure 3.8c, superposing its average and the ripple components.

The current through the diode equals 0 when the transistor is on, otherwise it equals i_L, as plotted in Figure 3.8c. In the dc steady state, the average capacitor current I_C is zero and therefore the average diode current equals the output current I_o. In practice, the filter capacitor is large to achieve the output voltage nearly dc $(v_o(t) \simeq V_o)$. Therefore, to the ripple-frequency component in the diode current, the path through the capacitor offers much smaller impedance than through the load resistance, hence justifies the assumption that the ripple component of the diode current flows entirely through the capacitor. That is,

$$i_C(t) \simeq i_{diode,ripple}(t) = i_{diode} - I_o \tag{3.24}$$

In practice, the voltage drops across the capacitor ESR and the ESL dominate over the voltage drop $\frac{1}{C}\int i_C \, dt$ across C. The plot of i_C in Figure 3.8c can be used to calculate the ripple in the output voltage.

Example 3.4

In a Boost converter of Figure 3.8a, the inductor current has $\Delta i_L = 2$ A. It is operating in dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 5$ V, $V_o = 12$ V, $P_o = 11$ W, and $f_s = 200$ kHz. (a) Assuming ideal components, calculate L and draw the waveforms as shown in Figure 3.8c.

Solution From Equation 3.19, the duty-ratio $D = 0.583$. With $f_s = 200$ kHz, $T_s = 5\ \mu$s and $T_{on} = DT_s = 2.917\ \mu$s. v_L fluctuates between $V_{in} = 5$ V and $-(V_o - V_{in}) = -7$ V. Using the conditions during the transistor on-time, from Equation 3.21,

$$L = \frac{V_{in}}{\Delta i_L} DT_s = 7.29\ \mu\text{H}$$

The average inductor current is $I_L = I_{in} = P_{in}(= P_o)/V_{in} = 2.2$ A, and $i_L = I_L + i_{L,ripple}$, as shown in Figure 3.9. When the transistor is on, the diode current is zero; otherwise $i_{diode} = i_L$. The average diode current is equal to the average output current:

$$I_{diode} = I_o = (1 - D)I_{in} = 0.917\ \text{A}$$

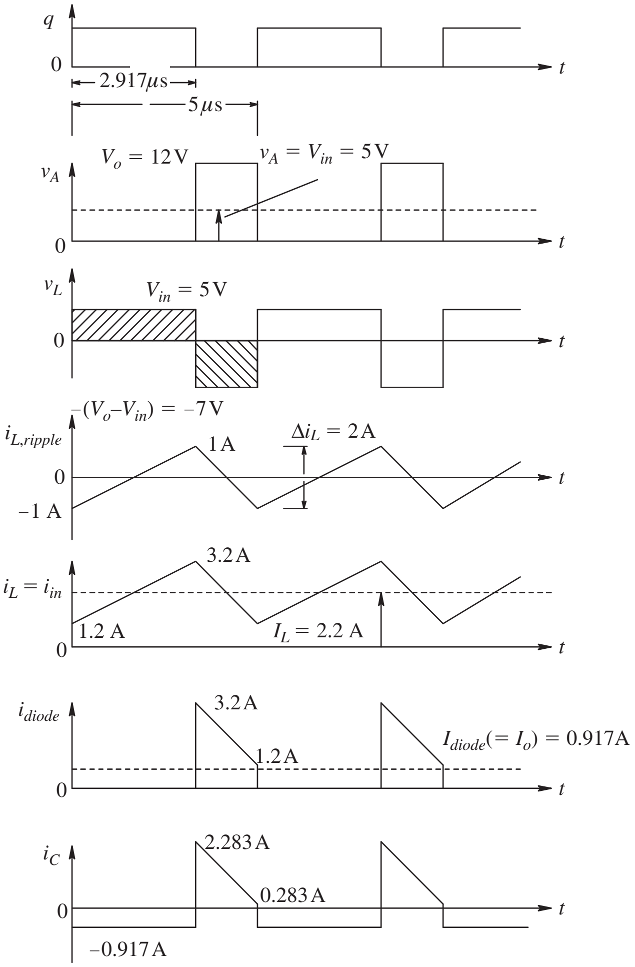


FIGURE 3.9 Example 3.4.

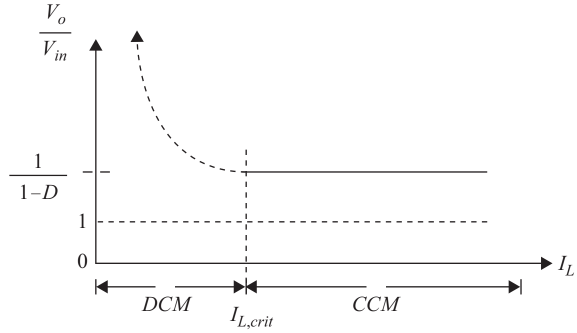


FIGURE 3.10 Boost converter: voltage transfer ratio.

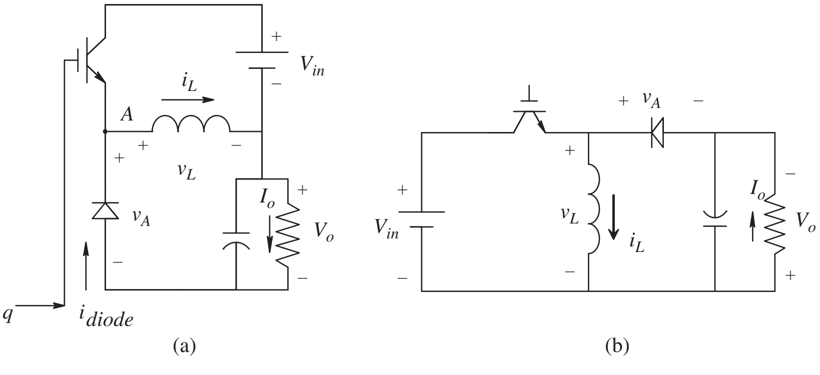
The capacitor current is $i_C = i_{diode} - I_o$. When the transistor is on, the diode current is zero and $i_C = -I_o = -0.917$ A. The capacitor current jumps to a value of 2.283 A and drops to $1 - 0.917 = 0.083$ A.

The above analysis shows that the voltage conversion ratio (Equation 3.19) of Boost converters in CCM depends on $1/(1 - D)$, and is independent of the output load, as shown in Figure 3.10. If the output load decreases to the extent that the average inductor current becomes less than a critical value $I_{L,crit}$, the inductor current becomes discontinuous, and in this discontinuous conduction mode (DCM) the input-output relationship of CCM is no longer valid, as shown in Figure 3.10.

If the duty-ratio D were to be held constant as shown in Figure 3.10, the output voltage could rise to dangerously high levels in DCM, considered fully in section 3.15.

3.7 BUCK-BOOST CONVERTER ANALYSIS IN DC STEADY STATE

Buck-Boost converters allow the output voltage to be greater or lower than the input voltage based on the switch duty-ratio D. A Buck-Boost converter is shown in Figure 3.11a, where



(a) (b)

FIGURE 3.11 Buck-Boost dc-dc converter.

the switching power-pole is implemented as shown. Conventionally, to make the power flow from left to right, Buck-Boost converters are drawn as in Figure 3.11b.

As shown in Figure 3.12a, turning on the transistor applies the input voltage across the inductor such that v_L equals V_{in}, and the current linearly ramps up, increasing the energy in the inductor. Turning off the transistor results in the inductor current flowing through the diode, as shown in Figure 3.12b, transferring energy increase in the inductor during the previous transistor state to the output.

The transistor switching function is shown in Figure 3.12c, with a steady state duty-ratio D. The resulting v_A waveform is as plotted. Since the average voltage across the inductor in the dc steady state is zero, the average V_A equals the output voltage V_o. The inductor voltage pulsates between two values: V_{in} and $-V_o$, as plotted in Figure 3.12c. Since the average inductor voltage is zero, the volt-second areas during the two sub-intervals are equal in magnitude and opposite in sign.

The input/output voltage ratio can be obtained either by the waveform of v_A or v_L in Figure 3.12c. Using the v_L waveform whose average is zero in the dc steady state,

$$DV_{in} = (1 - D)V_o \tag{3.25}$$

Hence,

$$\frac{V_o}{V_{in}} = \frac{D}{1 - D} \tag{3.26}$$

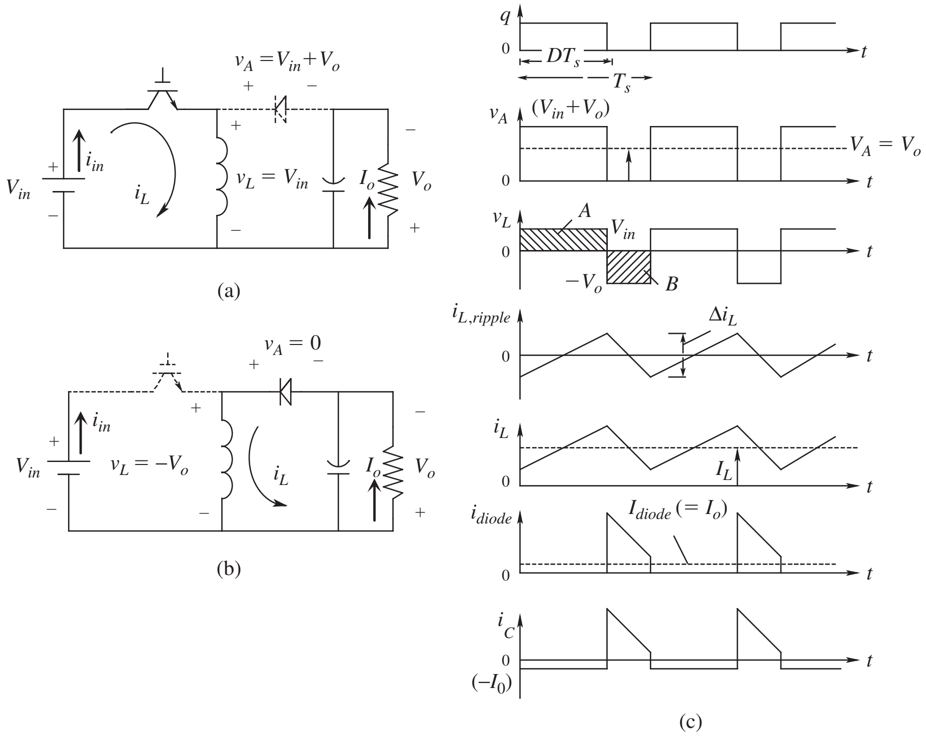


FIGURE 3.12 Buck-Boost converter: operation and waveforms.

The inductor current consists of an average value, which depends on the output load, and a ripple component that depends on v_L:

$$i_L(t) = I_L + i_{L,ripple}(t) \tag{3.27}$$

where as shown in Figure 3.12c, $i_{L,ripple}\left(= \frac{1}{L}\int v_L \cdot d\tau\right)$, whose average value is zero, consists of linear segments, rising when v_L is positive and falling when v_L is negative. The peak-peak ripple can be calculated by using either area A or B,

$$\Delta i_L = \frac{1}{L}\underbrace{V_{in}(DT_s)}_{\text{Area A}} = \frac{1}{L}\underbrace{V_o(1-D)T_s}_{\text{Area B}} \tag{3.28}$$

Applying the Kirchhoff's current law in Figure 3.11a or b, the average inductor current equals the sum of the average input current and the average output current (note that the average capacitor current is zero in dc steady state),

$$I_L = I_{in} + I_o \tag{3.29}$$

Equating the input and the output powers,

$$V_{in}\, I_{in} = V_o I_o \tag{3.30}$$

and using Equation 3.26,

$$I_{in} = \frac{V_o}{V_{in}} I_o = \frac{D}{1-D} I_o \tag{3.31}$$

Hence, using Equations 3.29 and 3.31,

$$I_L = I_{in} + I_o = \frac{1}{1-D} I_o = \frac{1}{1-D}\frac{V_o}{R} \tag{3.32}$$

Superposing the average and the ripple components, the inductor current waveform is shown in Figure 3.12c.

The diode current is zero, except when it conducts the inductor current, as plotted in Figure 3.12c. In the dc steady state, the average current I_C through the capacitor is zero, and therefore by the Kirchhoff's current law, the average diode current equals the output current. In practice, the filter capacitor is large to achieve the output voltage nearly dc $(v_o(t) \simeq V_o)$. Therefore, to the ripple-frequency current, the path through the capacitor offers much smaller impedance than through the load resistance, hence justifies the assumption that the ripple component of the diode current flows entirely through the capacitor. That is,

$$i_C(t) \simeq i_{diode,ripple}(t) \tag{3.33}$$

In practice, the voltage drops across the capacitor ESR and the ESL dominate over the voltage drop $\frac{1}{C}\int i_C\, dt$ across C. The plot of i_C in Figure 3.12c can be used to calculate the ripple in the output voltage.

Example 3.5

A Buck-Boost converter of 3.11b is operating in dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 14$ V, $V_o = 42$ V, $P_o = 21$ W, $\Delta i_L = 1.8$ A and $f_s = 200$ kHz. Assuming ideal components, calculate L and draw the waveforms as shown in Figure 3.12c.

Solution From Equation 3.26, $D = 0.75$. $T_s = 1/f_s = 5\ \mu$s and $T_{on} = DT_s = 3.75\ \mu$s as shown in Figure 3.13. The inductor voltage v_L fluctuates between $V_{in} = 14$ V and $-V_o = -42$ V. Using Equation 3.28

$$L = \frac{V_{in}}{\Delta i_L} DT_s = 29.17\ \mu\text{H}.$$

The average input current is $I_{in} = P_{in}(= P_o)/V_{in} = 1.5$ A. $I_o = P_o/V_o = 0.5$ A. Therefore, $I_L = I_{in} + I_o = 2$ A. When the transistor is on, the diode current is zero; otherwise $i_{diode} = i_L$. The average diode current is equal to the average output current: $I_{diode} = I_o = 0.5$ A. The capacitor current is $i_C = i_{diode} - I_o$. When the transistor is on, the diode current is zero and $i_C = -I_o = -0.5$ A. The capacitor current jumps to a value of 2.4 A and drops to $1.1 - 0.5 = 0.6$ A.

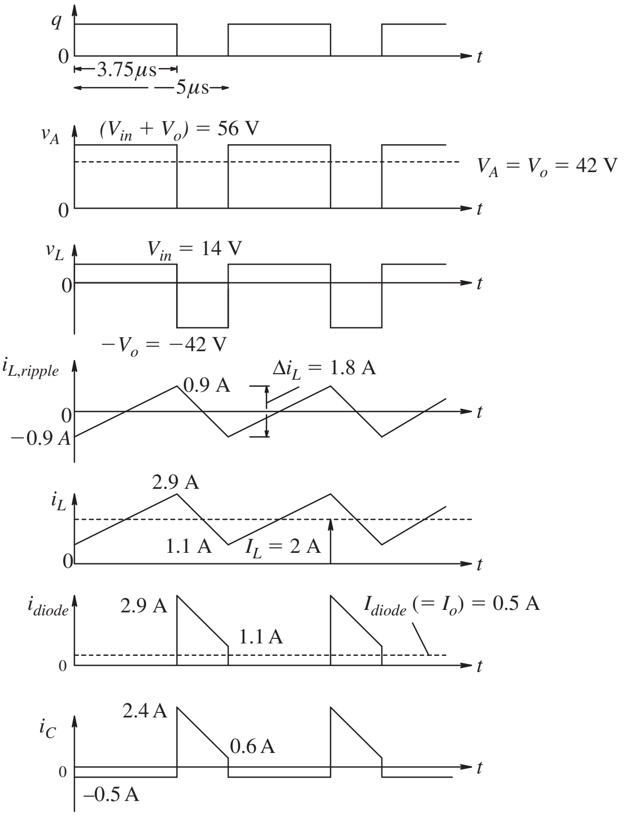

q
0
t
3.75μs
5μs
v_A
$(V_{in} + V_o) = 56$ V
$V_A = V_o = 42$ V
0
t
v_L
$V_{in} = 14$ V
0
t
$-V_o = -42$ V
$i_{L,ripple}$
0.9 A
$\Delta i_L = 1.8$ A
0
−0.9 A
t
2.9 A
i_L
1.1 A
$I_L = 2$ A
0
t
i_{diode}
2.9 A
1.1 A
I_{diode} (= I_o) = 0.5 A
0
t
2.4 A
i_C
0.6 A
0
−0.5 A
t

FIGURE 3.13 Example 3.5.

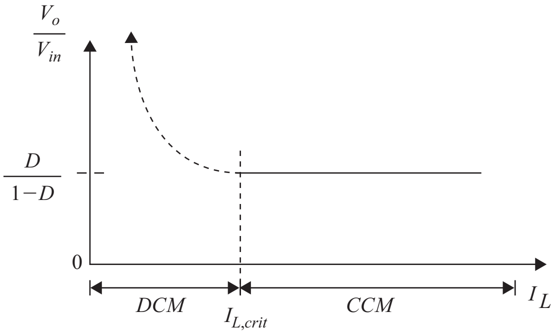


FIGURE 3.14 Buck-Boost converter: voltage transfer ratio.

The above analysis shows that the voltage conversion ratio (Equation 3.26) of Buck-Boost converters in CCM depends on $D/(1-D)$, and is independent of the output load, as shown in Figure 3.14. If the output load decreases to the extent that the average inductor current becomes less than a critical value $I_{L,crit}$, the inductor current becomes discontinuous and in this Discontinuous Conduction Mode (DCM), the input-output relationship of CCM is no longer valid, as shown in Figure 3.14. If the duty-ratio D were to be held constant as shown in Figure 3.14, the output voltage could rise to dangerously high levels in DCM, considered fully in section 3.15.

3.7.1 Other Buck-Boost Topologies

There are two variations of the Buck-Boost topology, which are used in certain applications. These two topologies are briefly described below.

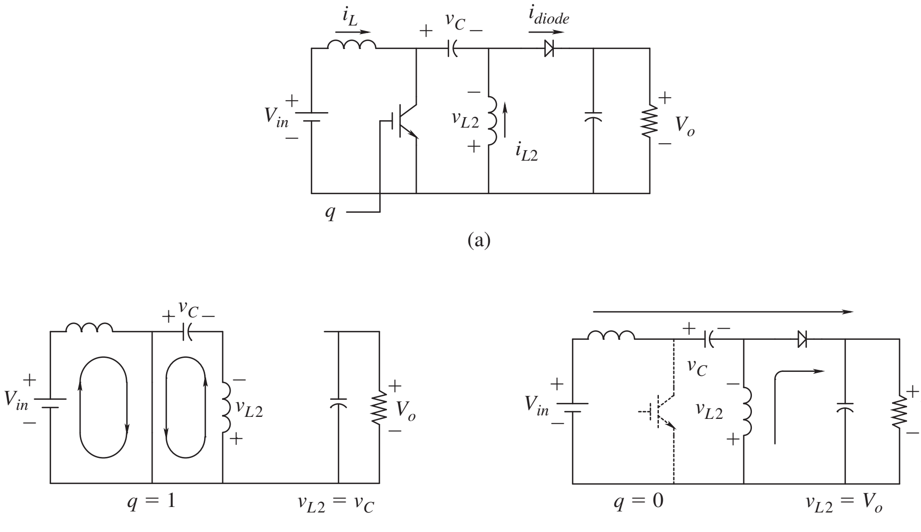
3.7.1.1 SEPIC Converters (Single-Ended Primary Inductor Converters)

The SEPIC converter shown in Figure 3.15a is used in certain applications where the current drawn from the input is required to be relatively ripple-free. By applying the Kirchhoff's voltage law and the fact that average inductor voltage is zero in the dc steady state, the capacitor in this converter gets charged to an average value that equals the input voltage V_{in} with the polarity shown. During the on-interval of the transistor, DT_s, as shown in Figure 3.15b, the diode gets reverse biased by the sum of the capacitor and the output voltages, and i_{L1} and i_{L2} flow through the transistor. During the off-interval $(1-D)T_s$, i_{L1} and i_{L2} flow through the diode, as shown in Figure 3.15c. The voltage across L_2 equals v_C during the on-interval, and equals $(-V_o)$ during the off-interval. In terms of the average value of the capacitor voltage that equals V_{in} (by applying Equation 3.9 in Figure 3.15a), equating the average voltage across L_2 to zero results in,

$$DV_{in} = (1-D)V_o \tag{3.34}$$

or,

$$\frac{V_o}{V_{in}} = \frac{D}{1-D} \tag{3.35}$$


i_L
v_C
i_{diode}
V_{in}
v_{L2}
i_{L2}
V_o
q
$q = 1$
$v_{L2} = v_C$
$q = 0$
$v_{L2} = V_o$

(a)

(b)

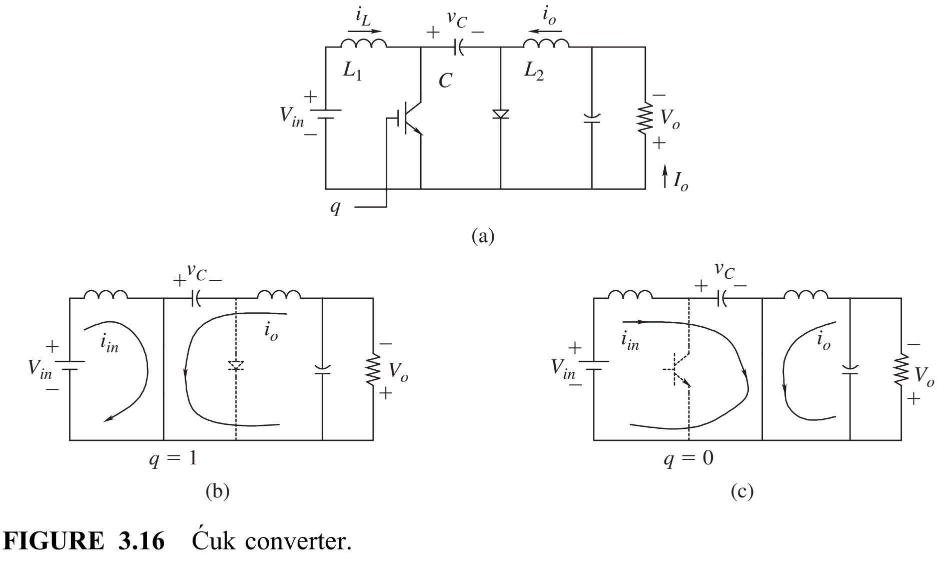
(c)

FIGURE 3.15 SEPIC converter.

Unlike the Buck-Boost converters, the output voltage polarity in SEPIC converter remains the same as that of the input.

3.7.1.2 Ćuk Converters

Named after its inventor, the Ćuk converter is as shown in Figure 3.16a, where the energy transfer means is through the capacitor C between the two inductors. Using Equation 3.9 in Figure 3.16a, this capacitor voltage has an average value of $(V_{in} + V_o)$ with the polarity


i_L
v_C
i_o
L_1
C
L_2
V_{in}
V_o
I_o
q
i_{in}
$q = 1$
$q = 0$

(a)

(b)

(c)

FIGURE 3.16 Ćuk converter.

shown. During the on-interval of the transistor, DT_s, as shown in Figure 3.16b, the diode gets reverse biased by the capacitor voltage, and the input and the output currents flow through the transistor. During the off-interval $(1-D)T_s$, the input and the output currents flow through the diode, as shown in Figure 3.16c. In terms of the average values of the inductor currents, equating the net change in charge on the capacitor over T_s to zero in steady state,

$$DI_o = (1-D)I_{in} \tag{3.36}$$

or,

$$\frac{I_{in}}{I_o} = \frac{D}{1-D} \tag{3.37}$$

Equating input and output powers in this idealized converter leads to,

$$\frac{V_o}{V_{in}} = \frac{D}{1-D} \tag{3.38}$$

which shows the same functionality as Buck-Boost converters. One of the advantages of the Ćuk converter is that it has nonpulsating currents at the input and the output but it suffers from the same component stress disadvantages as the Buck-Boost converters and produces an output voltage of the polarity opposite to that of the input.

3.8 TOPOLOGY SELECTION [2]

For selecting between the three converter topologies discussed in this chapter, the stresses listed in Table 3.1 can be compared, which are based on the assumption that the inductor ripple current is negligible.

From the above table, we can clearly conclude that the Buck-Boost converter suffers from several additional stresses. Therefore, it should be used only if both the Buck and the Boost capabilities are needed. Otherwise, the Buck or the Boost converter should be used based on the desired capability. A detailed analysis is carried out in [2].

TABLE 3.1 Topology Selection Criteria

Criterion		**Buck**	**Boost**	**Buck-Boost**
Transistor $\hat{V}$		V_{in}	V_o	$(V_{in}+V_o)$
Transistor $\hat{I}$		I_o	I_{in}	$I_{in}+I_o$
I_{rms}	Transistor	$\sqrt{D}I_o$	$\sqrt{D}I_{in}$	$\sqrt{D}(I_{in}+I_o)$
I_{avg}	Transistor	DI_o	DI_{in}	$D(I_{in}+I_o)$
	Diode	$(1-D)I_o$	$(1-D)I_{in}$	$(1-D)(I_{in}+I_o)$
I_L		I_o	I_{in}	$I_{in}+I_o$
Effect of L on C		significant	little	little
Pulsating Current		input	output	both

3.9 WORST-CASE DESIGN

The worst-case design should consider the ranges in which the input voltage and the output load vary. As mentioned earlier, often converters above a few tens of watts are designed to operate in CCM. To ensure CCM even under very light load conditions would require prohibitively large inductance. Hence, the inductance value chosen is often no larger than three times the critical inductance $(L < 3L_c)$, where the critical inductance L_c is the value of the inductor that will make the converter operate at the border of CCM and DCM at full-load.

3.10 SYNCHRONOUS-RECTIFIED BUCK CONVERTER FOR VERY LOW OUTPUT VOLTAGES [3]

Operating voltages in computing and communication equipment have already dropped to an order of 1 V and even lower voltages, such as 0.5 V, are predicted in the near future. At these low voltages, the diode (even a Schottky diode) of the power-pole in a Buck converter has unacceptably high voltage drop across it, resulting in extremely poor converter efficiency.

As a solution to this problem, the switching power-pole in a Buck converter is implemented using two MOSFETs, as shown in Figure 3.17a, which are available with very low $R_{DS(on)}$ in low voltage ratings. The two MOSFETs are driven by almost complementary gate signals (some delay time, where both signals are low, is necessary to avoid the shoot-through of current through the two transistors), as shown in Figure 3.17b.

When the upper MOSFET is off, the inductor current flows through the channel, from the source to the drain, of the lower MOSFET that has gate voltage applied to it. This results in a very low voltage drop across the lower MOSFET. At light load conditions, the inductor current may be allowed to become negative without becoming discontinuous, flowing from the drain to the source of the lower MOSFET [3].

It is possible to achieve soft-switching in such converters, as discussed in Chapter 10, where the ripple in the total output and the input currents can be minimized by interleaving which is discussed in the next section.

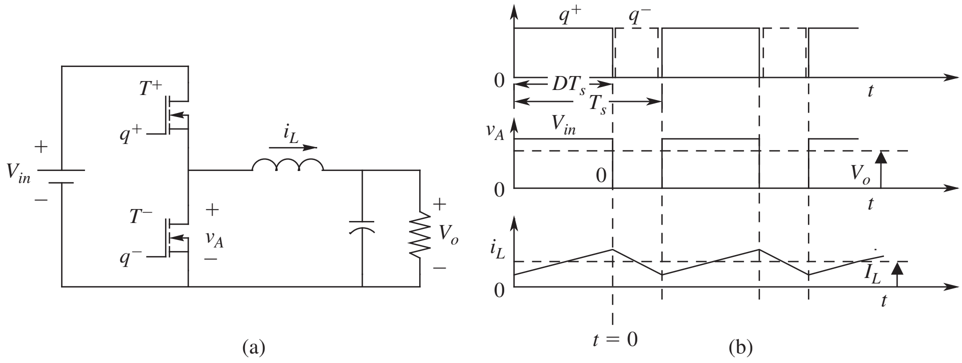
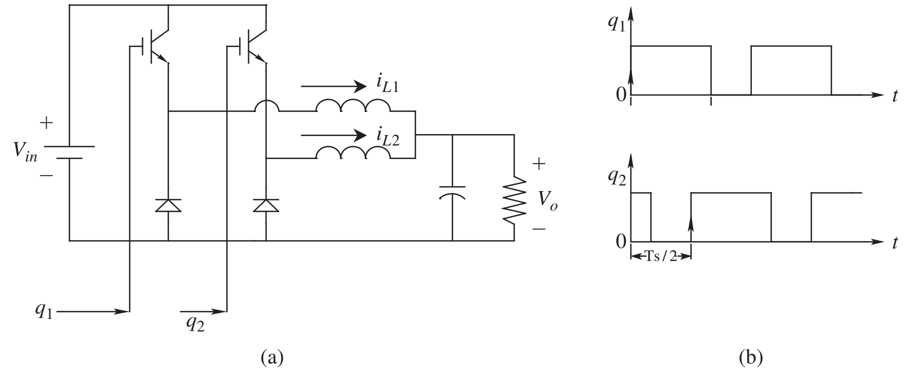


FIGURE 3.17 Buck converter: synchronous rectified.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 3.18 Interleaving of converters.

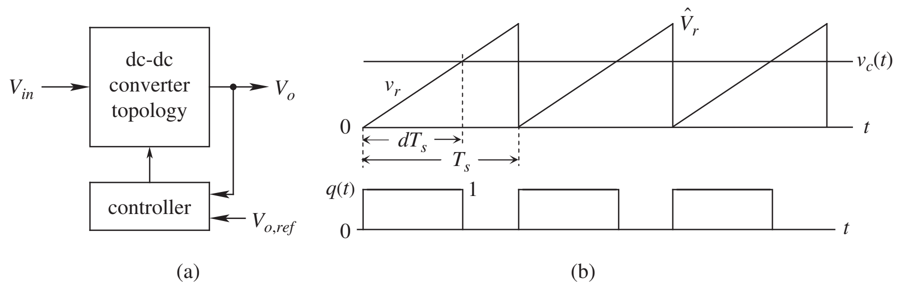
3.11 INTERLEAVING OF CONVERTERS [4]

Figure 3.18a shows two interleaved converters whose switching waveforms are phase shifted by $T_s/2$, as shown in Figure 3.18b. In general, n such converters can be used, their operation phase shifted by T_s/n. The advantage of such interleaved multi-phase converters is the cancellation of ripple in the input and the output currents to a large degree [4]. This is also a good way to achieve higher control bandwidth.

3.12 REGULATION OF DC-DC CONVERTERS BY PWM

Almost all dc-dc converters are operated with their output voltages regulated to equal their reference values within a specified tolerance band (for example, ±1% around its nominal value) in response to disturbances in the input voltage and the output load. The average output of the switching power-pole in a dc-dc converter can be controlled by pulsed-width-modulating (PWM) the duty-ratio $d(t)$ of this power-pole.

Figure 3.19a shows in a block-diagram form of a regulated dc-dc converter. It shows that the converter output voltage is measured and compared with its reference value within a PWM controller IC [5], briefly described in Chapter 2. The error between the two voltages is amplified by an amplifier, whose output is the control voltage $v_c(t)$. Within the PWM-IC [5], the control voltage is compared with a ramp signal $v_r(t)$ as shown in Figure 3.19b, where the comparator output represents the switching function $q(t)$ whose pulse-width $d(t)$ can be modulated to regulate the output of the converter.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 3.19 Regulation of output by PWM.

The ramp signal v_r has the amplitude $\hat{V}_r$, and the switching frequency f_s constant. The output voltage of this comparator represents the transistor switching function $q(t)$, which equals 1 if $v_c(t) \geq v_r$; otherwise 0. The switch duty-ratio in Figure 3.19b is given as

$$d(t) = \frac{v_c(t)}{\hat{V}_r} \tag{3.39}$$

thus the control voltage, limited in a range between 0 and $\hat{V}_r$, linearly and dynamically controls the pulse-width $d(t)$ in Equation 3.39 and shown in Figure 3.19b. The topic of feedback controller design for regulating the output voltage is discussed in detail in Chapter 4.

3.13 DYNAMIC AVERAGE REPRESENTATION OF CONVERTERS IN CCM

In all three types of dc-dc converters in CCM, the switching power-pole switches between two sub-circuit states based on the switching function $q(t)$. (It switches between three sub-circuit states in DCM, where the switch can be considered "Stuck" between the on and the off positions during the subinterval when the inductor current is zero, discussed in detail in section 3.15.) It is very beneficial to obtain non-switching average models of these switch-mode converters for simulating the converter performance under dynamic conditions caused by the change of input voltage and/or the output load. Under the dynamic condition, the converter duty-ratio, and the average values of voltages and currents within the converter vary with time, but relatively slowly, with frequencies in an order of magnitude smaller than the switching frequency.

The switching power-pole is shown in Figure 3.20a, where the voltages and currents are labeled with the subscript *vp* for the voltage-port and *cp* for the current-port. In the above analysis for the three converters in the dc steady state, we can write the average voltage and current relationships for the bi-positional switch of the power-pole as,

$$V_{cp} = DV_{vp} \tag{3.40a}$$

$$I_{vp} = DI_o \tag{3.40b}$$

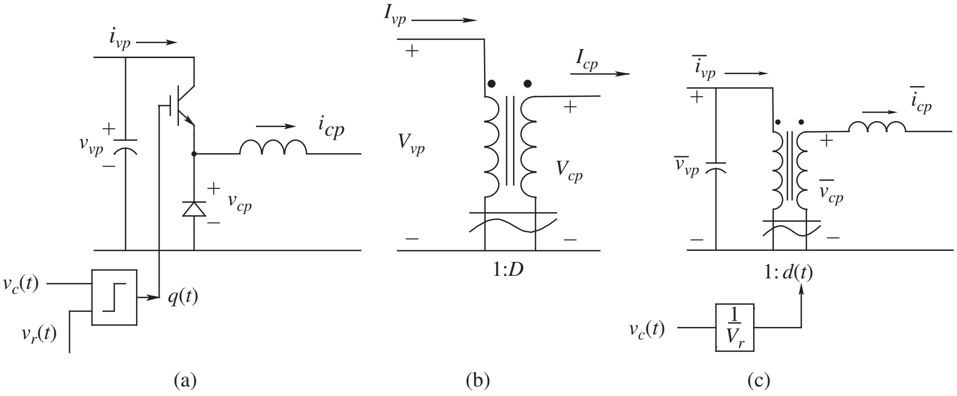


FIGURE 3.20 Average dynamic model of a switching power-pole.

Relationships in Equation 3.40 can be represented by an ideal transformer as shown in Figure 3.20b, where the ideal transformer, hypothetical and only a convenience for mathematical representation, can operate with ac as well dc voltages and currents, which a real transformer *cannot.* A symbol consisting of a straight bar, with a curve below it, is used to remind us of this fact. Since no electrical isolation exists between the voltage-port and the current-port of the switching power-pole, the two windings of this ideal transformer in Figure 3.20b are connected at the bottom. Moreover, the voltage at the voltage-port in Figure 3.20b cannot become negative, and d is limited to a range between 0 and 1.

Under dynamic conditions, the average model in Figure 3.20b of the bi-positional switch can be substituted in the power-pole of Figure 3.20a, resulting in the dynamic average model shown in Figure 3.20c, using Equation 3.39 for $d(t)$. Here, the uppercase letters used in the dc steady state relationships are replaced with lowercase letters with a "-" on top to represent average voltages and currents, which may vary dynamically with time: D by $d(t)$, V_{cp} by $\bar{v}_{cp}(t)$, I_{cp} by $\bar{i}_{cp}(t)$, and I_{vp} by $\bar{i}_{vp}(t)$. Therefore, from Equations 3.40a and b:

$$\bar{v}_{cp}(t) = d(t)\,\bar{v}_{vp}(t) \tag{3.41a}$$

$$\bar{i}_{vp}(t) = d(t)\,\bar{i}_{cp}(t) \tag{3.41b}$$

The above discussion shows that the dynamic average model of a switching power-pole in CCM is an ideal transformer with the turns-ratio $1{:}d(t)$. Using this model for the switching power-pole, the dynamic average models of the three converters shown in Figure 3.21a are as in Figure 3.21b in CCM. Note that in the Boost converter where the transistor is in the bottom position in the power-pole, the transformer turn-ratio is $1{:}(1-d)$ for the following reason: unlike Buck and Buck-Boost converters, the transistor in a Boost converter is in the bottom position. Therefore, when the transistor is on with a duty-ratio d, the effective bi-positional switch is in the "down" position, and the pole

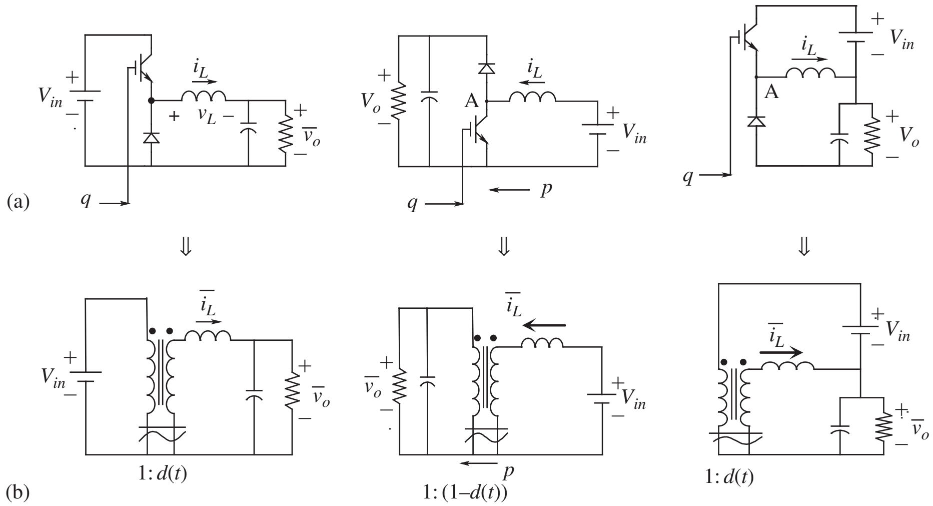


FIGURE 3.21 Average dynamic models: Buck (left), Boost (middle) and Buck-Boost (right).

duty-ratio is $(1-d)$. The average representation of these converters in DCM is described in section 3.15.5.

In the average representation of the switching converters, all the switching information is removed, and hence it provides an uncluttered understanding of achieving desired objectives. Moreover, the average model in simulating the dynamic response of a converter results in computation speeds orders of magnitude faster than that in the switching model, where the simulation time-step must be smaller than at least one-hundredth of the switching time-period T_s in order to achieve an accurate resolution.

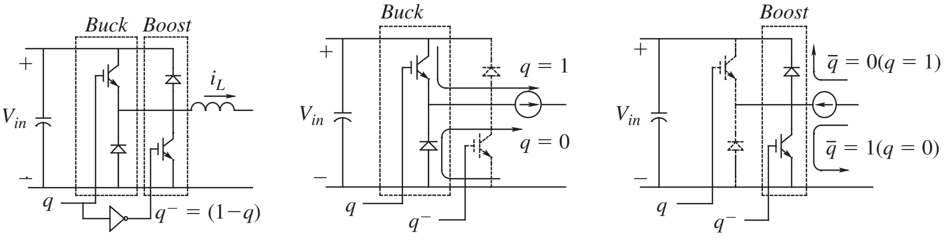
3.14 BI-DIRECTIONAL SWITCHING POWER-POLE

In Buck, Boost, and Buck-Boost dc-dc converters, the implementation of the switching power-pole by one transistor and one diode dictates the instantaneous current flow to be unidirectional. As shown in Figure 3.22a, by combining the switching power-pole implementations of Buck and Boost converters, where the two transistors are switched by complementary signals, allows a continuous bi-directional power and current capability.

In such a bi-directional switching power-pole, the positive inductor current as shown in Figure 3.22b represents a Buck mode, where only the transistor and the diode associated with the Buck converter take part. Similarly, as shown in Figure 3.22c, the negative inductor current represents a Boost mode, where only the transistor and the diode associated with the Boost converter take part. We will utilize such bi-directional switching power-poles in dc and ac motor drives, uninterruptible power supplies, and power systems applications discussed in Chapters 11 and 12.

In a bi-directional switching power-pole where the transistors are gated by complementary signals, the current through it can flow in either direction, and hence ideally (ignoring a small dead-time needed due to practical considerations when both the transistors are off simultaneously for a very short interval), a discontinuous conduction mode does not exist.

As described by Figures 3.22b and c above, the bi-directional switching power-pole in Figure 3.23a is in the "up" position, regardless of the direction of i_L, when $q=1$, as shown in Figure 3.23b. Similarly, it is in the "down" position, regardless of the direction of i_L, when $q=0$. Therefore, the average representation of the bi-directional switching power-pole in Figure 3.23a (represented as in Figure 3.23b) is an ideal transformer shown



i_L = positive
i_L = negative

(a) (b) (c)

FIGURE 3.22 Bi-directional power flow through a switching power-pole.

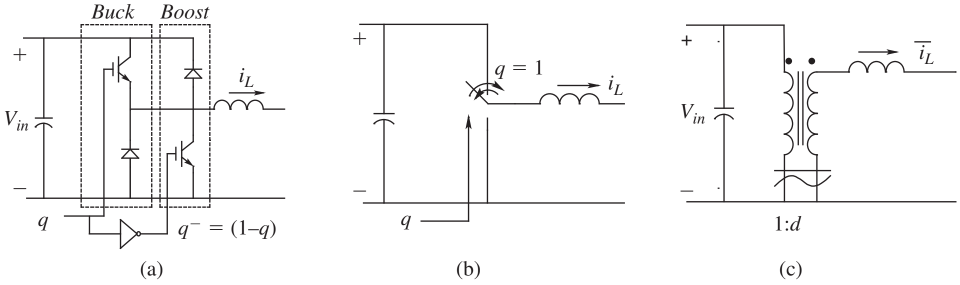


FIGURE 3.23 Average dynamic model of the switching power-pole with bi-directional power flow.

in Figure 3.23c with a turns-ratio $1{:}d(t)$, where $d(t)$ represents the pole duty-ratio that is also the duty-ratio of the transistor associated with the Buck mode.

3.15 DISCONTINUOUS-CONDUCTION MODE (DCM)

All dc-dc converters for unidirectional power and current flow have their switching power-pole implemented by one transistor and one diode, and hence go into a discontinuous conduction mode, DCM, below a certain output load. As an example as shown in Figure 3.24, if we keep the switch duty-ratio constant, decline in the output load results in the inductor average current to decrease until a critical load value is reached where the inductor current waveform reaches zero at the end of the turn-off interval.

The average inductor current in this condition, we will call the critical inductor current, $I_{L,crit}$. For loads below this critical value, the inductor current cannot reverse through the diode in any of the three converters (Buck, Boost, and Buck-Boost), and enters DCM where the inductor current remains zero for a finite interval, until the transistor is turned on, beginning the next switching cycle.

In DCM during the interval when the inductor current remains zero, there is no power drawn from the input source, and there is no energy in the inductor to transfer to the output stage. This interval of inactivity generally results in increased device stresses and the ratings of the passive components. DCM also results in noise and EMI, although the diode reverse recovery problem is minimized. Based on these considerations, converters above a few tens of watts are generally designed to operate in CCM, although all

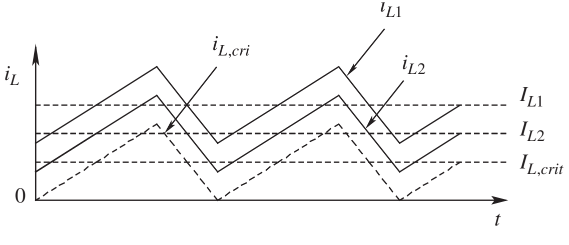


FIGURE 3.24 Inductor current at various loads; duty-ratio is kept constant.

of them implemented using one transistor and one diode will enter DCM at very light loads, and the feedback controller should be designed to operate adequately in both modes. It should be noted that designing the controller of some converters, such as the Buck-Boost converters, in CCM is more complicated, thus the designers may prefer to keep such converters in DCM for all possible operating conditions. This we will discuss further in the next chapter dealing with the feedback controller design.

3.15.1 Critical Condition at the Border of Continuous-Discontinuous Conduction

At the critical load condition with $i_{L,crit}$ shown in Figure 3.24, the average inductor current is one-half the peak value:

$$I_{L,crit} = \frac{\hat{i}_{L,crit}}{2} \tag{3.42}$$

At the critical condition, the peak inductor current in Figure 3.24 can be calculated by the considering the voltage v_L that is applied across the inductor for an interval DT_s when the transistor is on, causing the current to rise from zero to its peak value. In Buck converters, this inductor voltage is $(V_{in} - V_o)$. Using Equation 3.42 and the fact that $f_s = 1/T_s$ and $V_o = DV_{in}$ (the same voltage relationship holds in the critical condition as in CCM),

$$I_{L,crit,Buck} = \frac{V_{in}}{2Lf_s} D(1 - D) \tag{3.43}$$

In both the Boost and the Buck-Boost converters, the inductor voltage during DT_s equals V_{in}. Hence, using Equation 3.42,

$$I_{L,crit,Boost} = I_{L,crit,Buck-Boost} = \frac{V_{in}}{2Lf_s} D \tag{3.44}$$

Equating the critical values of the average inductor current given in Equations 3.43 and 3.44 to input/output currents, relating the output voltage V_o to the input voltage V_{in} and recognizing that the output resistance $R = V_o/I_o$, the critical values of the load resistance in these converters can be derived as:

$$\begin{aligned} R_{crit,Buck} &= \frac{2Lf_s}{(1 - D)} \\ R_{crit,Boost} &= \frac{2Lf_s}{D(1 - D)^2} \\ R_{crit,Buck-Boost} &= \frac{2Lf_s}{(1 - D)^2} \end{aligned} \tag{3.45}$$

A load resistance above this critical value results in less than a critical load, causing the corresponding converter to go into DCM.

3.15.2 Buck Converters in DCM in Steady State

Waveforms for a Buck converter under DCM are shown in Figure 3.25a. In DCM, the inductor current remains zero for a finite interval, resulting in an average value (equal to I_o) that is smaller than the critical value. When the inductor current is zero during $D_{off,2}T_s$ interval, the voltage across the inductor is zero and $v_A = V_o$.

In a Buck converter, i_{in} equals i_L during the on-interval, otherwise zero. In Figure 3.25a in DCM,

$$\hat{I}_{in} = \hat{I}_L = \frac{(V_{in} - V_o)}{L} DT_s \tag{3.46}$$

Hence the average value of the input current, recognizing that $f_s = 1/T_s$,

$$I_{in} = \frac{(V_{in} - V_o)}{2Lf_s} D^2 \tag{3.47}$$

Equating the average input power $P_{in}(= V_{in}I_{in})$ to the output power $P_o(= V_o^2/R)$, we can derive that (see homework problem 3.32),

$$V_o = \frac{V_{in}}{2}\left(\sqrt{M(M+4)} - M\right) \quad \text{in DCM} \tag{3.48a}$$

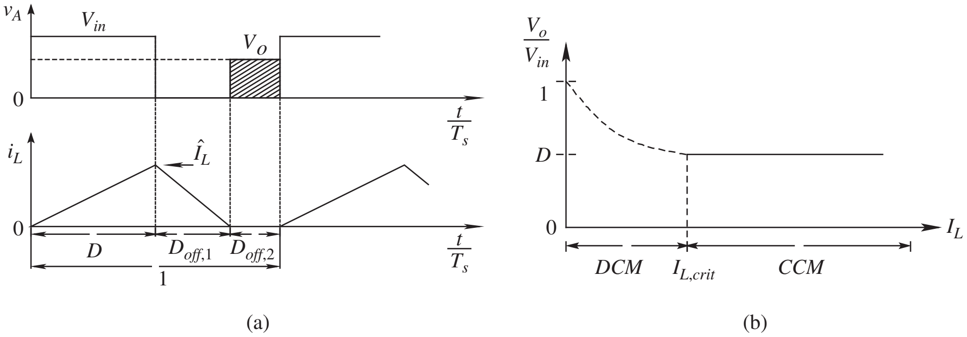
where,

$$M = \left(\frac{R}{2Lf_s}\right) D^2 \tag{3.48b}$$

Equation 3.48 shows that light loads with $R > R_{crit,Buck}$ cause the output voltage to rise towards the input voltage, as shown in Figure 3.25b. Of course in a regulated dc-dc converter, the feedback controller will adjust the duty-ratio in order to regulate the output voltage.

3.15.3 Boost Converters in DCM in Steady State

Waveforms for a Boost converter under DCM are shown in Figure 3.26a. In DCM when the inductor current is zero during $D_{off,2}T_s$ interval, the voltage across the inductor is zero,



(a) (b)

FIGURE 3.25 Buck converter in DCM.

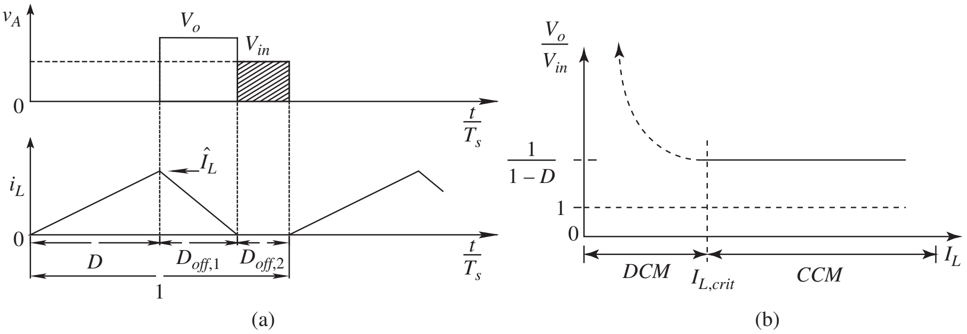


FIGURE 3.26 Boost converter in DCM.

and v_A equals V_{in}. In a Boost converter, the average $V_A = V_{in}$, and i_{in} equals i_L during all intervals. In Figure 3.26a in DCM,

$$\hat{I}_{in} = \hat{I}_L = \frac{V_{in}}{L} DT_s \tag{3.49}$$

Hence the average value of the input current, recognizing that $f_s = 1/T_s$,

$$I_{in} = \frac{V_{in}}{2Lf_s} D(D + D_{off,1}) \tag{3.50}$$

Equating the average input power $P_{in}(= V_{in}I_{in})$ to the output power $P_o(= V_o^2/R)$

$$\frac{V_{in}^2}{2Lf_s} D(D + D_{off,1}) = \frac{V_o^2}{R} \tag{3.51}$$

From Figure 3.26a, the average output current, equal to V_o/R, is as follows

$$\frac{V_{in}}{2Lf_s} DD_{off,1} = \frac{V_o}{R} \tag{3.52}$$

Solving for $D_{off,1}$ from Equation 3.52 and substituting into Equation 3.51

$$V_o = \frac{V_{in}}{2}(1 + \sqrt{1 + 4M}) \qquad \text{in DCM} \tag{3.53a}$$

where,

$$M = \left(\frac{R}{2Lf_s}\right) D^2 \tag{3.53b}$$

Equation 3.53 shows that light loads with $R > R_{crit,Boost}$ cause the output voltage to rise dangerously high towards infinity, as shown in Figure 3.26b. Of course, in a regulated dc-dc converter, the feedback controller must adjust the duty-ratio in order to regulate the output voltage.

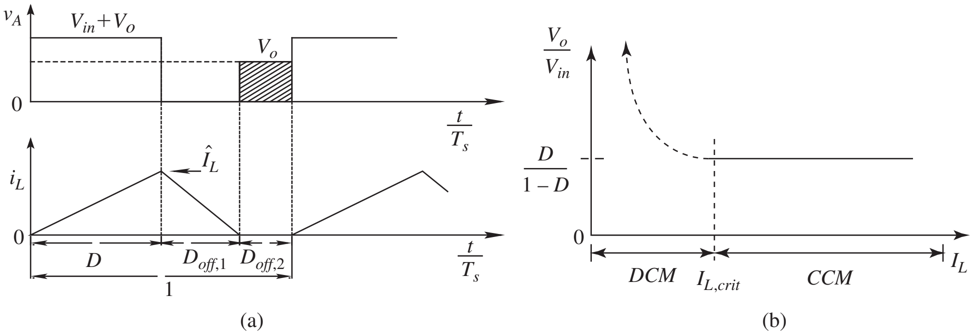


FIGURE 3.27 Buck-Boost converter in DCM.

3.15.4 Buck-Boost Converters in DCM in Steady State

Waveforms for a Buck-Boost converter under DCM are shown in Figure 3.27a. In DCM when the inductor current is zero during $D_{off,2}T_s$ interval, the voltage across the inductor is zero and v_A equals V_o. In a Buck-Boost converter, the average $V_A = V_o$.

In a Buck-Boost converter, i_{in} equals i_L during the on-interval, otherwise zero. In Figure 3.27a in DCM,

$$\hat{I}_{in} = \hat{I}_L = \frac{V_{in}}{L} DT_s \tag{3.54}$$

Hence the average value of the input current, recognizing that $f_s = 1/T_s$,

$$I_{in} = \frac{V_{in}}{2Lf_s} D^2 \tag{3.55}$$

Equating the average input power $P_{in}(= V_{in}I_{in})$ to the output power $P_o(= V_o^2/R)$,

$$\frac{V_{in}^2}{2Lf_s} D^2 = \frac{V_o^2}{R} \tag{3.56}$$

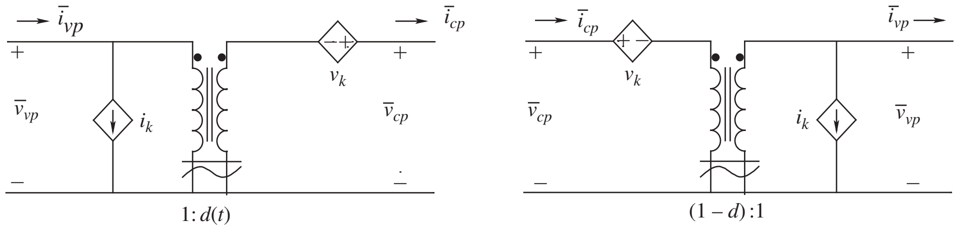
Therefore,

$$V_o = DV_{in}\sqrt{\frac{R}{2Lf_s}} \qquad \text{in DCM} \tag{3.57}$$

Equation 3.57 shows that light loads with $R > R_{crit,Buck-Boost}$ cause the output voltage to rise dangerously high towards infinity, as shown in Figure 3.27b. Of course in a regulated dc-dc converter, the feedback controller must adjust the duty-ratio in order to regulate the output voltage.

3.15.5 Average Representation in CCM and DCM for Dynamic Analysis

In the previous sections, all three dc-dc converters are analyzed in DCM in steady state. Unlike the CCM where the output voltage is dictated only by the input voltage V_{in} and the



Buck and Buck-Boost
(a)

Boost
(b)

FIGURE 3.28 Average representation of a switching power-pole valid in CCM and DCM.

transistor duty-ratio, the output voltage in DCM also depends on the converter parameters and the operating condition. The output voltage at the voltage-port of the switching power-pole is higher than that in the CCM case.

If the duty ratio varies slowly, with a frequency an order of magnitude smaller than the switching frequency, then the average representation obtained on the basis of the dc steady state can be used for dynamic modeling in CCM and DCM by replacing uppercase letters with lowercase letters with a "-" on top to represent average quantities that are shown explicitly to be functions of time:

$$D \Rightarrow d(t) \quad V_o \Rightarrow \bar{v}_o(t) \quad I_L \Rightarrow \bar{i}_L(t) \quad I_{in} \Rightarrow \bar{i}_{in} \tag{3.58}$$

Therefore, as derived in the Appendix on the accompanying CD, in DCM, the average model of a switching power-pole in CCM by an ideal transformer is augmented by a dependent voltage-source v_k at the current-port, and by a dependent current-source i_k at the voltage-port, as shown in Figure 3.28a for Buck and Buck-Boost converters, and in Figure 3.28b for Boost converters. The values of these dependent sources for the three converters are calculated in the Appendix on the accompanying CD, and only the results are presented in Table 3.2.

If v_k and i_k are expressed conditionally such that they are both zero in CCM, and are expressed by the expressions in Table 3.2 only in DCM when the average inductor current falls below its critical value, then the representations in Figure 3.28 become valid for both the CCM and the DCM. In PSpice the ideal transformer itself is represented by a dependent current source and a dependent voltage source. The conditional dependent sources v_k and i_k shown in Figures 3.28a and b are in addition to those used to represent the ideal transformer.

TABLE 3.2 v_k and i_k.

Converter	v_k	i_k
Buck	$\left(1-\frac{2Lf_s\bar{i}_L}{(V_{in}-\bar{v}_o)d}\right)\bar{v}_o$	$\frac{d^2}{2Lf_s}(V_{in}-\bar{v}_0)-d\bar{i}_L$
Boost	$\left(1-\frac{2Lf_s\bar{i}_L}{V_{in}d}\right)(V_{in}-\bar{v}_0)$	$\frac{d^2}{2Lf_s}V_{in}-d\bar{i}_L$
Buck-Boost	$\left(1-\frac{2Lf_s\bar{i}_L}{V_{in}d}\right)\bar{v}_o$	$\frac{d^2}{2Lf_s}V_{in}-d\bar{i}_L$

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design,* 3rd Edition. (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).

2. B. Carsten, "Converter Component Load Factors: A performance Limitation of Various Topologies" PCI Proceedings, June 1988, pp. 31–49.

3. M. Walters, "An Integrated Synchronous-Rectifier Power IC with Complementary-Switching (HIP5010, HIP5011)" Technical Brief, July 1995, TB332, Intersil Corp.

4. International Rectifier, http://www.irf.com

5. PWM Controller Ics, http://focus.ti.com/analog/docs/powerhome.tsp?familyId=64&contentType=4.

PROBLEMS

BUCK DC-DC CONVERTERS

Problems 3.1 through 3.6: In a Buck dc-dc converter, $L = 25\ \mu$H. It is operating in dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 42$ V, $D = 0.3$, $P_o = 24$ W, and $f_s = 400$ kHz. Assume ideal components.

3.1. Calculate and draw the waveforms as shown in Figure 3.5d.

3.2. Draw the inductor voltage and current waveforms if $P_o = 12$ W; all else is unchanged. Compare the ripple in the inductor current with that in Problem 3.1.

3.3. In this Buck converter, the output load is changing. Calculate the critical value of the output load P_o below which the converter will enter the discontinuous conduction mode of operation.

3.4. Calculate the critical value of the inductance L such that this Buck converter remains in the continuous conduction mode at and above $P_o = 5$ W under all values of the input voltage V_{in} in a range from 24 V to 50 V.

3.5. Draw the waveforms for the variables shown in Figure 3.5d for this Buck converter at the output load that causes it to operate at the border of continuous and discontinuous modes.

3.6. In this Buck converter, the input voltage is varying in a range from 24 V to 50 V. For each input value, the duty-ratio is adjusted to keep the output voltage constant at its nominal value (with $V_{in} = 40$ V and $D = 0.3$). Calculate the minimum value of the inductance L that will keep the converter in the continuous conduction mode at $P_o = 5$ W.

3.7. A Buck dc-dc converter is to be designed for $V_{in} = 20$ V, $V_o = 12$ V, and the maximum output power $P_o = 72$ W. The switching frequency is selected to be $f_s = 400$ kHz. Assume ideal components. Estimate the value of the filter inductance that should be used if the converter is to remain in CCM at one-third the maximum output power.

Boost DC-DC Converters

Problems 3.8 through 3.13: In a Boost converter, $L = 25\ \mu$H. It is operating in dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 12$ V, $D = 0.4$, $P_o = 25$ W, and $f_s = 400$ kHz. Assume ideal components.

3.8. Calculate and draw the waveforms as shown in Figure 3.8c.

3.9. Draw the inductor voltage and current waveforms, if $P_o = 15$ W; all else is unchanged. Compare the ripple in the inductor current with that in Problem 3.8.

3.10. In this Boost converter, the output load is changing. Calculate the critical value of the output load P_o below which the converter will enter the discontinuous conduction mode of operation.

3.11. Calculate the critical value of the inductance L below which this Boost converter will enter the discontinuous conduction mode of operation at $P_o = 5$ W.

3.12. Draw the waveforms for the variables in Figure 3.8c for this Boost converter at the output load that causes it to operate at the border of continuous and discontinuous modes.

3.13. In this Boost converter, the input voltage is varying in a range from 9 V to 15 V. For each input value, the duty-ratio is adjusted to keep the output voltage constant at its nominal value (with $V_{in} = 12$ V and $D = 0.4$). Calculate the critical value of the inductance L such that this Boost converter remains in the continuous conduction mode at and above $P_o = 5$ W under all values of the input voltage V_{in}.

3.14. A Boost converter is to be designed with the following values: $V_{in} = 5$ V, $V_o = 12$ V, and the maximum output power $P_o = 40$ W. The switching frequency is selected to be $f_s = 400$ kHz. Assume ideal components. Estimate the value of L if the converter is to remain in CCM at one-third the maximum output power.

Buck-Boost DC-DC Converters

Problems 3.15 through 3.20: In a Buck-Boost converter, $L = 25\ \mu$H. It is operating in dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 12$ V, $D = 0.6$, $P_o = 36$ W, and $f_s = 400$ kHz. Assume ideal components.

3.15. Calculate and draw the waveforms as shown in Figure 3.12c.

3.16. Draw the inductor voltage and current waveforms if $P_o = 18$ W; all else is unchanged. Compare the ripple in the inductor current with that in Problem 3.15.

3.17. In this Buck-Boost converter, the output load is changing. Calculate the critical value of the output load P_o below which the converter will enter the discontinuous conduction mode of operation.

3.18. Calculate the critical value of the inductance L below which this Buck-Boost converter will enter the discontinuous conduction mode of operation at $P_o = 5$ W.

3.19. Draw the waveforms for the variables in Figure 3.12c for this Buck-Boost converter at the output load that causes it to operate at the border of continuous and discontinuous modes.

3.20. In this Buck-Boost converter, the input voltage is varying in a range from 9 V to 15 V. For each input value, the duty-ratio is adjusted to keep the output voltage constant at its nominal value (with $V_{in} = 12$ V and $D = 0.6$). Calculate the critical value of the inductance L such that this Buck-Boost converter remains in the continuous conduction mode at and above $P_o = 5$ W under all values of the input voltage V_{in}.

3.21. A Buck-Boost converter is to be designed under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 12$ V, $V_o = 42$ V, and the maximum output power is $P_o = 96$ W. The switching frequency is selected to be $f_s = 300$ kHz. Assume ideal components. Estimate the value of L if the converter is to remain in CCM at one-third the maximum output power.

SEPIC DC-DC Converters

3.22. In a SEPIC converter, assume the ripple in the inductor currents and the capacitor voltage to be zero. This SEPIC converter is operating in a dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 10$ V, $D = 0.333$, $P_o = 50$ W, and $f_s = 200$ kHz. Assume ideal components. Draw the waveforms for all the converter variables under this dc steady-state condition.

3.23. Show that the SEPIC converter consists of a switching power-pole as its building block.

Ćuk DC-DC Converters

3.24. In a Ćuk converter, assume the ripple in the inductor currents and the capacitor voltage to be zero. This Ćuk converter is operating in a dc steady state under the following conditions: $V_{in} = 10$ V, $D = 0.333$, $P_o = 50$ W, and $f_s = 200$ kHz. Assume ideal components. Draw the waveforms for all the converter variables under this dc steady-state condition.

3.25. Show that the Ćuk converter consists of a switching power-pole as its building block.

Interleaving of DC-DC Converters

3.26. Two interleaved Buck converters, each similar to the Buck converter for Problem 3.1, are supplying a total of 48 W. Calculate and draw the waveforms of the total input current and the total current $(i_{L_1} + i_{L_2})$ to the output stage. The gate signals to the converters are phase shifted by 180°.

Regulation by PWM

3.27. In a Buck converter, consider two values of duty-ratios: 0.3 and 0.4. The switching frequency f_s is 200 kHz and $\hat{V}_r = 1.2$ V. Draw the waveforms as in Figure 3.19b.

Dynamic Average Models in CCM

3.28. Draw the dynamic average representations for Buck, Boost, Buck-Boost, SEPIC, and Ćuk Converters in the continuous conduction mode for representation in PSpice.

3.29. In the converters based on average representations in Problem 3.28, calculate the average input current for each converter in terms of the average output current and the duty-ratio $d(t)$.

Bi-directional Switching Power-Poles

3.30. The dc-dc bi-directional converter of Figure 3.23a interfaces a 12/14-V battery with a 36/42-V battery bank. The internal emfs are $E_1 = 40$ V(dc) and $E_2 = 13$ V (dc). Both these battery sources have an internal resistance of 0.1 Ω each. In the dc steady state, calculate the power-pole duty-ratio D_A if (a) the power into the low-voltage battery terminals is 140 W, and (b) the power out of the low-voltage battery terminals is 140 W.

DC-DC Converters in DCM

3.31. Derive the expressions for the critical resistance for the three converters given in Equation 3.45.

3.32. Derive the voltage ratio in DCM for a Buck converter, given by Equation 3.48.

3.33. Derive the voltage ratio in DCM for a Boost converter, given by Equation 3.53.

3.34. Derive the voltage ratio in DCM for a Buck-Boost converter, given by Equation 3.57.

3.35. Repeat the Buck converter Problem 3.1 if P_o is not specified but the load resistance is twice its critical value.

3.36. Repeat the Boost converter Problem 3.8 if P_o is not specified but the load resistance is twice its critical value.

3.37. Repeat the Buck-Boost converter Problem 3.15 if P_o is not specified but the load resistance is twice its critical value.

Sustainability-Related Questions

3.38. A 1.2 kW PV system consists of 4 series-connected arrays, each of which has the rated voltage of 55 V and the rated current of 6.0 A at the maximum power point, at the maximum expected insolation. The output of the series-connected arrays is boosted to 400 V (dc) by a Boost converter, as an input to an inverter that feeds power into the single-phase utility grid. Assuming that the switching frequency in the Boost converter is selected to be 200 kHz and the peak-to-peak ripple in the input current to this converter is to be less than 10% of the rated current at the maximum power, calculate the value of the inductance in this converter. Assume ideal components.

3.39. In a large battery-storage system, the rated output voltage of a battery string is 650 V (dc) and the rated current is 1,200 A. The voltage can vary in a range from 500 V to 800 V. This output voltage is boosted to 900 V (dc), as an input to an inverter that interfaces with the three-phase utility grid. A switching power-pole with a bi-directional power capability is used. The switching frequency is selected to be 50 kHz, and the inductor value is selected such that the peak-to-peak ripple in the inductor current is less than 10% of the rated battery current, with the battery voltage at its rated value.
   (a) Calculate the inductance value.
   (b) Calculate the peak-to-peak ripple in the inductor current if operating at the rated current but the battery voltage is at its minimum.
   (c) Repeat part (b) if the battery voltage is at its maximum.

Simulation Problems

3.40. In the Buck converter of Figure 3.5a, various parameters are as follows: $L = 100\ \mu$H, $R_L = 10\ m\Omega$, $C = 100\ \mu$F and $R_{Load} = 9.0\ \Omega$. The input voltage $V_{in} =$ 24 V, the switching frequency $f_s = 100$ kHz and the switch duty-ratio $d = 0.75$.
   (a) Plot the waveforms, after reaching the steady state, during the last 10 switching cycles for i_L, v_L and v_o.
   (b) Plot the average value of v_L.
   (c) Plot i_L and measure the peak-peak ripple Δi_L and compare it with Equation 3.13.

   (d) Plot i_C waveform. What is the average of i_C. Compare the i_C waveform with the ripple in i_L.
   (e) Plot the input current waveform and calculate its average. Compare that to the value calculated from Equation 3.16.

3.41. In Problem 3.40, calculate the inductance value of L, if Δi_L should be $\frac{1}{3}$ of the load current. Verify the results by simulations.

3.42. In Problem 3.40, change the output power to one-half its original value. Measure the peak-peak ripple Δi_L and compare it with that in Problem 3.40c. Comment on this comparison.

3.43. In the circuit of Problem 3.40, calculate R_{crit} from Equation 3.45 and verify by simulation whether the converter is operating on the boundary of CCM and DCM.

3.44. In the Boost converter of Figure 3.7, various parameters are as follows: $L = 100\ \mu$H, $R_L = 10$ mΩ, $C = 100\ \mu$F and $R_{Load} = 12.5\ \Omega$. The input voltage $V_{in} = 10$ V, the switching frequency $f_s = 100$ kHz and the switch duty-ratio $d = 0.6$.
   (a) Plot the waveforms during the last 10 switching cycles, after reaching the steady state, for i_L, v_L and v_o.
   (b) Plot the average value of v_L.
   (c) Plot i_L and measure the peak-peak ripple Δi_L and compare it with Equation 3.21.
   (d) Plot i_C and i_{diode} waveform. What is the average of i_C. Compare the i_C waveform with the ripple in i_{diode}.
   (e) Plot the input current waveform and calculate its average. Compare that to the value calculated from Equation 3.23.

3.45. In Problem 3.44, calculate the inductance value of L, if Δi_L should be $\frac{1}{3}$ of the input current. Verify the results by simulations.

3.46. In Problem 3.44, change the output power to one-half its original value. Measure the peak-peak ripple Δi_L and compare it with that in Problem 3.44c. Comment on this comparison.

3.47. In Problem 3.44, calculate R_{crit} from Equation 3.45 and verify whether the converter is operating on the boundary of CCM and DCM.

3.48. In the Buck-Boost converter of Figure 3.11, various parameters are as follows: $L = 100\ \mu$H, $R_L = 10$ mΩ, $C = 100\ \mu$F and $R_{Load} = 15.0\ \Omega$. The input voltage $V_{in} = 10$ V, the switching frequency $f_s = 100$ kHz and the switch duty-ratio $d = 0.75$.
   (a) Plot the waveforms during the last 10 switching cycles, after reaching the steady state, for i_L, v_L and v_o.
   (b) Plot the average value of v_L.
   (c) Plot i_L and measure the peak-peak ripple Δi_L and compare it with Equation 3.28.
   (d) Plot i_C and i_{diode} waveform. What is the average of i_C. Compare the i_C waveform with the ripple in i_{diode}.
   (e) Plot the input current waveform and calculate its average. Compare that to the value calculated from Equation 3.31.

3.49. In Problem 3.48, calculate the inductance value of L, if Δi_L should be $\frac{1}{3}$ of the input current. Verify the results by simulations.

3.50. In Problem 3.48, change the output power to one-half its original value. Measure the peak-peak ripple Δi_L and compare it with that in Problem 3.48c. Comment on this comparison.

3.51. In Problem 3.48, calculate R_{crit} from Equation 3.45 and verify whether the converter is operating on the boundary of CCM and DCM.

3.52. The Buck-Boost converter of Problem 3.48 is initially operating with an output load resistance $R_{Load} = 30.0\ \Omega$. After the steady state is reached, and an additional resistance of $30.0\ \Omega$ is switched in. Simulating this converter by representing the switching power-pole by its average model and compare the waveform of the inductor current in the average representation to that in switching representation.

3.53. The Buck-Boost converter in Problem 3.48 is initially operating in DCM with $R_{Load} = 1\ \text{k}\Omega$.

(a) Plot the waveforms during the last 5 switching cycles for i_L, v_L and v_o.

(b) Plot the average value of v_L.

(c) Calculate V_o using Equation 3.57 and compare it with its measured value.

(d) Plot the waveform of v_A, label it in terms of V_{in} and V_o, and compare it with Figure 3.27a.

(e) Show that the hatched area in Figure 3.27a, averaged over the switching time-period, results in the increase in V_o, compared to its CCM value.

4

DESIGNING FEEDBACK CONTROLLERS IN SWITCH-MODE DC POWER SUPPLIES

In most applications discussed in Chapter 1, power electronic converters are operated in a controlled manner. The need for doing so is obvious in electric drives used in transportation to control speed and position. The same is also true in photovoltaic systems where we should operate at their maximum-power-point in order to derive the maximum power. In wind turbines, the generator speed should be controlled to operate the turbine blades at the maximum value of the turbine coefficient-of-performance. In dc-dc converters, with or without electrical isolation, the output voltage needs to be regulated at a specified value with a narrow tolerance. In this chapter, the fundamental concepts for feedback control are illustrated by means of regulated dc-dc converters.

4.1 INTRODUCTION AND OBJECTIVES OF FEEDBACK CONTROL

As shown in Figure 4.1, almost all dc-dc converters operate with their output voltage regulated to equal their reference value within a specified tolerance band (for example, $\pm 1\%$ around its nominal value) in response to disturbances in the input voltage and the output load. This regulation is achieved by pulsed-width-modulating the duty-ratio $d(t)$ of their switching power-pole. In this chapter, we will design the feedback controller to regulate the output voltages of dc-dc converters.

The feedback controller to regulate the output voltage must be designed with the following objectives in mind: zero steady state error, fast response to changes in the input voltage and the output load, low overshoot, and low noise susceptibility. We should note that in designing feedback controllers, all transformer-isolated topologies discussed later in Chapter 8 can be replaced by their basic single-switch topologies from which they are derived. The feedback control is described using the voltage-mode control, which is later extended to include the current-mode control.

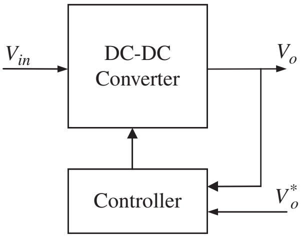


FIGURE 4.1 Regulated dc power supply.

The steps in designing the feedback controller are described as follows:

- Linearize the system for small changes around the dc steady state operating point (bias point). This requires dynamic averaging discussed in the previous chapter.
- Design the feedback controller using linear control theory.
- Confirm and evaluate the system response by simulations for large disturbances.

4.2 REVIEW OF LINEAR CONTROL THEORY

A feedback control system is as shown in Figure 4.2, where the output voltage is measured and compared with a reference value V_o^*. The error v_{err} between the two acts on the controller, which produces the control voltage $v_c(t)$. This control voltage acts as the input to the pulse-width-modulator to produce a switching signal $q(t)$ for the power-pole in the dc-dc converter. The average value of this switching signal is $d(t)$, as shown in Figure 4.2.

To make use of linear control theory, various blocks in the power supply system of Figure 4.2 are linearized around the steady state dc operating point, assuming small-signal perturbations. Each average quantity (represented by a "-" on top) associated with the power-pole of the converter topology can be expressed as the sum of its steady state dc value (represented by an uppercase letter) and a small-signal perturbation (represented by a "$\sim$" on top), for example,

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{v}_o(t) &= V_o + \tilde{v}_0(t) \\ d(t) &= D + \tilde{d}(t) \\ v_c(t) &= V_c + \tilde{v}_c(t) \end{aligned} \tag{4.1}$$

where $d(t)$ is already an averaged value and $v_c(t)$ does not contain any switching frequency component. Based on the small-signal perturbation quantities in the Laplace

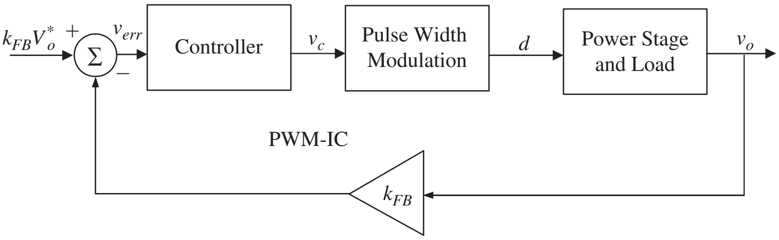


FIGURE 4.2 Feedback control.

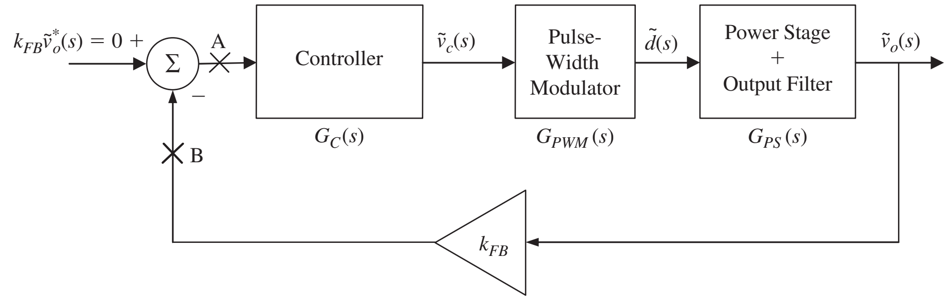


FIGURE 4.3 Small signal control system representation.

domain, the linearized system block diagram is as shown in Figure 4.3, where the perturbation in the reference input to this feedback-controlled system, $\tilde{v}_o^*$, is zero since the output voltage is being regulated to its reference value. In Figure 4.3, $G_{PWM}(s)$ is the transfer function of the pulse-width modulator, and $G_{PS}(s)$ is the power stage transfer function. In the feedback path, the transfer function is of the voltage-sensing network, which can be represented by a simple gain k_{FB}, usually less than unity. $G_C(s)$ is the transfer function of the feedback controller that needs to be determined to satisfy the control objectives.

As a review, the Bode plots of transfer functions with poles and zeros are discussed in Appendix 4A at the back of this chapter.

4.2.1 Loop Transfer Function $G_L(s)$

It is the closed-loop response (with the feedback in place) that we need to optimize. Using linear control theory, we can achieve this objective by ensuring certain characteristics of the loop transfer function $G_L(s)$. In the control block diagram of Figure 4.3, the loop transfer function (from point A to point B) is,

$$G_L(s) = G_C(s)G_{PWM}(s)G_{PS}(s)k_{FB} \tag{4.2}$$

4.2.2 Crossover Frequency f_c of $G_L(s)$

In order to define a few necessary control terms, we will consider a generic Bode plot of the loop transfer function $G_L(s)$ in terms of its magnitude and phase angle, shown in Figure 4.4 as a function of frequency. The frequency at which the gain equals unity (that is $|G_L(s)| = 0\,\text{dB}$) is defined as the crossover frequency f_c (or ω_c). This crossover frequency is a good indicator of the bandwidth of the closed-loop feedback system, which determines the speed of the dynamic response of the control system to various disturbances.

4.2.3 Phase and Gain Margins

For the closed-loop feedback system to be stable, at the crossover frequency f_c, the phase delay introduced by the loop transfer function must be less than 180°. At f_c, the phase angle $\angle G_L(s)|_{f_c}$ of the loop transfer function $G_L(s)$, measured with respect to $-180°$, is defined as the Phase Margin (ϕ_{PM}) as shown in Figure 4.4:

$$\phi_{PM} = \angle G_L(s)|_{f_c} - (-180°) = \angle G_L(s)|_{f_c} + 180° \tag{4.3}$$

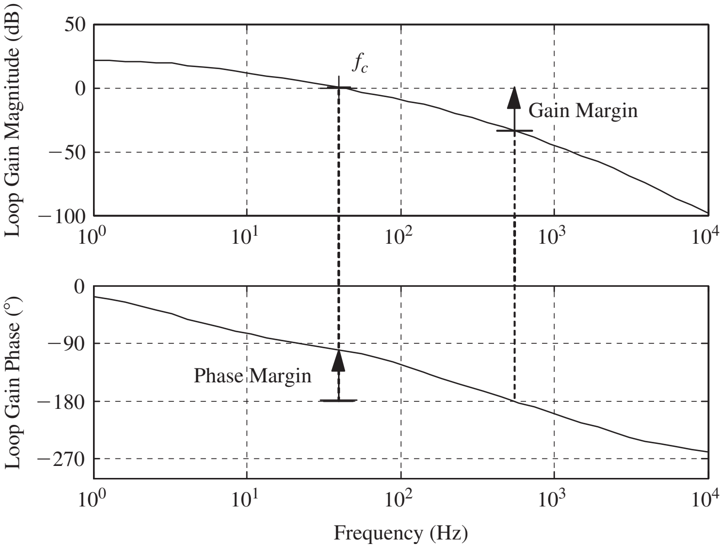


FIGURE 4.4 Definitions of crossover frequency, gain margin and phase margin.

Note that $\angle G_L(s)|_{f_c}$ is negative, but the phase margin in Equation 4.3 must be positive. Generally, feedback controllers are designed to yield a phase margin of approximately 60°, since much smaller values result in high overshoots and long settling times (oscillatory response) and much larger values in a sluggish response.

The Gain Margin is also defined in Figure 4.4, which shows that the gain margin is the value of the magnitude of the loop transfer function, measured below 0 dB, at the frequency at which the phase angle of the loop transfer function may (not always) cross $-180°$. If the phase angle crosses $-180°$, the gain margin should generally be in excess of 10 dB in order to keep the system response from becoming oscillatory due to parameter changes and other variations.

4.3 LINEARIZATION OF VARIOUS TRANSFER FUNCTION BLOCKS

To be able to apply linear control theory in the feedback controller design, it is necessary that all the blocks in Figure 4.2 be linearized around their dc steady state operating point, as shown by transfer functions in Figure 4.3.

4.3.1 Linearizing the Pulse-Width Modulator

In the feedback control, a high-speed PWM integrated circuit such as the UC3824 [1] from Unitrode/Texas Instruments may be used. Functionally, within this PWM-IC shown in Figure 4.5a, the control voltage $v_c(t)$ generated by the error amplifier is compared with a ramp signal v_r with a constant amplitude $\hat{V}_r$ at a constant switching frequency f_s, as shown in Figure 4.5b. The output switching signal is represented by the switching function $q(t)$, which equals 1 if $v_c(t) \geq v_r$; otherwise 0. The switch duty-ratio in Figure 4.5b is given as,

$$d(t) = \frac{v_c(t)}{\hat{V}_r} \tag{4.4}$$

In terms of a disturbance around the dc steady state operating point, the control voltage can be expressed as,

$$v_c(t) = V_c + \tilde{v}_c(t) \tag{4.5}$$

Substituting Equation 4.5 into Equation 4.4,

$$d(t) = \underbrace{\frac{V_c}{\hat{V}_r}}_{D} + \underbrace{\frac{\tilde{v}_c(t)}{\hat{V}_r}}_{\tilde{d}(t)} \tag{4.6}$$

In Equation 4.6, the second term on the right side equals $\tilde{d}(t)$, from which the transfer function of the PWM-IC is,

$$G_{PWM}(s) = \frac{\tilde{d}(s)}{\tilde{v}_c(s)} = \frac{1}{\hat{V}_r} \tag{4.7}$$

It is a constant gain transfer function, as shown in Figure 4.5c in the Laplace domain.

Example 4.1
In PWM-ICs, there is usually a dc voltage offset in the ramp voltage, and instead of $\hat{V}_r$ as shown in Figure 4.5b, a typical valley-to-peak value of the ramp signal is defined. In the PWM-IC UC3824, this valley-to-peak value is 1.8 V. Calculate the linearized transfer function associated with this PWM-IC.

Solution The dc offset in the ramp signal does not change its small signal transfer function. Hence, the peak-to-valley voltage can be treated as $\hat{V}_r$. Using Equation 4.7,

$$G_{PWM}(s) = \frac{1}{\hat{V}_r} = \frac{1}{1.8} = 0.556 \tag{4.8}$$

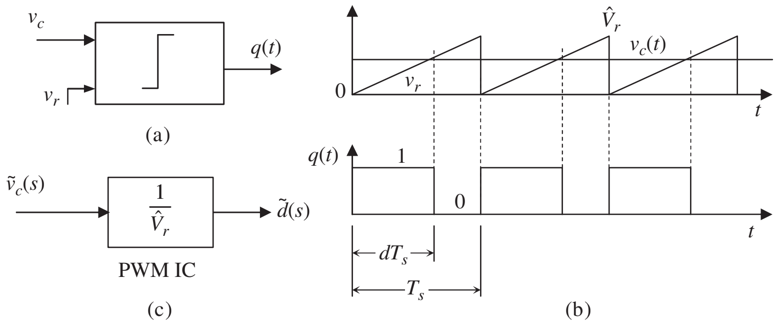


FIGURE 4.5 PWM waveforms.

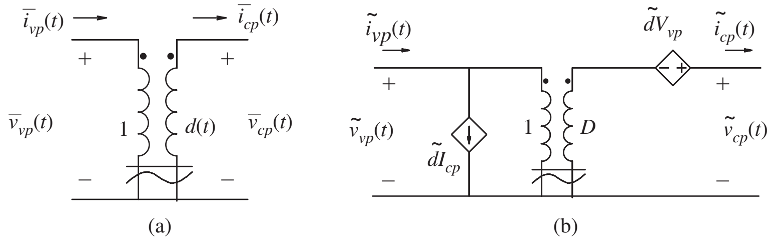


FIGURE 4.6 Linearizing the switching power-pole.

4.3.2 Linearizing the Power Stage of DC-DC Converters in CCM

To design feedback controllers, the power stage of the converters must be linearized around the steady state dc operating point, assuming a small-signal disturbance. Figure 4.6a shows the average model of the switching power-pole, where the subscript "*vp*" refers to the voltage-port and "*cp*" to the current-port. Each average quantity in Figure 4.6a can be expressed as the sum of its steady state dc value (represented by an uppercase letter) and a small-signal perturbation (represented by a "∼" on top):

$$\begin{aligned} d(t) &= D + \tilde{d}(t) \\ \bar{v}_{vp}(t) &= V_{vp} + \tilde{v}_{vp}(t) \\ \bar{v}_{cp}(t) &= V_{cp} + \tilde{v}_{cp}(t) \\ \bar{i}_{vp}(t) &= I_{vp} + \tilde{i}_{vp}(t) \\ \bar{i}_{cp}(t) &= I_{cp} + \tilde{i}_{cp}(t) \end{aligned} \tag{4.9}$$

Utilizing the voltage and current relationships between the two ports in Figure 4.6a, and expressing each variable as in Equation 4.9,

$$V_{cp} + \tilde{v}_{cp} = (D + \tilde{d})(V_{vp} + \tilde{v}_{vp}) \tag{4.10a}$$

and,

$$I_{vp} + \tilde{i}_{vp} = (D + \tilde{d})\,(I_{cp} + \tilde{i}_{cp}) \tag{4.10b}$$

Equating the perturbation terms on both sides of the above equations

$$\tilde{v}_{cp}(t) = D\,\tilde{v}_{vp} + V_{vp}\,\tilde{d} + \cancel{\tilde{d}\,\tilde{v}_{vp}} \tag{4.11a}$$

and,

$$\tilde{i}_{vp} = D\,\tilde{i}_{cp} + I_{cp}\,\tilde{d} + \cancel{\tilde{d}\,\tilde{i}_{cp}} \tag{4.11b}$$

The two equations above are linearized by neglecting the products of small perturbation terms (crossed out in Equations 4.11a and b). The resulting linear equations are

$$\tilde{v}_{cp}(t) = D\,\tilde{v}_{vp} + V_{vp}\,\tilde{d} \tag{4.12}$$

and,

$$\tilde{i}_{vp} = D\tilde{i}_{cp} + I_{cp}\tilde{d} \tag{4.13}$$

Equations 4.12 and 4.13 can be represented by means of an ideal transformer shown in Figure 4.6b, which is a linear representation of the power-pole for small signals around a steady state operating point given by D, V_{vp}, and I_{cp}.

The average representations of Buck, Boost, and Buck-Boost converters are shown in Figure 4.7a. Replacing the power-pole in each of these converters by its small-signals linearized representation, the resulting circuits are shown in Figure 4.7b, where the perturbation $\tilde{v}_{in}$ is zero based on the assumption of a constant dc input voltage V_{in}, and the output capacitor ESR is represented by r. Note that in Boost converters, since the transistor is in the bottom position of the switching power-pole, d in Figure 4.6a needs to be replaced by $(1-d)$. Substituting for d by $(D+\tilde{d})$ results in $(1-d) = (1-D) - \tilde{d}$. Therefore, D in Equations 4.12 and 4.13 needs to be replaced by $(1-D)$ and $\tilde{d}$ by $(-\tilde{d})$.

As fully explained in Appendix 4B on the accompanying CD, all three circuits for small-signal perturbations in Figure 4.7b have the same form as shown in Figure 4.8. In this equivalent circuit, the effective inductance L_e is the same as the actual inductance L in the Buck converter, since in both states of a Buck converter in CCM, L and C are always connected together. However, in Boost and Buck-Boost converters, these two elements are not always connected, resulting in L_e to be $L/(1-D)^2$ in Figure 4.8:

$$L_e = L \quad \text{(Buck)}; \quad L_e = \frac{L}{(1-D)^2} \quad \text{(Boost and Buck-Boost)} \tag{4.14}$$

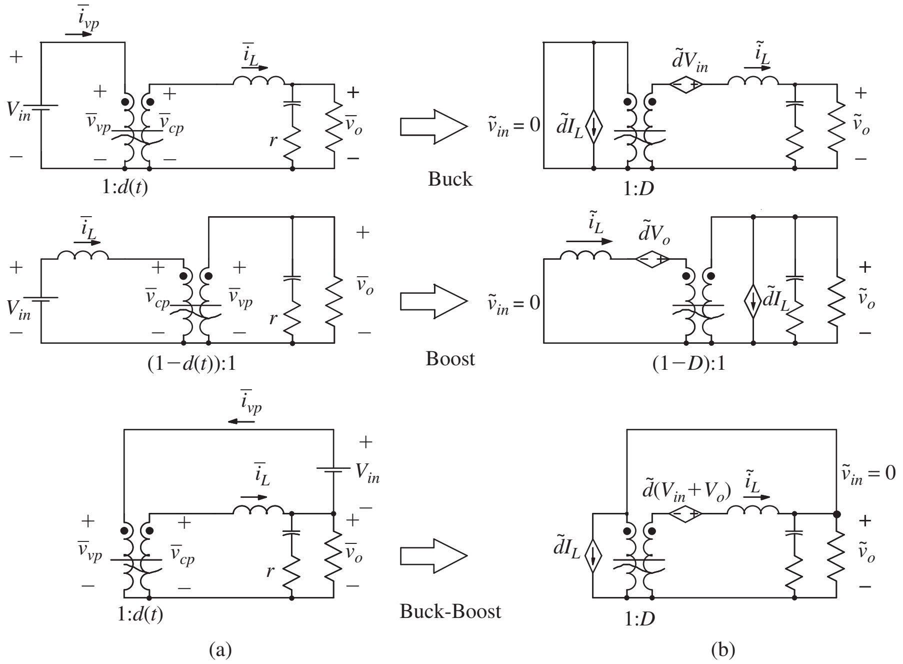


FIGURE 4.7 Linearizing single-switch converters in CCM.

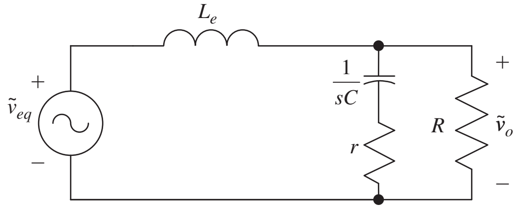


FIGURE 4.8 Small signal equivalent circuit for Buck, Boost and Buck-Boost converters.

Transfer functions of the three converters in CCM from Appendix 4B on the accompanying CD are repeated below:

$$\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{d}} = \frac{V_{in}}{LC} \frac{1 + srC}{s^2 + s\left(\frac{1}{RC} + \frac{r}{L}\right) + \frac{1}{LC}} \qquad \text{(Buck)} \qquad (4.15)$$

$$\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{d}} = \frac{V_{in}}{(1-D)^2}\left(1 - s\frac{L_e}{R}\right)\frac{1 + srC}{L_eC\left(s^2 + s\left(\frac{1}{RC} + \frac{r}{L_e}\right) + \frac{1}{L_eC}\right)} \qquad \text{(Boost)} \qquad (4.16)$$

$$\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{d}} = \frac{V_{in}}{(1-D)^2}\left(1 - s\frac{DL_e}{R}\right)\frac{1 + srC}{L_eC\left(s^2 + s\left(\frac{1}{RC} + \frac{r}{L_e}\right) + \frac{1}{L_eC}\right)} \qquad \text{(Buck-Boost)} \qquad (4.17)$$

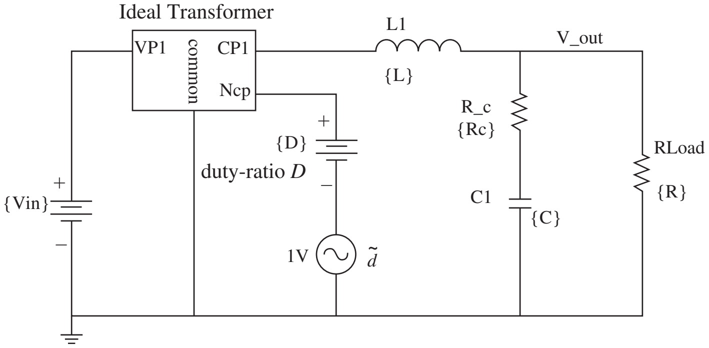
In the above power-stage transfer functions in CCM, there are several characteristics worth noting. There are two poles created by the low-pass *L-C* filter in Figure 4.8, and the capacitor ESR r results in a zero. In Boost and Buck-Boost converters, their transfer functions depend on the steady state operating value D. They also have a right-half-plane zero, whose presence can be explained by the fact that in these converters, increasing the duty-ratio for increasing the output, for example, initially has an opposite consequence by isolating the input stage from the output load for a longer time.

4.3.2.1 Using Computer Simulation to Obtain $\tilde{v}_o/\tilde{d}$

Transfer functions given by Equations 4.15 through 4.17 provide theoretical insight into converter operation. However, the Bode plots of the transfer function can be obtained with similar accuracy by means of linearization and ac analysis, using a computer program such as PSpice™. The converter circuit is simulated as shown in Figure 4.9 in the example below for a frequency-domain ac analysis, using the switching power-pole average model discussed in Chapter 3 and shown in Figure 4.6a. The duty-cycle perturbation $\tilde{d}$ is represented as an ac source whose frequency is swept over several decades of interest, and whose amplitude is kept constant, for example at 1 V. In such a simulation, PSpice first calculates voltages and currents at the dc steady state operating point, linearizes the circuit around this dc bias point, and then performs the ac analysis.

Example 4.2

A Buck converter has the following parameters and is operating in CCM: $L = 100\ \mu\text{H}$, $C = 697\mu\text{F}$, $r = 0.1\ \Omega$, $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$, $V_{in} = 30\,\text{V}$, and $P_o = 36\,\text{W}$. The duty-ratio D is



PARAMETERS:	
Vin	30
Vo	12
D	{Vo/Vin}

PARAMETERS:	
L	100u
C	697uF
Rc	0.1

PARAMETERS:	
R	4

FIGURE 4.9 PSpice Circuit model for a Buck converter.

adjusted to regulate the output voltage $V_o = 12\,\text{V}$. Obtain the gain and the phase of the power stage $G_{PS}(s)$ for frequencies ranging from 1 Hz to 100 kHz.

Solution The PSpice circuit is shown in Figure 4.9 where the dc voltage source {D}, representing the duty-ratio *D*, establishes the dc operating point. The duty-ratio perturbation $\tilde{d}$ is represented as an ac source whose frequency is swept over several decades of interest, keeping the amplitude constant. (Since the circuit is linearized before the ac analysis, the best choice for the ac source amplitude is 1 V.) The switching power-pole is represented by an ideal transformer, which consists of two dependent sources: a dependent current source and a dependent voltage source. The circuit parameters are specified by means of parameter blocks within PSpice.

The Bode plot of the frequency response is shown in Figure 4.10. It shows that at the crossover frequency $f_c = 1$ kHz selected in the next example, Example 4.3, the power stage has $|G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} = 24.66\,\text{dB}$ and $\angle G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} = -138°$. We will make use of these values in Example 4.3.

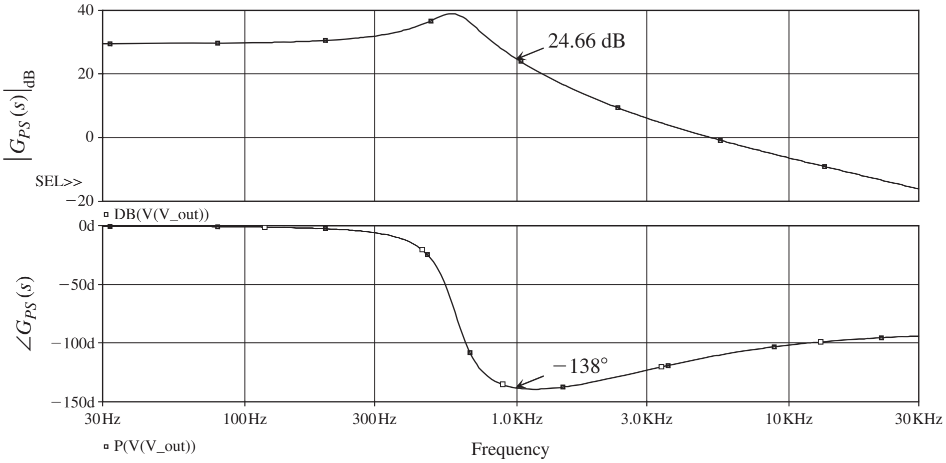


FIGURE 4.10 The gain and the phase of the power stage $G_{PS}(s)$.

4.4 FEEDBACK CONTROLLER DESIGN IN VOLTAGE-MODE CONTROL

The feedback controller design is presented by means of a numerical example to regulate the Buck converter described earlier in Example 4.2. The controller is designed for the continuous conduction mode (CCM) at full-load, which although not optimum, is stable in DCM.

Example 4.3

Design the feedback controller for the Buck converter described in Example 4.2. The PWM-IC is as described in Example 4.1. The output voltage-sensing network in the feedback path has a gain $k_{FB} = 0.2$. The steady state error is required to be zero and the phase margin of the loop transfer function should be 60° at, as high a crossover frequency as possible.

Solution In deciding on the transfer function $G_C(s)$ of the controller, the control objectives translate into the following simultaneous characteristics of the loop transfer function $G_L(s)$, from which $G_C(s)$ can be designed:

1. The crossover frequency f_c of the loop gain is as high as possible to result in a fast response of the closed-loop system.
2. The phase angle of the loop transfer function has the specified phase margin, typically 60° at the crossover frequency so that the response in the closed-loop system settles quickly without oscillations.
3. The phase angle of the loop transfer function should not drop below $-180°$ at frequencies below the crossover frequency.

The Bode plot for the power stage is obtained earlier, as shown in Figure 4.10 of Example 4.2. In this Bode plot, the phase angle drops towards $-180°$ due to the two poles of the *L-C* filter shown in the equivalent circuit of Figure 4.8 and confirmed by the transfer function of Equation 4.15. Beyond the *L-C* filter resonance frequency, the phase angle increases toward $-90°$ because of the zero introduced by the output capacitor ESR in the transfer function of the power stage. We should not rely on this capacitor ESR, which is not accurately known and can have a large variability.

A simple procedure based on the K-factor approach [2] is presented below, which lends itself to a straightforward step-by-step design. For reasons given below, the transfer function $G_C(s)$ of the controller is selected to be of the form in Equation 4.18 whose Bode plot is shown in Figure 4.11.

$$G_C(s) = \frac{k_c}{s} \frac{(1 + s/\omega_z)^2}{(1 + s/\omega_p)^2} \tag{4.18}$$

To yield a zero steady state error, $G_C(s)$ contains a pole at the origin, which introduces $-90°$ phase shift in the loop transfer function. The phase of the transfer function peaks at the geometric mean $\sqrt{f_z f_p}$ of the zero and pole frequencies, as shown in Figure 4.11, where f_z and f_p are chosen such that their geometric mean $\sqrt{f_z f_p}$ is equal to the loop crossover frequency f_c.

The crossover frequency f_c of the loop is chosen beyond the *L-C* resonance frequency of the power stage, where, unfortunately, $\angle G_{PS}|_{f_c}$ has a large negative value.

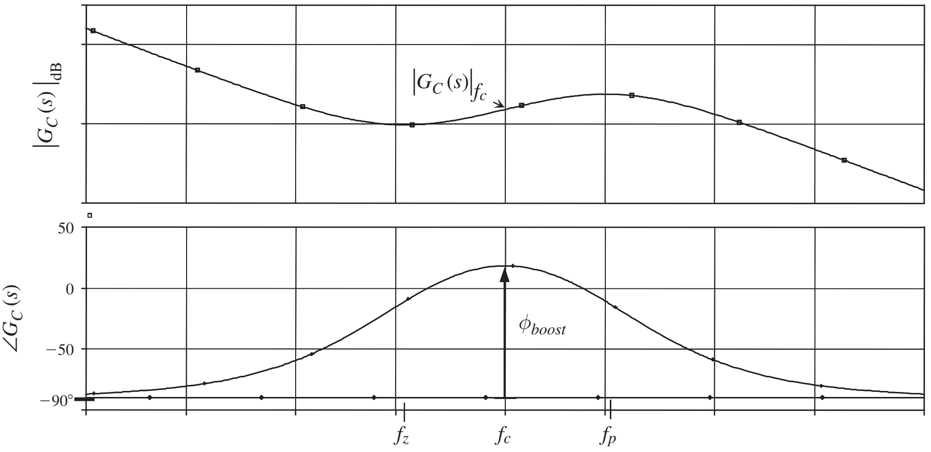


FIGURE 4.11 Bode plot of $G_C(s)$ in Equation 4.18.

The sum of −90°(due to the pole at the origin in $G_C(s)$) and $\angle G_{PS}|_{f_c}$ is more negative than −180°. Therefore, to obtain a phase margin of 60° requires boosting the phase at f_c, by more than 90°, by placing two coincident zeroes at f_z to nullify the effect of the two poles in the power-stage transfer function $G_{PS}(s)$. Two coincident poles are placed at f_p ($>f_z$) to roll-off the gain rapidly much before the switching frequency. The controller gain $|G_C(s)|_{f_c}$ is such that the loop gain equals unity at the crossover frequency.

The input specifications in determining the parameters of the controller transfer function in Equation 4.18 are f_c, ϕ_{boost} as shown in Figure 4.11, and the controller gain $|G_C(s)|_{f_c}$. A step-by-step procedure for designing $G_C(s)$ is described below.

Step 1: Choose the Crossover Frequency. Choose f_c to be *slightly* beyond the *L-C* resonance frequency $1/(2\pi\sqrt{LC})$, which in this example is approximately 600 Hz. Therefore, we will choose $f_c = 1$ kHz. This ensures that the phase angle of the loop remains greater than −180° at all frequencies below f_c.

Step 2: Calculate the needed Phase Boost. The desired phase margin is specified as $\phi_{PM} = 60°$. The required phase boost ϕ_{boost} at the crossover frequency is calculated as follows, noting that G_{PWM} and k_{FB} produce zero phase shift:

$$\angle G_L(s)|_{f_c} = \angle G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} + \angle G_C(s)|_{f_c} \qquad \text{(from Equation 4.2)} \qquad (4.19)$$

$$\angle G_L(s)|_{f_c} = -180^\circ + \phi_{PM} \qquad \text{(from Equation 4.3)} \qquad (4.20)$$

$$\angle G_C(s)|_{f_c} = -90^\circ + \phi_{boost} \qquad \text{(from Figure 4.11)} \qquad (4.21)$$

Substituting Equations 4.20 and 4.21 into Equation 4.19,

$$\phi_{boost} = -90^\circ + \phi_{PM} - \angle G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} \qquad (4.22)$$

In Figure 4.10, $\angle G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} \simeq -138^\circ$, substituting which in Equation 4.22, with $\phi_{PM} = 60^\circ$, yields the required phase boost $\phi_{boost} = 108^\circ$.

Step 3: Calculate the Controller Gain at the Crossover Frequency. From Equation 4.2 at the crossover frequency f_c,

$$|G_L(s)|_{f_c} = |G_C(s)|_{f_c} \times |G_{PWM}(s)|_{f_c} \times |G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} \times k_{FB} = 1 \tag{4.23}$$

In Figure 4.10, at $f_c = 1\,\text{kHz}$, $|G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c=1\,\text{kHz}} = 24.66\,\text{dB} = 17.1$. Therefore in Equation 4.23, using the gain of the PWM block calculated in Example 4.1,

$$|G_C(s)|_{f_c} \times \underbrace{0.556}_{|G_{PWM}(s)|_{f_c}} \times \underbrace{17.1}_{|G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c}} \times \underbrace{0.2}_{k_{FB}} = 1 \tag{4.24}$$

or

$$|G_C(s)|_{f_c} = 0.5263 \tag{4.25}$$

The controller in Equation 4.18 with two pole-zero pairs is analyzed in Appendix 4C to this chapter. According to this analysis, the phase angle of $G_C(s)$ in Equation 4.18 reaches its maximum at the geometric mean frequency $\sqrt{f_z f_p}$, where the phase boost ϕ_{boost}, as shown in Figure 4.11, is measured with respect to $-90°$. By proper choice of the controller parameters, the geometric mean frequency is made equal to the crossover frequency f_c. We introduce a factor K_{boost} that indicates the geometric separation between poles and zeroes to yield the necessary phase boost:

$$K_{boost} = \sqrt{\frac{f_p}{f_z}} \tag{4.26}$$

As shown in the Appendix 4C on the accompanying CD, K_{boost} can be derived in terms of ϕ_{boost} as follows,

$$K_{boost} = \tan\left(45° + \frac{\phi_{boost}}{4}\right) \tag{4.27}$$

Using the value of K_{boost} into Equation 4.26, and the fact that we will select $\sqrt{f_z f_p}$ to equal the chosen crossover frequency f_c, the pole and the zero frequencies in the controller can be calculated as follows:

$$f_z = \frac{f_c}{K_{boost}} \tag{4.28}$$

$$f_p = K_{boost} f_c \tag{4.29}$$

From Equations 4.26, 4.28 and 4.29, the controller gain k_c in Equation 4.18 can be calculated at f_c as,

$$k_c = |G_C(s)|_{f_c} \frac{\omega_z}{K_{boost}} \tag{4.30}$$

Once the parameters in Equation 4.18 are determined, the controller transfer function can be synthesized by a single op-amp circuit shown in Figure 4.12. The choice

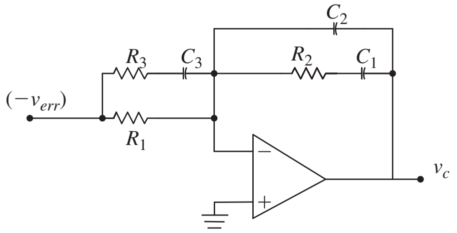

C_2
R_3
C_3
R_2
C_1
$(-v_{err})$
R_1
v_c

FIGURE 4.12 Controller implementation of $-G_c(s)$, using Equation 4.18, by an op-amp.

of R_1 in Figure 4.12 is based on how much current can be drawn from the sensor output; other resistances and capacitances are chosen using the relationships derived in Appendix 4C and presented below:

$$\begin{aligned} &C_2 = \omega_z/(k_c\omega_p R_1),\, C_1 = C_2(\omega_p/\omega_z - 1),\, R_2 = 1/(\omega_z C_1), \\ &R_3 = R_1/(\omega_p/\omega_z - 1),\; C_3 = 1/(\omega_p R_3) \end{aligned} \tag{4.31}$$

In this numerical example with $f_c = 1\,\text{kHz}$, $\phi_{boost} = 108°$, and $|G_C(s)|_{f_c} = 0.5263$, we can calculate $K_{boost} = 3.078$ in Equation 4.27. Using Equations 4.28 through 4.30, $f_z = 324.9\,\text{Hz}$, $f_p = 3078\,\text{Hz}$, and $k_c = 349.1$. For the op-amp implementation, we will select $R_1 = 100\,\text{k}\Omega$. From Equation 4.31, $C_2 = 3.0\,\text{nF}$, $C_1 = 25.6\,\text{nF}$, $R_2 = 19.1\,\text{k}\Omega$, $R_3 = 11.8\,\text{k}\Omega$, and $C_3 = 4.4\,\text{nF}$. We can verify the design of this example in PSpice by adding the controller to the converter model, as shown in Figure 4.13.

Note that in the controller transfer function $G_C(s)$ in this example, both zeroes are at the same frequency; the same is true for both the poles. This need not be the case for possibly achieving a higher crossover frequency.

4.5 PEAK-CURRENT MODE CONTROL

Current-mode control is often used in practice due to its many desirable features, such as simpler controller design and inherent current limiting. In such a control scheme, an inner

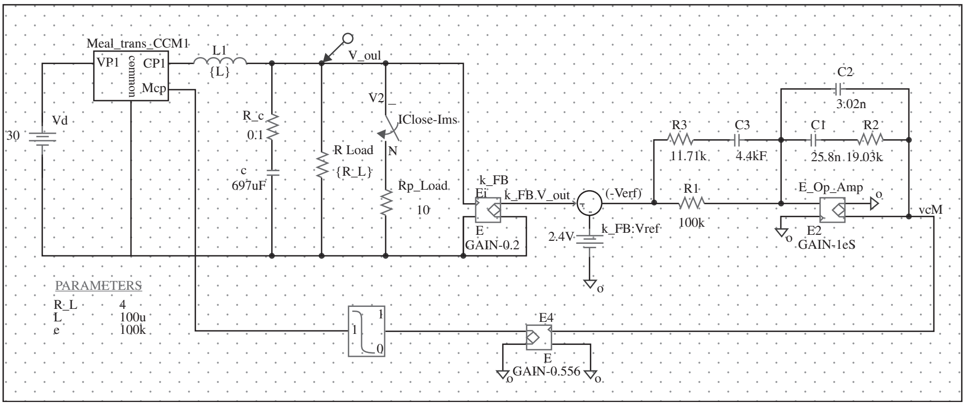

Meal_trans_CCM1
VP1
CP1
common
Mcp
L1
{L}
V_oul
V2
IClose-Ims
Vd
30
R_c
0.1
c
697uF
R Load
{R_L}
N
Rp_Load
10
k_FB
Ei
k_FB.V_out
E
GAIN-0.2
(-Verf)
2.4V
k_FB:Vref
R3
11.71k
C3
4.4kF
R1
100k
C2
3.02n
C1
25.8n
R2
19.03k
E_Op_Amp
E2
GAIN-1eS
vcM
PARAMETERS
R_L 4
L 100u
e 100k
1
1
0
E4
E
GAIN-0.556

FIGURE 4.13 PSpice average model of the Buck converter with voltage-mode control.

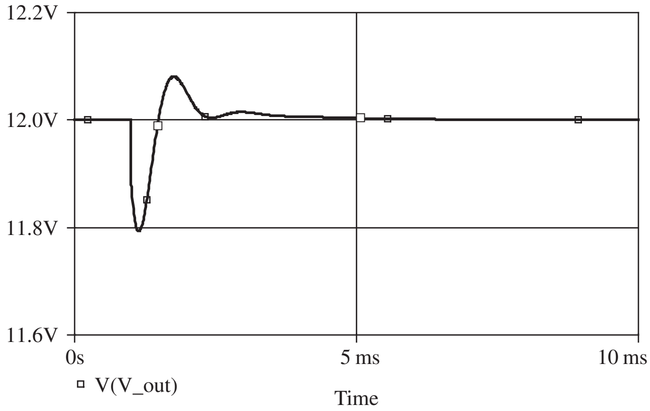


FIGURE 4.14 Response to a step-change in load. Notice that the op amp in PSpice is modeled as a high-gain differential amplifier in Figure 4.13. A step-change in load is applied at 1 ms, and the results are plotted in Figure 4.14.

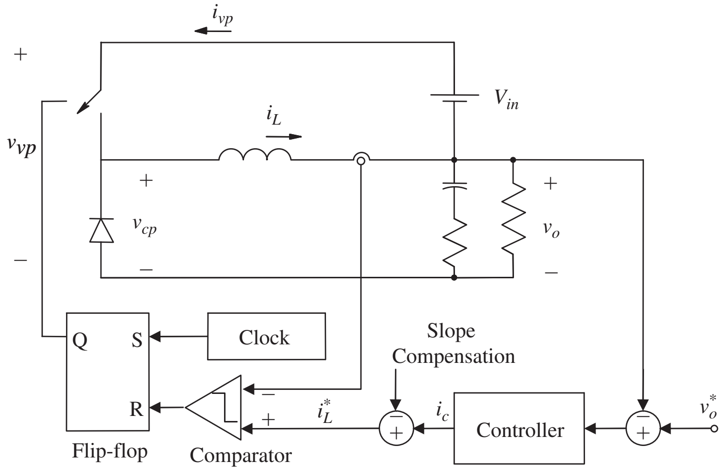


FIGURE 4.15 Peak current mode control.

control loop inside the outer voltage-loop is used as shown in Figure 4.15, resulting in a peak-current-mode control system. In this control arrangement, another state-variable, the inductor current, is utilized as a feedback signal.

The overall voltage-loop objectives in the current-mode control are the same as in the voltage-mode control discussed earlier. However, the voltage-loop controller here produces the reference value for the current that should flow through the inductor, hence the name current-mode control. There are two types of current-mode control:

1. Peak-Current-Mode Control
2. Average-Current-Mode Control.

In switch-mode dc power supplies, peak-current-mode control is invariably used, and therefore we will concentrate on it here. (We will examine the average-current-mode control in connection with the power-factor-correction circuits discussed in the next chapter.)

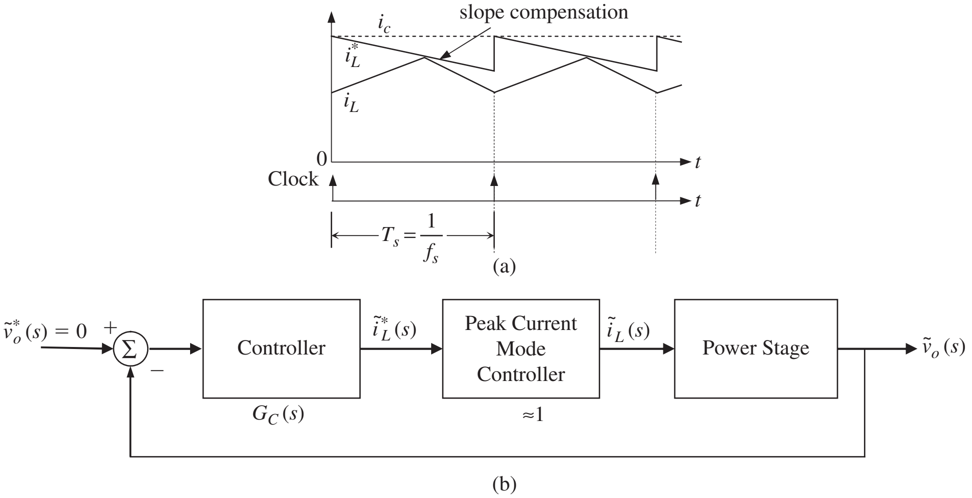
For the current loop, the outer voltage loop in Figure 4.15 produces the reference value i_L^* of the inductor current. This reference current signal is compared with the measured inductor current i_L to reset the flip-flop when i_L reaches i_L^*. As shown in Figure 4.15 and 4.16a, in generating i_L^*, the voltage controller output i_c is modified by a signal called the slope compensation, which is necessary to avoid oscillations at the sub-harmonic frequencies of f_s, particularly at the duty-ratio $d > 0.5$. Generally, the slope of this compensation signal is less than one-half of the slope at which the inductor current falls when the transistor in the converter is turned off.

In Figure 4.16a, when the inductor current reaches the reference value, the transistor is turned off, and is turned back on at a regular interval $T_s(=1/f_s)$ set by the clock. For small perturbations, this current loop acts extremely fast, and it can be assumed ideal with a gain of unity in the small-signal block diagram of Figure 4.16b. The design of the outer voltage loop is described by means of the example below of a Buck-Boost converter operating in CCM.

Example 4.4

In this example, we will design a peak-current-mode controller for a Buck-Boost converter that has the following parameters and operating conditions: $L = 100\,\mu\text{H}$, $C = 697\,\mu\text{F}$, $r = 0.01\,\Omega$, $f_s = 100$ kHz, $V_{in} = 30\,\text{V}$. The output power $P_o = 18\,\text{W}$ in CCM, and the duty-ratio D is adjusted to regulate the output voltage $V_o = 12\,\text{V}$. The phase margin required for the voltage loop is 60°. Assume that in the voltage feedback network, $k_{FB} = 1$.

Solution In designing the outer voltage loop in Figure 4.16b, the transfer function needed for the power stage is $\tilde{v}_o/\tilde{i}_L$. This transfer function in CCM can be obtained theoretically. However, it is much easier to obtain the Bode plot of this transfer function by means of a computer simulation, similar to that used for obtaining the Bode plots of



(b)

FIGURE 4.16 Peak-current-mode control with slope compensation.

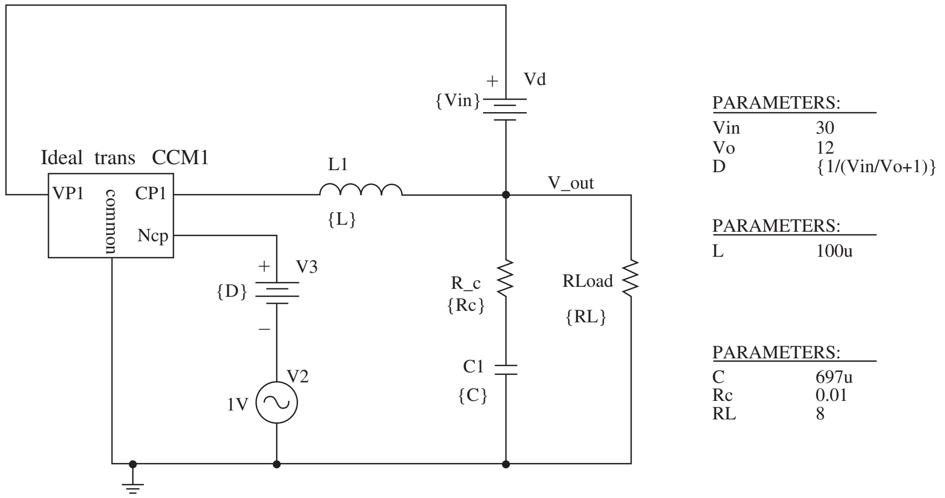

+
Vd
{Vin}
PARAMETERS:
Vin 30
Vo 12
D {1/(Vin/Vo+1)}
Ideal trans CCM1
VP1
common
CP1
Ncp
L1
{L}
V_out
PARAMETERS:
L 100u
+
V3
{D}
−
R_c
{Rc}
RLoad
{RL}
C1
{C}
V2
1V
PARAMETERS:
C 697u
Rc 0.01
RL 8

FIGURE 4.17 PSpice circuit for the Buck-Boost converter.

$\tilde{v}_o/\tilde{d}$ in Example 4.3 for a Buck converter. The PSpice simulation diagram is shown in Figure 4.17 for the Buck-Boost converter, where, as discussed earlier, an ideal transformer is used for the average representation of the switching power-pole in CCM.

In Figure 4.17, the dc voltage source represents the switch duty-ratio D and establishes the dc steady state, around which the circuit is linearized. In the ac analysis, the frequency of the ac source, which represents the duty-ratio perturbation $\tilde{d}$, is swept over the desired range, and the ratio of $\tilde{v}_o(s)$ and $\tilde{i}_L(s)$ yields the Bode plot of the power stage $G_{PS}(s)$, as shown in Figure 4.18.

As shown in Figure 4.18, the phase angle of the power-stage transfer function levels off at approximately $-90°$ at $\sim 1\,\text{kHz}$. The crossover frequency is chosen to be $f_c = 5\,\text{kHz}$, at which in Figure 4.18, $\angle G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} \simeq -90°$. The power-stage transfer

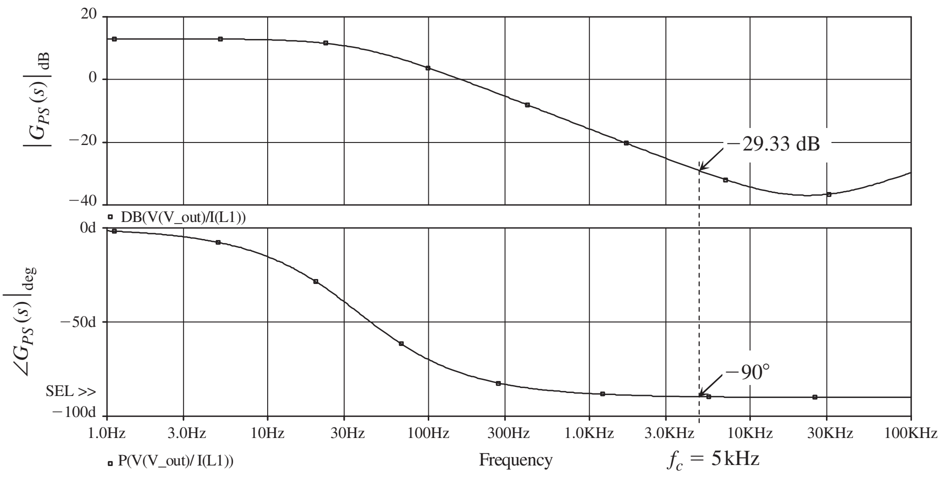


FIGURE 4.18 Bode plot of $\tilde{v}_o/\tilde{i}_L$.

function $\tilde{v}_o(s)/\tilde{i}_L(s)$ of Buck-Boost converters contains a right-half-plane zero in CCM, and the crossover frequency is chosen well below the frequency of the right-half-plane zero. To achieve the desired phase margin of 60°, the controller transfer function is chosen as expressed as below:

$$G_C(s) = \frac{k_c(1 + s/\omega_z)}{s\,(1 + s/\omega_p)} \tag{4.32}$$

To yield zero steady state error, it contains a pole at the origin that introduces a -90° phase angle. The phase-boost required from this pole-zero combination in Equation 4.32, using Equation 4.22 and $\angle G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} \simeq -90^\circ$, is $\phi_{boost} \simeq 60^\circ$. Therefore, unlike the controller transfer function of Equation 4.18 for the voltage-mode control, only a single pole-zero pair is needed to provide phase boost. In Equation 4.32, the zero and pole frequencies associated with the required phase boost can be derived, as shown in Appendix 4C, where K_{boost} is the same as in Equation 4.26, that is, $K_{boost} = \sqrt{f_p/f_z}$:

$$K_{boost} = \tan\left(45^\circ + \frac{\phi_{boost}}{2}\right) \tag{4.33}$$

$$f_z = \frac{f_c}{K_{boost}} \tag{4.34}$$

$$f_p = K_{boost} f_c \tag{4.35}$$

$$k_c = \frac{\omega_z}{|G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c}} \tag{4.36}$$

At the crossover frequency, as shown in Figure 4.18, the power stage transfer function has a gain $|G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} = -29.33\,\text{dB}$. Therefore, at the crossover frequency, by definition, in Figure 4.16b,

$$|G_C(s)|_{f_c} \times |G_{PS}(s)|_{f_c} = 1 \tag{4.37}$$

Hence,

$$|G_C(s)|_{f_c} = 29.33\,\text{dB} = 29.27 \tag{4.38}$$

Using the equations above for $f_c = 5\,\text{kHz}$, $\phi_{boost} \simeq 60^\circ$, and $|G_C(s)|_{f_c} = 29.27$, $K_{boost} = 3.732$ in Equation 4.33. Therefore, the parameters in the controller transfer function of Equation 4.32 are calculated as $f_z = 1340\,\text{Hz}$, $f_p = 18660\,\text{Hz}$, and $k_c = 246.4 \times 10^3$.

The transfer function of Equation 4.32 can be realized by an op-amp circuit shown in Figure 4.19. In the expressions derived in the Appendix 4C on the accompanying CD, selecting $R_1 = 10\,\text{k}\Omega$ and using the transfer-function parameters calculated above, the component values in the circuit of Figure 4.19 are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} C_2 &= \frac{\omega_z}{\omega_p R_1 k_c} = 30\,p\text{F} \\ C_1 &= C_2(\omega_p/\omega_z - 1) = 380\,p\text{F} \\ R_2 &= 1/(\omega_z C_1) = 315\,\text{k}\Omega \end{aligned} \tag{4.39}$$

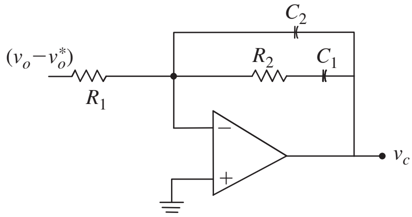

C_2
$(v_o - v_o^*)$
R_2
C_1
R_1
v_c

FIGURE 4.19 Controller implementation of $-G_c(s)$, using Equation 4.32, by an op-amp.

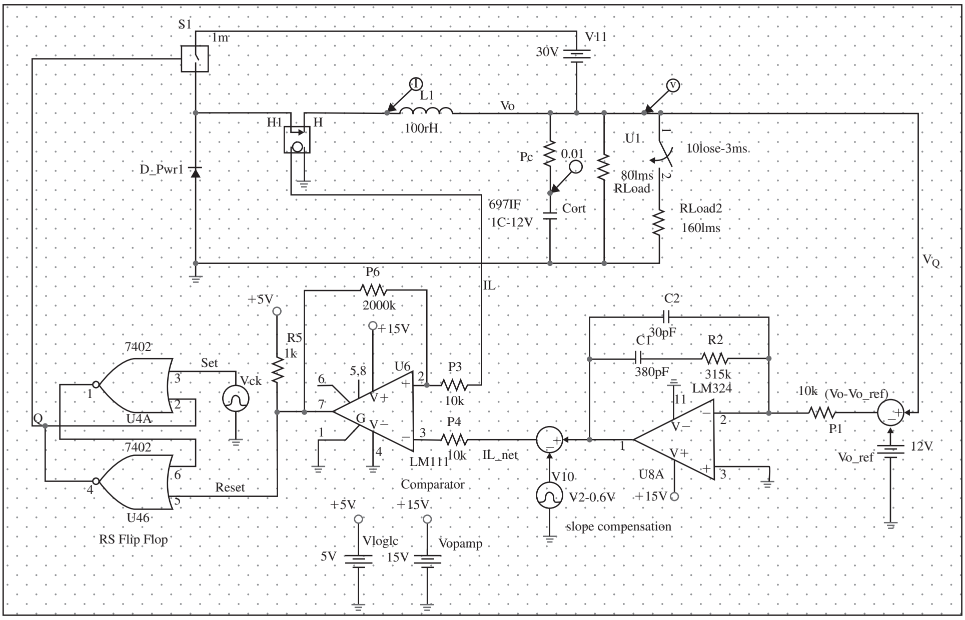

S1
1m
V11
30V
L1
100rH
Vo
H1
H
D_Pwr1
Pc
0.01
U1
10lose-3ms
80lms
RLoad
697lF
1C-12V
Cort
RLoad2
160lms
VQ
IL
P6
2000k
+5V
R5
1k
+15V
C2
30pF
C1
R2
380pF
315k
LM324
7402
U4A
Set
Vck
U6
P3
10k
P4
LM111
IL_net
Comparator
U8A
V10
V2-0.6V
+15V
slope compensation
10k (Vo-Vo_ref)
P1
Vo_ref
12V
7402
U46
Reset
RS Flip Flop
+5V
+15V
5V
Vlogic
15V
Vopamp

FIGURE 4.20 PSpice simulation diagram of the peak-current-mode control.

The PSpice circuit diagram is shown in Figure 4.20 where a load change occurs at 3 ms. Using this simulation, the output voltage and its average are plotted in Figure 4.21.

4.6 FEEDBACK CONTROLLER DESIGN IN DCM

In sections 4.4 and 4.5, feedback controllers were designed for CCM operation of the converters. The procedure for designing controllers in DCM is the same, except that the average model of the power stage in PSpice simulations can be simply replaced by its model, which is also valid in DCM, as described in Chapter 3. This is illustrated for a Buck-Boost converter in the PSpice schematic of Figure 4.22, where the average model of the switching-pole is valid for both CCM and DCM modes.

The Bode plot of the power stage $G_{PS}(s)$ in Figure 4.23 shows that in the DCM mode, as compared to the CCM mode, the phase plot appears as if one of the poles in the transfer function cancels out, making it easier to design the feedback controller in this mode.

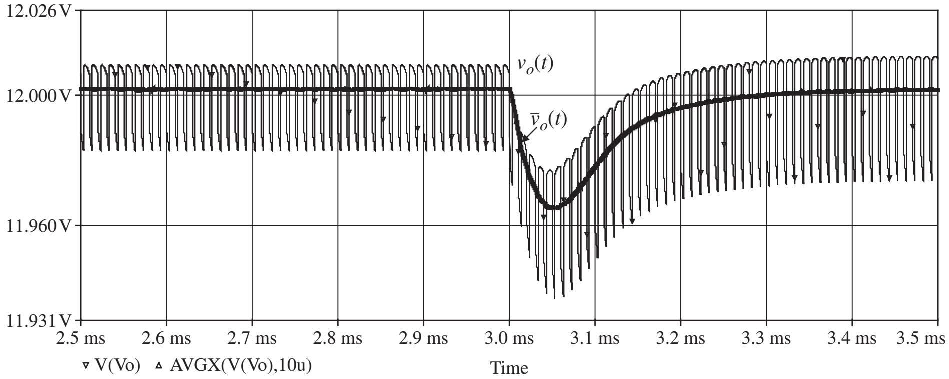


FIGURE 4.21 Peak current mode control: Output voltage waveform.

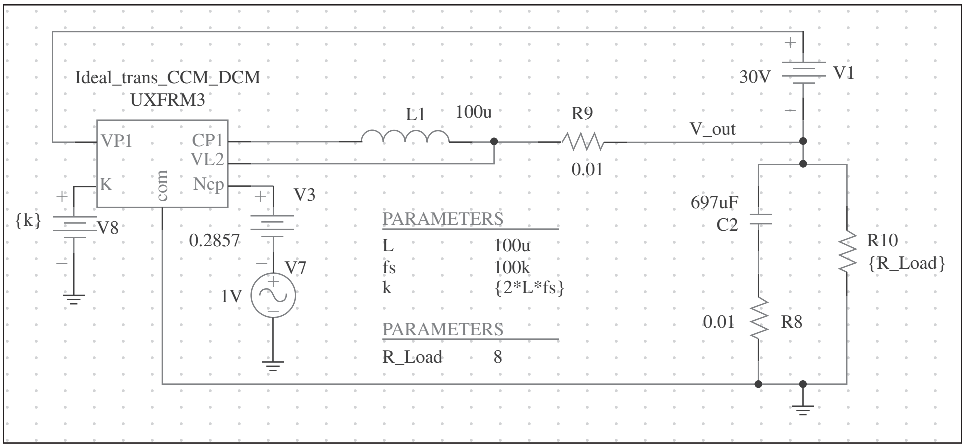

Ideal_trans_CCM_DCM
UXFRM3
VP1
CP1
VL2
K
com
Ncp
{k}
V8
0.2857
V3
V7
1V
L1
100u
R9
0.01
V_out
30V
V1
697uF
C2
R10
{R_Load}
0.01
R8
PARAMETERS
L 100u
fs 100k
k {2*L*fs}
PARAMETERS
R_Load 8

FIGURE 4.22 PSpice circuit for the Buck-Boost converter in both CCM and DCM modes.

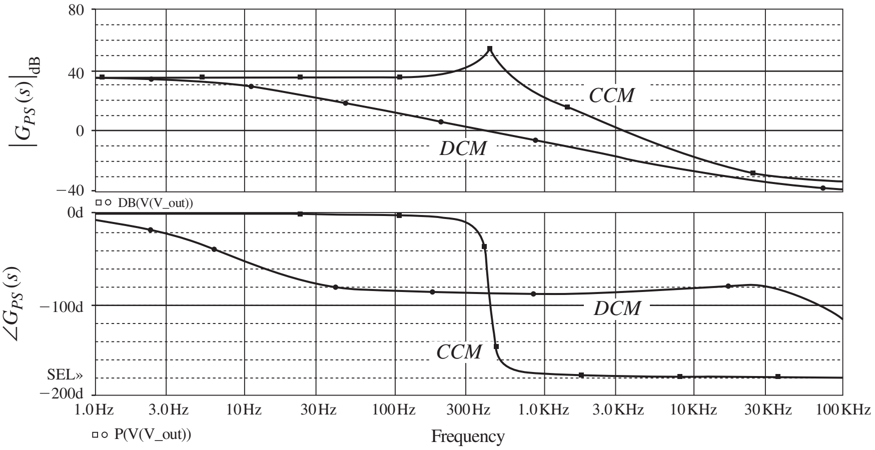


FIGURE 4.23 The gain and phase of the power stage $G_{PS}(s) = \tilde{v}_o/\tilde{d}(s)$ in CCM and DCM.

REFERENCES

1. PWM Controller ICs, http://focus.ti.com/analog/docs/powerhome.tsp?familyId=64&contentType=4.

2. H. Dean Venable, "The K-Factor: A New Mathematical Tool for Stability Analysis and Synthesis," Proceedings of Powercon 10, http://www.venable.biz.

3. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design*, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).

PROBLEMS

4.1. In Example 4.3, plot the gain and the phase of the open-loop transfer function $G_L(s)$.

4.2. In a voltage mode-controlled DC-DC converter the loop transfer function has the crossover frequency $f_c = 2\,\text{kHz}$. The power stage transfer function has a phase angle of -160° at the crossover frequency. Calculate w_z and w_p in the voltage controller transfer function of Equation 4.18, if the required phase margin is 60°.

4.3. In the above problem the power stage has a gain equal to 20 at the crossover frequency, $k_{FB} = 0.2$, and $G_{PWM} = 0.6$. Calculate k_c in the voltage controller transfer function of Equation 4.18.

4.4. In Example 4.4, plot the gain and the phase of the open-loop transfer function $G_L(s)$.

4.5. In a peak-current-mode-controlled DC-DC converter, the loop crossover frequency in the outer voltage loop is 10 kHz. At this crossover frequency, the power stage in Figure 4.16b has the gain of 0.1, and the phase angle of -80°. Calculate f_z, f_p and k_c in the controller transfer function of Equation 4.32 if the desired phase margin is 60°.

4.6. Derive the transfer function $\tilde{v}_o(s)/\tilde{i}_L(s)$ for a Buck converter in CCM.

4.7. Derive the transfer function $\tilde{v}_o(s)/\tilde{i}_L(s)$ for a Boost converter in CCM.

4.8. Derive the transfer function $\tilde{v}_o(s)/\tilde{i}_L(s)$ for a Buck-Boost converter in CCM.

Simulation Problems

4.9. In a Buck converter, various parameters are as follows: $L = 100\,\mu\text{H}$, $C = 697\,\mu\text{F}$ and $R_{Load} = 9.0\,\Omega$. The capacitor ESR is $0.1\,\Omega$. The input voltage $V_{in} = 24\,\text{V}$, the switching frequency $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$ and the output voltage $V_0 = 18\,\text{V}$.

(a) Obtain the Bode plots for the transfer function $\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{d}}(s)$ as shown in Figure 4.10 for the values given in this problem.

(b) Obtain the gain and the phase of the transfer function $\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{d}}(s)$ at the frequency of 1 kHz, which will be chosen as the crossover of the open-loop transfer function $G_L(s)$ in the next problem.

4.10. In the Buck converter of Problem 4.9, design the feedback controller using the voltage-mode, as shown in Figure 4.13, where $k_{fb} = 0.2$ and $G_{PWM}(s) = 0.556$. Choose the open-loop crossover frequency to be 1 kHz (or close to it) and the phase margin of 60°.

(a) This feedback controller is to be simulated using an op-amp, as shown in Figure 4.12. Obtain the output voltage response for a step-change in load.

- (b) Repeat part-a with a phase margin of 45°. Compare the output voltage response with that of a phase margin of 60°.
- (c) Repeat part-a with a crossover frequency of 2 kHz and compare the response to that in part-a.

4.11. In a Buck-Boost converter, various parameters are as follows: $L = 100\,\mu\text{H}$, $C = 697\,\mu\text{F}$ and $R_{Load} = 200.0\,\Omega$. The capacitor ESR is $0.01\,\Omega$. The input voltage $V_{in} = 20\,\text{V}$, the switching frequency $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$ and the switch duty-ratio $D = 0.375$.

- (a) Obtain the Bode plots for the transfer function $\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{i}_L}(s)$ as shown in Figure 4.18 for the values given in this circuit.
- (b) Obtain the gain and the phase of the transfer function $\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{i}_L}(s)$ in part-a at the frequency of 5 kHz, which will be chosen as the crossover of the open-loop transfer function $G_L(s)$ in the next problem.

4.12. In the Buck-Boost converter of Problem 4.11, design the feedback controller using the peak-current-mode, as shown in Figure 4.20. Choose the open-loop crossover frequency to be 5 kHz (or close to it) and the phase margin of 60°.

- (a) This feedback controller is to be simulated using an op-amp, as shown in Figure 4.20. Obtain various parameters.
- (b) Obtain the output voltage and the inductor current response for a step-change in load.

4.13. In the Buck-Boost converter of Problem 4.11, obtain $\frac{\tilde{v}_o}{\tilde{d}}(s)$ under CCM and DCM modes of operation and compare the results.

APPENDIX 4A BODE PLOTS OF TRANSFER FUNCTIONS WITH POLES AND ZEROS

In this section, Bode plots of various transfer functions are presented as a review.

4A.1 A Pole in a Transfer Function

A transfer function with a pole at ω_p is expressed below

$$T(s) = \frac{1}{1 + s/\omega_p} \tag{4A.1}$$

whose gain and phase plots in Figure 4A.1 show that the gain beyond the pole frequency of ω_p starts to fall at a rate of −20 dB/decade and the phase angle falls to −90° approximately a decade later.

4A.2 A Zero in a Transfer Function

The transfer function with a zero at a frequency of ω_z is expressed below

$$T(s) = 1 + s/\omega_z \tag{4A.2}$$

whose gain and phase plots in Figure 4A.2 show that the gain beyond the frequency of ω_z starts to rise at a rate of 20 dB/decade and the phase angle rises to + 90° approximately a decade later.

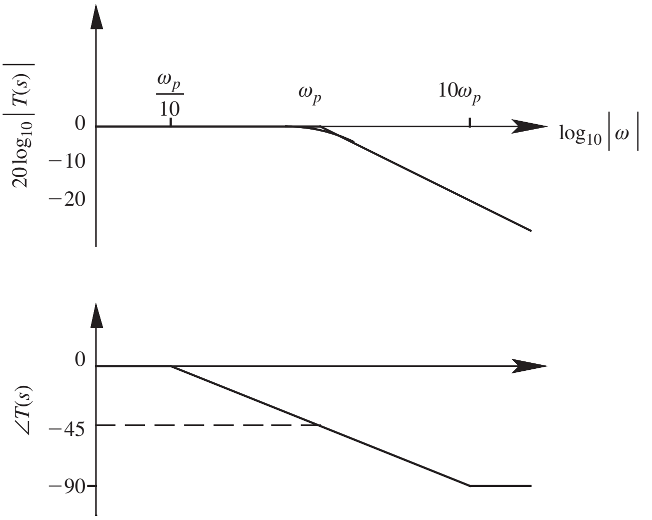


FIGURE 4A.1 Gain and phase plots of a pole.

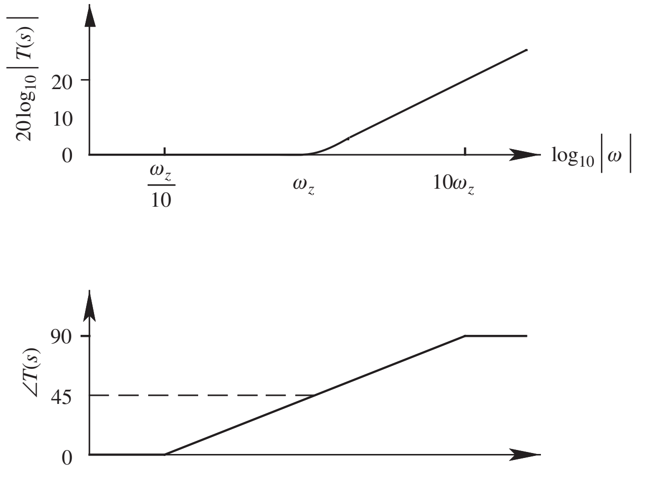


FIGURE 4A.2 Gain and phase plots of a zero.

4A.3 A Right-Hand-Plane (RHP) Zero in a Transfer Function

In boost and buck-boost dc-dc converters, transfer functions contain a so-called right-hand plane (RHP) zero, with a transfer function expressed below

$$T(s) = 1 - \frac{s}{\omega_z} \tag{4A.3}$$

whose gain and phase plots in Figure 4A.3 show that the gain beyond the frequency of ω_z starts to rise at a rate of 20 dB/decade while the phase angle drops to $-90°$ approximately a decade later. This RHP zero presents special challenges in designing feedback controllers in boost and buck-boost converters, as is discussed in this chapter.

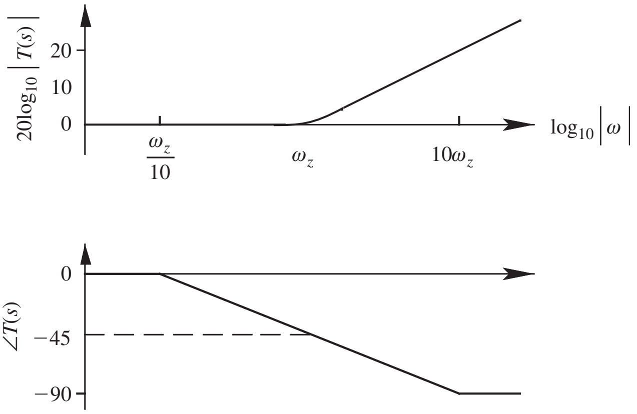


FIGURE 4A.3 Gain and phase plots of a right-hand side zero.

4A.4 A Double Pole in a Transfer Function

In dc-dc converter transfer functions, presence of L-C filters introduces a double pole, that can be expressed as below

$$T(s) = \frac{1}{1 + \alpha s + \left(\frac{s}{\omega_o}\right)^2} \tag{4A.4}$$

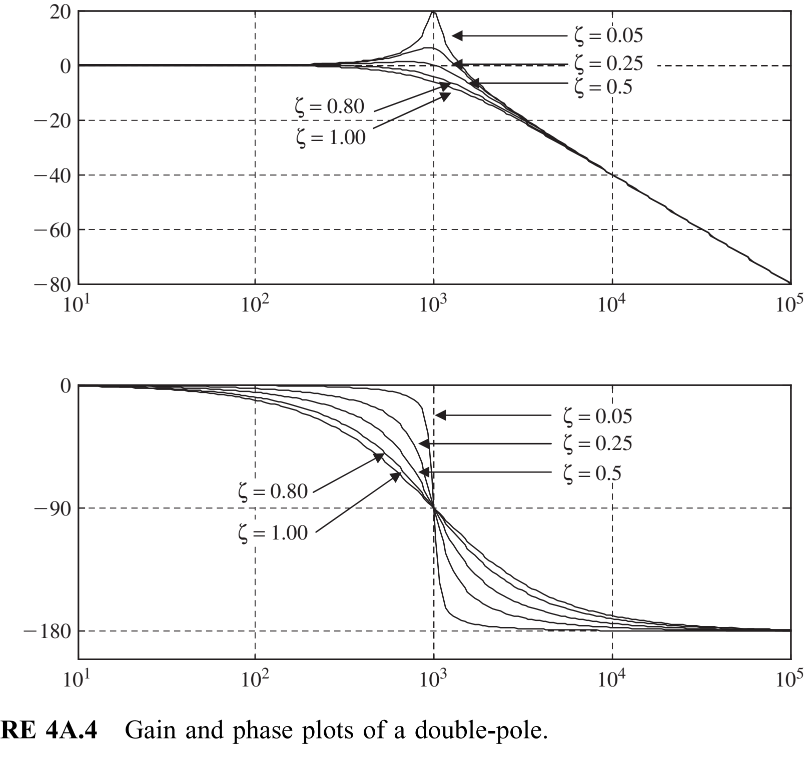


FIGURE 4A.4 Gain and phase plots of a double-pole.

whose gain and plots in Figure 4A-4 show that the gain beyond the frequency ω_o starts to fall at a rate of $-40\,\text{dB}$/*decade* and the phase angle falls towards -180°. These plots depend on the damping coefficient $\xi = (\alpha/2)\omega_o$.

APPENDIX 4B TRANSFER FUNCTIONS IN CONTINUOUS CONDUCTION MODE (CCM)

In this Appendix, we derive the transfer function $\tilde{v}_o/\tilde{d}$ for the three converters operating in CCM. This Appendix is on the accompanying website.

APPENDIX 4C DERIVATION OF PARAMETERS OF THE CONTROLLER TRANSFER FUNCTIONS

In this Appendix, we derive the parameters of the controller transfer functions. This Appendix is on the accompanying website.

5

RECTIFICATION OF UTILITY INPUT USING DIODE RECTIFIERS

As discussed in the introduction to Chapter 1, the role of power electronics is to facilitate power flow, often in a controlled manner, between two systems shown in Figure 5.1: one of them a "source" and the other a "load." Typically, power is provided by a single-phase or a three-phase utility source, for example in adjustable-speed motor drives. (Of course there are exceptions, for example, in wind turbines, where the wind-turbine generator is the source of power to the utility grid that acts like a "load".)

Such power-electronic interfaces often consist of a voltage-link structure, discussed in section 1.5.1, where the input from the ac source is first rectified into a dc voltage across a large capacitor. If reversing of power flow is not an objective, it is possible to rectify the ac input, single-phase or three-phase, by means of diode rectifiers discussed in this chapter. The knowledge of such systems is essential for learning about thyristor converters, discussed in Chapter 13, that are used in important applications such as High Voltage DC Transmission (HVDC) systems.

5.1 INTRODUCTION

In diode rectifiers, unless a corrective action is taken as described in the next chapter, power is drawn by means of highly distorted currents, which have a deleterious effect on the power quality of the utility source. This issue and the basic principles of diode-rectifier operation are examined in this chapter.

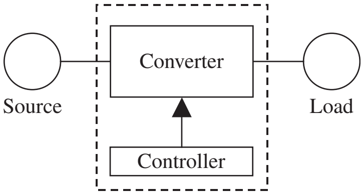


FIGURE 5.1 Block diagram of power electronic systems.

5.2 DISTORTION AND POWER FACTOR

To quantify distortion in the current drawn by power electronic systems, it is necessary to define certain indices. As a base case, consider the linear $R - L$ load shown in Figure 5.2a, which is supplied by a sinusoidal source in steady state. The voltage and current phasors are shown in Figure 5.2b, where ϕ is the angle by which the current lags the voltage. Using rms values for the voltage and current magnitudes, the average power supplied by the source is

$$P = V_s I_s \cos\phi \tag{5.1}$$

The power factor (PF) at which power is drawn is defined as the ratio of the real average power P to the product of the rms voltage and the rms current:

$$PF = \frac{P}{V_s I_s} = \cos\phi \quad (\text{using Equation 5.1}) \tag{5.2}$$

where $V_s I_s$ is the apparent power. For a given voltage, from Equation 5.2, the rms current drawn is

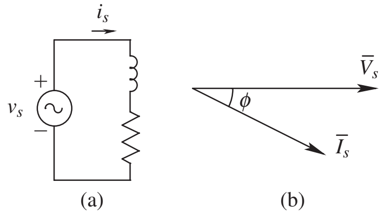
$$I_s = \frac{P}{V_s \cdot PF} \tag{5.3}$$

This shows that the power factor PF and the current I_s are inversely proportional. This current flows through the utility distribution lines, transformers, and so on, causing losses in their resistances. This is the reason why utilities prefer unity power factor loads that draw power at the minimum value of the rms current.

5.2.1 RMS Value of Distorted Current and the Total Harmonic Distortion (*THD*)

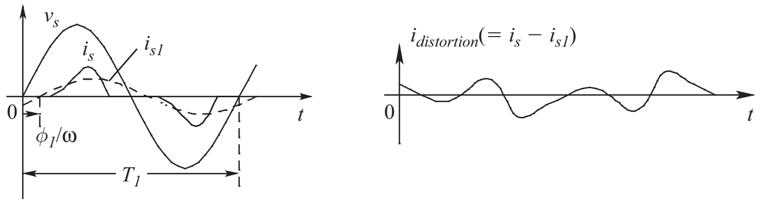
The sinusoidal current drawn by the linear load in Figure 5.2 has zero distortion. However, power electronic systems with diode rectifiers as the front-end draw currents with a distorted waveform such as that shown by $i_s(t)$ in Figure 5.3a. The utility voltage $v_s(t)$ is assumed sinusoidal. The following analysis is general, applying to the utility supply that is either single-phase or three-phase, in which case the analysis is on a per-phase basis.

The current waveform $i_s(t)$ in Figure 5.3a repeats with a time-period T_1. By Fourier analysis of this repetitive waveform, we can compute its fundamental frequency $(= 1/T_1)$



(a) (b)

FIGURE 5.2 Voltage and current phasors in simple *R-L* circuit.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 5.3 Current drawn by power electronics equipment with diode-bridge front-end.

component $i_{s1}(t)$, shown dotted in Figure 5.3a. The distortion component $i_{distortion}(t)$ in the input current is the difference between $i_s(t)$ and the fundamental-frequency component $i_{s1}(t)$:

$$i_{distortion}(t) = i_s(t) - i_{s1}(t) \tag{5.4}$$

where $i_{distortion}(t)$ using Equation 5.4 is plotted in Figure 5.3b. This distortion component consists of components at frequencies that are the multiples of the fundamental frequency.

To obtain the rms value of $i_s(t)$ in Figure 5.3a, we will apply the basic definition of rms:

$$I_s = \sqrt{\frac{1}{T_1} \int_{T_1} i_s^2(t) \cdot dt} \tag{5.5}$$

Using Equation 5.4,

$$i_s^2(t) = i_{s1}^2(t) + i_{distortion}^2(t) + 2i_{s1}(t) \times i_{distortion}(t) \tag{5.6}$$

In a repetitive waveform, the integral of the products of the two harmonic components (including the fundamental) at unequal frequencies, over the repetition time-period, equals zero:

$$\int_{T_1} g_{h_1}(t) \cdot g_{h_2}(t) \cdot dt = 0 \qquad h_1 \neq h_2 \tag{5.7}$$

Therefore, substituting Equation 5.6 into Equation 5.5, and making use of Equation 5.7 that implies that the integral of the third term on the right side of Equation 5.6 equals zero (assuming the average component to be zero),

$$I_s = \sqrt{\underbrace{\frac{1}{T_1} \int_{T_1} i_{s1}^2(t) \cdot dt}_{I_{s1}^2} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{T_1} \int_{T_1} i_{distortion}^2(t) \cdot dt}_{I_{distortion}^2} + 0} \tag{5.8}$$

or,

$$I_s = \sqrt{I_{s1}^2 + I_{distortion}^2} \tag{5.9}$$

where the rms values of the fundamental-frequency component and the distortion component are as follows:

$$I_{s1} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{T_1}\int_{T_1} i_{s1}^2(t)\cdot dt} \tag{5.10}$$

and,

$$I_{distortion} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{T_1}\int_{T_1} i_{distortion}^2(t)\cdot dt} \tag{5.11}$$

Based on the rms values of the fundamental and the distortion components in the input current $i_s(t)$, a distortion index called the Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) is defined in percentage as follows:

$$\%\, THD = 100 \times \frac{I_{distortion}}{I_{s1}} \tag{5.12}$$

Using Equation 5.9 into Equation 5.12,

$$\%\, THD = 100 \times \frac{\sqrt{I_s^2 - I_{s1}^2}}{I_{s1}} \tag{5.13}$$

The rms value of the distortion component can be obtained based on the harmonic components (except the fundamental) as follows using Equation 5.7:

$$I_{distortion} = \sqrt{\sum_{h=2}^{\infty} I_{sh}^2} \tag{5.14}$$

where I_{sh} is the rms value of the harmonic component "h".

5.2.1.1 Obtaining Harmonic Components by Fourier Analysis

By Fourier analysis, any distorted (non-sinusoidal) waveform $g(t)$ that is repetitive with a fundamental frequency f_1, for example i_s in Figure 5.3a, can be expressed as a sum of sinusoidal components at the fundament and its multiples (harmonic) frequencies:

$$g(t) = G_0 + \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} g_h(t) = G_0 + \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} \{a_h \cos(h\omega t) + b_h \sin(h\omega t)\} \tag{5.15}$$

where the average value G_0 is dc,

$$G_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} g(t)\cdot d(\omega t) \tag{5.16}$$

The sinusoidal waveforms in Equation 5.15 at the fundamental frequency $f_1 (h = 1)$ and the harmonic components at frequencies h times f_1 can be expressed as the sum of their cosine and sine components,

$$a_h = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} g(t) \cos(h\omega t) \, d(\omega t) \quad h = 1, 2, \ldots, \infty \tag{5.17}$$

$$b_h = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} g(t) \sin(h\omega t) \, d(\omega t) \quad h = 1, 2, \ldots, \infty \tag{5.18}$$

The cosine and the sine components above, given by Equations 5.17 and 5.18, can be combined and written as a phasor in terms of its rms value,

$$\bar{G}_h = G_h \angle \phi_h \tag{5.19}$$

where the rms magnitude in terms of the peak values a_h and b_h equals,

$$G_h = \frac{\sqrt{a_h^2 + b_h^2}}{\sqrt{2}} \tag{5.20}$$

and the phase ϕ_h can be expressed as,

$$\tan \phi_h = \frac{-b_h}{a_h} \tag{5.21}$$

It can be shown that the rms value of the distorted function $g(t)$ can be expressed in terms of its average and the sinusoidal components as,

$$G = \sqrt{G_0^2 + \sum_{h=1}^{\infty} G_h^2} \tag{5.22}$$

In Fourier analysis, by appropriate selection of the time origin, it is often possible to make the sine or the cosine components in Equation 5.15 to be zero, thus considerably simplifying the analysis, as illustrated by a simple example below.

Example 5.1

A current i_s of square waveform is shown in Figure 5.4a. Calculate and plot its fundamental frequency component and its distortion component. What is the %THD associated with this waveform?

Solution From Fourier analysis, by choosing the time origin as shown in Figure 5.4a, $i_s(t)$ in Figure 5.4a can be expressed as,

$$i_s = \frac{4}{\pi} I \left(\sin \omega_1 t + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3\omega_1 t + \frac{1}{5} \sin 5\omega_1 t + \frac{1}{7} \sin 7\omega_1 t + \ldots \right) \tag{5.23}$$

The fundamental frequency component and the distortion component are plotted in Figures 5.4b and 5.4c.

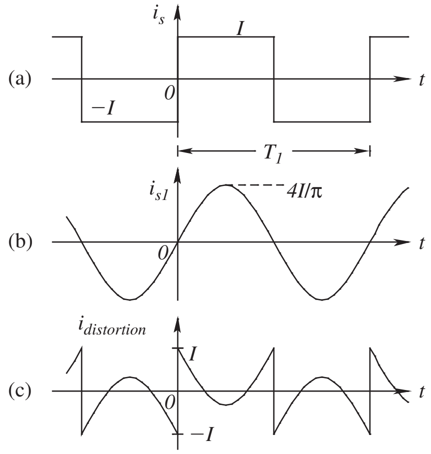


FIGURE 5.4 Example 5.1.

From Figure 5.4a, it is obvious that the rms value I_s of the square waveform is equal to I. In the Fourier expression of Equation 5.23, and the rms value of the fundamental-frequency component is,

$$I_{s1} = \frac{(4/\pi)}{\sqrt{2}} I = 0.9I$$

Therefore, the distortion component can be calculated from Equation 5.9 as,

$$I_{distortion} = \sqrt{I_s^2 - I_{s1}^2} = \sqrt{I^2 - (0.9I)^2} = 0.436I.$$

Therefore, using the definition of *THD*,

$$\%\, THD = 100 \times \frac{I_{distortion}}{I_{s1}} = 100 \times \frac{0.436I}{0.9I} = 48.4\%.$$

5.2.2 The Displacement Power Factor (*DPF*) and Power Factor (*PF*)

Next, we will consider the power factor at which power is drawn by a load with a distorted current waveform such as that shown in Figure 5.3a. As before, it is reasonable to assume that the utility-supplied line-frequency voltage $v_s(t)$ is sinusoidal, with an rms value of V_s and a frequency $f_1 (= \frac{\omega_1}{2\pi})$. Based on Equation 5.7, which states that the product of the cross-frequency terms has a zero average, the average power P drawn by the load in Figure 5.3a is due only to the fundamental-frequency component of the current:

$$P = \frac{1}{T_1} \int_{T_1} v_s(t) \cdot i_s(t) \cdot dt = \frac{1}{T_1} \int_{T_1} v_s(t) \cdot i_{s1}(t) \cdot dt \tag{5.24}$$

Therefore, in contrast to Equation 5.1 for a linear load, in a load that draws distorted current, similar to Equation 5.1,

$$P = V_s I_{s1} \cos \phi_1 \tag{5.25}$$

where ϕ_1 is the angle by which the fundamental-frequency current component $i_{s1}(t)$ lags behind the voltage, as shown in Figure 5.3a.

At this point, another term called the Displacement Power Factor (*DPF*) needs to be introduced, where,

$$DPF = \cos \phi_1 \tag{5.26}$$

Therefore, using the *DPF* in Equation 5.25,

$$P = V_s I_{s1}(DPF) \tag{5.27}$$

In the presence of distortion in the current, the meaning and therefore the definition of the power factor, at which the real average power *P* is drawn, remains the same as in Equation 5.2, that is, the ratio of the real power to the product of the rms voltage and the rms current:

$$PF = \frac{P}{V_s I_s} \tag{5.28}$$

Substituting Equation 5.27 for *P* into Equation 5.28,

$$PF = \left(\frac{I_{s1}}{I_s}\right)(DPF) \tag{5.29}$$

In linear loads that draw sinusoidal currents, the current-ratio (I_{s1}/I_s) in Equation 5.29 is unity, hence $PF = DPF$. Equation 5.29 shows the following: a high distortion in the current waveform leads to a low power factor, even if the *DPF* is high. Using Equation 5.13, the ratio (I_{s1}/I_s) in Equation 5.29 can be expressed in terms of the Total Harmonic Distortion as,

$$\frac{I_{s1}}{I_s} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{\%THD}{100}\right)^2}} \tag{5.30}$$

Therefore, in Equation 5.29,

$$PF = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{\%THD}{100}\right)^2}} \cdot DPF \tag{5.31}$$

The effect of *THD* on the power factor is shown in Figure 5.5 by plotting (PF/DPF) versus *THD*. It shows that even if the displacement power factor is unity, a total harmonic distortion of 100% (which is possible in power electronic systems unless

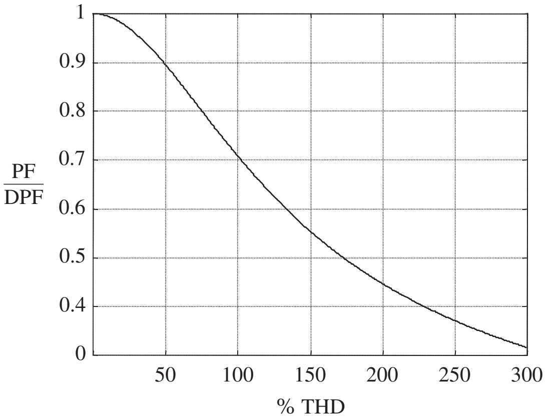


FIGURE 5.5 Relation between *PF*/*DPF* and *THD*.

corrective measures are taken) can reduce the power factor to approximately 0.7 (or $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707$ to be exact), which is unacceptably low.

5.2.3 Deleterious Effects of Harmonic Distortion and a Poor Power Factor

There are several deleterious effects of high distortion in the current waveform and the poor power factor that results due to it. These are as follows:

- Power loss in utility equipment such as distribution and transmission lines, transformers, and generators increases, possibly to the point of overloading them.
- Harmonic currents can overload the shunt capacitors used by utilities for voltage support and may cause resonance conditions between the capacitive reactance of these capacitors and the inductive reactance of the distribution and transmission lines.
- The utility voltage waveform will also become distorted, adversely affecting other linear loads, if a significant portion of the load supplied by the utility draws power by means of distorted currents.

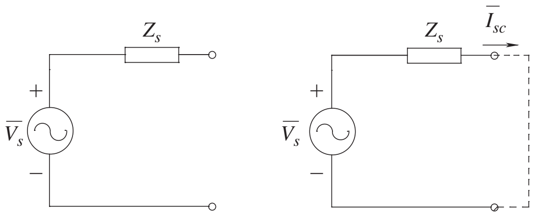
5.2.3.1 Harmonic Guidelines

In order to prevent degradation in power quality, recommended guidelines (in the form of the IEEE-519) have been suggested by the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers). These guidelines place the responsibilities of maintaining power quality on the consumers and the utilities as follows: (1) on the power consumers, such as the users of power electronic systems, to limit the distortion in the current drawn, and (2) on the utilities to ensure that the voltage supply is sinusoidal with less than a specified amount of distortion.

The limits on current distortion placed by the IEEE-519 are shown in Table 5.1, where the limits on harmonic currents, as a ratio of the fundamental component, are specified for various harmonic frequencies. Also, the limits on the *THD* are specified. These limits are selected to prevent distortion in the voltage waveform of the utility supply. Therefore, the limits on distortion in Table 5.1 depend on the "stiffness" of the

TABLE 5.1 Harmonic current distortion (I_h/I_l)

	Odd Harmonic Order h (in %)					*Total Harmonic Distortion (%)*
I_{sc}/I_1	$h < 11$	$11 \leq h < 17$	$17 \leq h < 23$	$23 \leq h < 35$	$35 \leq h$	
<20	4.0	2.0	1.5	0.6	0.3	5.0
20–50	7.0	3.5	2.5	1.0	0.5	8.0
50–100	10.0	4.5	4.0	1.5	0.7	12.0
100–1000	12.0	5.5	5.0	2.0	1.0	15.0
>1000	15.0	7.0	6.0	2.5	1.4	20.0



(a) (b)

FIGURE 5.6 (a) Utility supply; (b) short-circuit current.

utility supply, which is shown in Figure 5.6a by a voltage source $\overline{Vs}$ in series with internal impedance Z_s. An ideal voltage supply has zero internal impedance. In contrast, the voltage supply at the end of a long distribution line, for example, will have large internal impedance.

To define the "stiffness" of the supply, the short-circuit current I_{sc} is calculated by hypothetically placing short-circuit at the supply terminals, as shown in Figure 5.6b. The stiffness of the supply must be calculated in relation to the load current. Therefore, the stiffness is defined by a ratio called the Short-Circuit-Ratio *(SCR)*:

$$\text{Short-Circuit-Ratio} \quad SCR = \frac{I_{sc}}{I_{s1}} \tag{5.32}$$

where I_{s1} is the fundamental-frequency component of the load current. Table 5.1 shows that a smaller short-circuit ratio corresponds to lower limits on the allowed distortion in the current drawn. For the short-circuit-ratio of less than 20, the total harmonic distortion in the current must be less than 5%. Power electronic systems that meet this limit would also meet the limits of more stiff supplies.

It should be noted that the IEEE-519 does not propose harmonic guidelines for individual pieces of equipment but rather for the aggregate of loads (such as in an industrial plant) seen from the service entrance, which is also the point-of-common-coupling (PCC) with other customers. However, the IEEE-519 is frequently interpreted as the harmonic guidelines for specifying individual pieces of equipment such as motor drives. There are other harmonic standards, such as the IEC-1000, which apply to individual pieces of equipment.

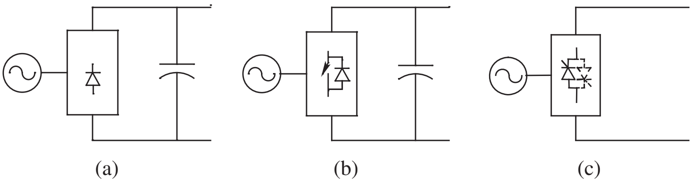


FIGURE 5.7 Front-end of power electronics equipment.

5.3 CLASSIFYING THE "FRONT-END" OF POWER ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS

Interaction between the utility supply and power electronic systems depends on the "front-ends" (within the power-processing units), which convert line-frequency ac into dc. These front-ends can be broadly classified as follows:

- Diode-bridge rectifiers (shown in Figure 5.7a) in which power flows only in one direction.
- Switch-mode converters (shown in Figure 5.7b) in which the power flow can reverse and the line currents are sinusoidal at the unity power factor.
- Thyristor converters (shown in Figure 5.7c) in which the power flow can be made bi-directional.

All of these front-ends can be designed to interface with single-phase or three-phase utility systems. In the following discussion, a brief description of the diode interface shown in Figure 5.7a is provided, supplemented by analysis of results obtained through computer simulations. Interfaces using switch-mode converters in Figure 5.7b and thyristor converters in Figure 5.7c are discussed later in this book.

5.4 DIODE-RECTIFIER BRIDGE "FRONT-ENDS"

Most power electronic systems use diode-bridge rectifiers, like the one shown in Figure 5.7a, even though they draw currents with highly distorted waveforms and the power through them can flow only in one direction. In switch-mode dc power supplies, these diode-bridge rectifiers are supplemented by a power-factor-correction circuit, to meet current harmonic limits, as discussed in the next chapter.

Diode rectifiers rectify line-frequency ac into dc across the dc-bus capacitor, without any control over the dc-bus voltage. For analyzing the interaction between the utility and the power electronic systems, the switch-mode converter and the load can be represented by an equivalent resistance R_{eq} across the dc-bus capacitor. In our theoretical discussion, it is adequate to assume the diodes ideal.

In the following subsections, we will consider single-phase as well as three-phase diode rectifiers operating in steady state, where waveforms repeat from one line-frequency cycle $T_1(= 1/f_1)$ to the next.

5.4.1 Single-Phase Diode-Rectifier Bridge

At power levels below a few kW, for example in residential applications, power electronic systems are supplied by a single-phase utility source. A commonly used full-bridge

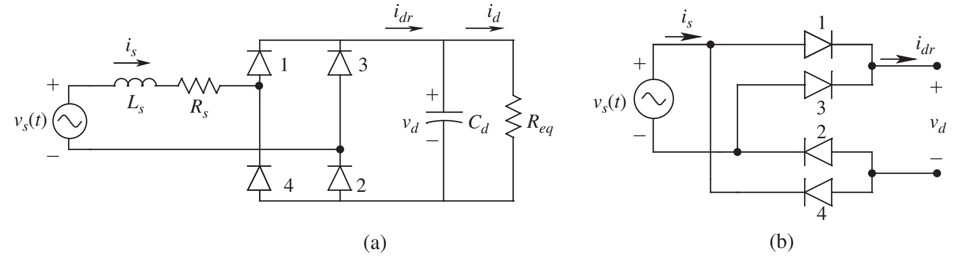


FIGURE 5.8 Full-bridge diode rectifier.

rectifier circuit is shown in Figure 5.8a, in which L_s is the sum of the inductance internal to the utility supply and an external inductance, which may be intentionally added in series. Losses on the ac side can be represented by the series resistance R_s.

To understand the circuit operation, the rectifier circuit can be drawn as in Figure 5.8b, where the ac-side inductance and resistance have been ignored. The circuit consists of a top group and a bottom group of diodes. If the dc-side current i_{dr} is to flow, one diode from each group must conduct to facilitate the flow of this current. In the top group, both diodes have their cathodes connected together. Therefore, the diode connected to the most positive voltage will conduct; the other will be reverse biased. In the bottom group, both diodes have their anodes connected together. Therefore, the diode connected to the most negative voltage will conduct; the other will be reverse biased.

As an example, a resistance R_d is connected across the terminals on the dc-side, as shown in Figure 5.9a. The circuit waveforms are shown Figure 5.9b. During the positive half-cycle of the input voltage v_s, diodes 1 and 2 conduct the dc-side current i_{dr}, equal to v_s/R_d, and the dc-side voltage is $v_d = v_s$. During the negative half-cycle of the input voltage v_s, diodes 3 and 4 conduct the dc-side current i_{dr}, equal to $|v_s|/R_d$, and the dc-side voltage is $v_d = |v_s|$.

The average value V_d of the voltage across the dc-side of the converter can be obtained by averaging the $v_d(t)$ waveform in Figure 5.9b over only one half-cycle (by symmetry):

$$V_d = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi} \hat{V}_s \sin\omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{2}{\pi}\hat{V}_s = 0.9V_s(\text{rms}) \tag{5.33}$$

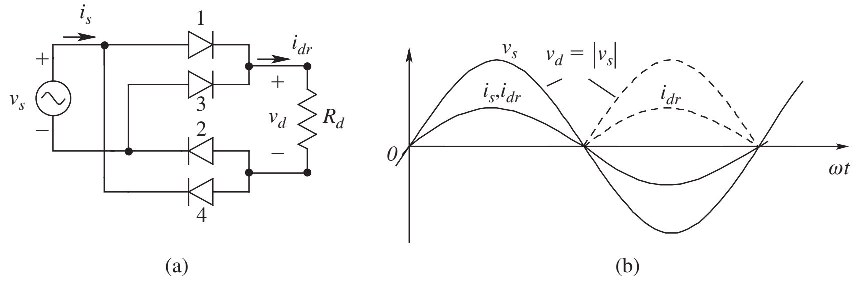
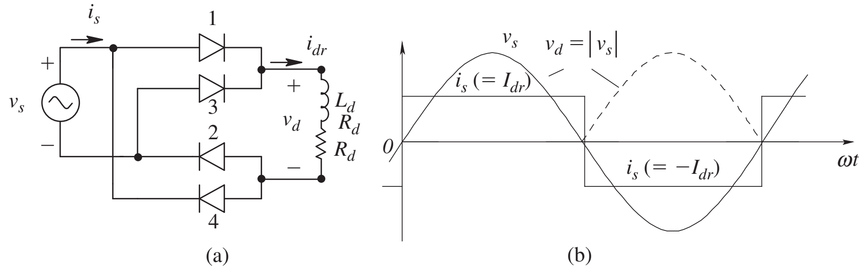


FIGURE 5.9 Full-bridge diode rectifier with resistive load.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 5.10 Full-bridge diode rectifier with an inductive load where $i_{dr}(t) \simeq I_{dr}(\text{dc})$.

and,

$$I_{dr} = \frac{V_d}{R_d} = \frac{0.9V_s(\text{rms})}{R_d} \tag{5.34}$$

As another example, consider the load on the dc-side to have a large inductance as shown in Figure 5.10a, such that the dc-side current is essentially dc. Assuming that $i_{dr}(t) \simeq I_{dr}$ to be purely dc, the waveforms are as shown in Figure 5.10b.

Note that the waveform of $v_d(t)$ in Figure 5.10b is identical to that in Figure 5.9b for a resistive load. Therefore, the average value V_d of the voltage across the dc-side of the converter in Figure 5.10a is the same as in Equation 5.33, that is $V_d = 0.9V_s(\text{rms})$. Similarly, the average value of the dc-side current is related to V_d by R_d, as $I_{dr} = V_d/R_d$.

5.4.1.1 DC-Bus Capacitor to Achieve a Low-Ripple in the DC-Side Voltage

Figures 5.9b and 5.10b show that the dc-side voltage has a large ripple. To eliminate this, in order to achieve a voltage waveform that is fairly dc, a large filter capacitor is connected on the dc-side, as shown in Figure 5.8a. As shown in Figure 5.11, at the beginning of the positive half-cycle of the input voltage v_s, the capacitor is already charged to a dc voltage v_d. So long as v_d exceeds the input voltage magnitude, all diodes remain reverse biased and the input current is zero. Power to the equivalent resistance R_{eq} is supplied by the energy stored in the capacitor up to t_1.

Beyond t_1, the input current $i_s(= i_{dr})$ increases, flowing through diodes D_1 and D_2. Beyond t_2, the input voltage becomes smaller than the capacitor voltage, and the input current begins to decline, falling to zero at t_3. Beyond t_3, until one half-cycle later than t_1, the input current remains zero, and the power to R_{eq} is supplied by the energy stored in the capacitor. At $(t_1 + T_1/2)$ during the negative half-cycle of the input voltage, the input current flows through diodes D_3 and D_4. The rectifier dc-side current i_{dr} continues to flow

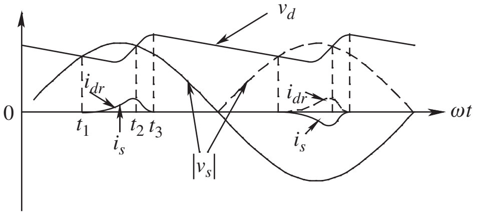


FIGURE 5.11 Waveforms for the full-bridge diode rectifier with a dc-bus capacitor.

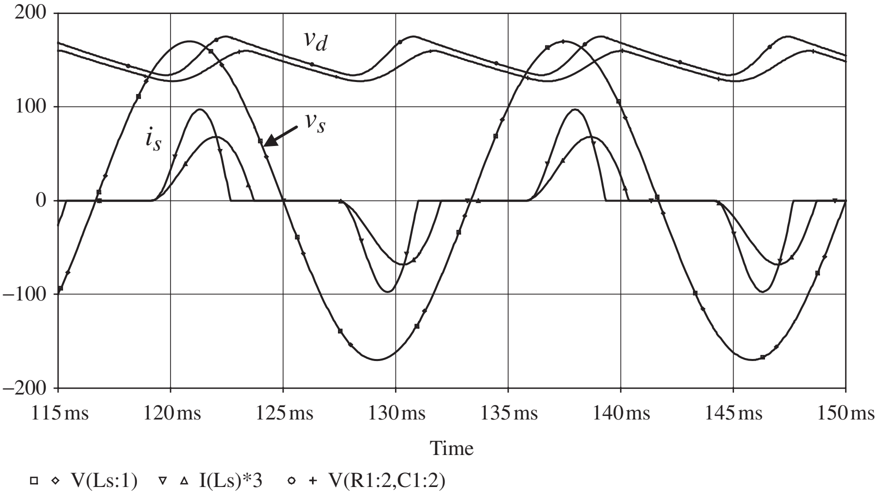


FIGURE 5.12 Single-phase diode-bridge rectification for two values of L_s.

in the same direction as during the positive half-cycle; however, the input current $i_s = -i_{dr}$, as shown in Figure 5.11. Figure 5.12 shows waveforms obtained by PSpice simulations for two values of the ac-side inductance, with current THD of 86% and 62%, respectively (higher inductance reduces THD, as discussed in the next section).

The fact that i_{dr} flows in the same direction during both the positive and the negative half-cycles represents the rectification process. In the circuit of Figure 5.8a in steady state, all waveforms repeat from one cycle to the next. Therefore, the average value of the capacitor current over a line-frequency cycle must be zero so that the dc-bus voltage is in steady state. As a consequence, the average current through the equivalent load-resistance R_{eq} equals the average of the rectifier dc-side current; that is, $I_d = I_{dr}$.

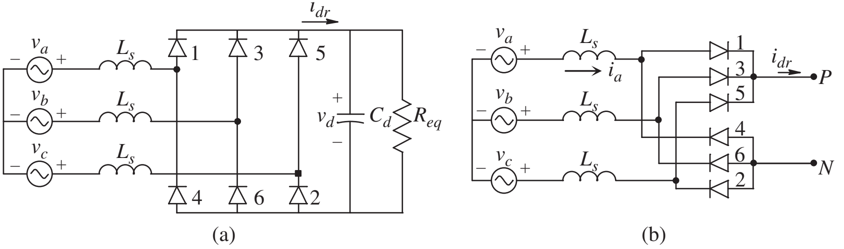
5.4.1.2 Effects of L_s and C_d on the Waveforms and the *THD*

As Figures 5.11 and 5.12 show, power is drawn from the utility supply by means of a pulse of current every half-cycle. The larger the "base" of this pulse during which the current flows, the lower its peak value and the Total Harmonic Distortion (THD). This pulse-widening can be accomplished by increasing the ac-side inductance L_s. Another parameter under the designer's control is the value of the dc-bus capacitor C_d. At its minimum, it should be able to carry the ripple current in i_{dr} and in i_d (which in practice is the input dc-side current, with a pulsating waveform, of a switch-mode converter), and keep the peak-to-peak ripple in the dc-bus voltage to some acceptable value, for example less than 5% of the dc-bus average value. Assuming that these constraints are met, lower the value of C_d, lower the *THD* and higher the ripple in the dc-bus voltage.

In practice, it is almost impossible to meet the harmonic limits specified by the IEEE-519 by using the above techniques. Rather, the power-factor-correction circuits described in the next chapter are needed to meet the harmonic specifications.

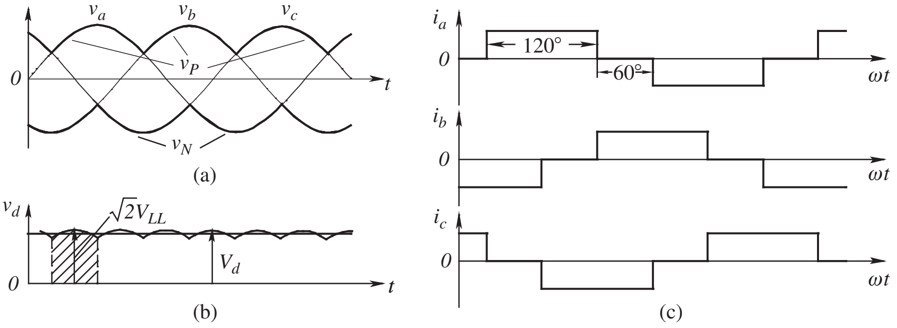
5.4.2 Three-Phase Diode-Rectifier Bridge

It is preferable to use a three-phase utility source, except at a fractional kilowatt, if such a supply is available. A commonly used Full-Bridge rectifier circuit is shown in Figure 5.13a.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 5.13 Three-phase diode bridge rectifier.



(a) (b) (c)

FIGURE 5.14 Waveforms in a three-phase rectifier (a constant i_{dr}).

To understand the circuit operation, the rectifier circuit can be drawn as in Figure 5.13b. The circuit consists of a top group and a bottom group of diodes. Initially, L_s is ignored, and the dc-side current is assumed to flow continuously. At least one diode from each group must conduct to facilitate the flow of i_{dr}. In the top group, all diodes have their cathodes connected together. Therefore, the diode connected to the most positive voltage will conduct; the other two will be reverse biased. In the bottom group, all diodes have their anodes connected together. Therefore, the diode connected to the most negative voltage will conduct; the other two will be reverse biased.

Ignoring L_s and assuming that the dc-side current i_{dr} is a pure dc, the waveforms are as shown in Figure 5.14. In Figure 5.14a, the waveforms (identified by the dark portions of the curves) show that each diode, based on the principle described above, conducts during 120°. The diodes are numbered so that they begin conducting sequentially: 1, 2, 3, and so on. The waveforms for the voltages v_P and v_N, with respect to the source-neutral, consist of 120°-segments of the phase voltages, as shown in Figure 5.14a. The waveform of the dc-side voltage $v_d (= v_P - v_N)$ is shown in Figure 5.14b. It consists of 60°-segments of the line-line voltages supplied by the utility. Line currents on the ac-side are as shown in Figure 5.14c. For example, phase-*a* current flows for 120° during each half-cycle of the phase-a input voltage; it flows through diode D_1 during the positive half-cycle of v_a, and through diode D_4 during the negative half-cycle.

The average value of the dc-side voltage can be obtained by considering only a 60°-segment in the 6-pulse (per line-frequency cycle) waveform shown in Figure 5.14b. Let us consider the instant of the peak in the 60°-segment to be the time-origin, with $\hat{V}_{LL}$ as the peak line-line voltage. The average value V_d can be obtained by calculating the integral from $\omega t = -\pi/6$ to $\omega t = \pi/6$ (the area shown by the hatched area in Figure 5.14b) and then dividing by the interval $\pi/3$:

$$V_d = \frac{1}{\pi/3} \int_{-\pi/6}^{\pi/6} \hat{V}_{LL} \cos \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{3}{\pi} \hat{V}_{LL} \tag{5.35}$$

This average value is plotted as a straight line in Figure 5.14b.

5.4.2.1 Effect of DC-Bus Capacitor

In the three-phase rectifier of Figure 5.13a with the dc-bus capacitor filter, the input current waveforms obtained by computer simulations are shown in Figure 5.15.

Figure 5.15a shows that the input current waveform within each half-cycle consists of two distinct pulses when L_s is small. For example, in the i_a waveform during the positive half-cycle, the first pulse corresponds to the flow of dc-side current through

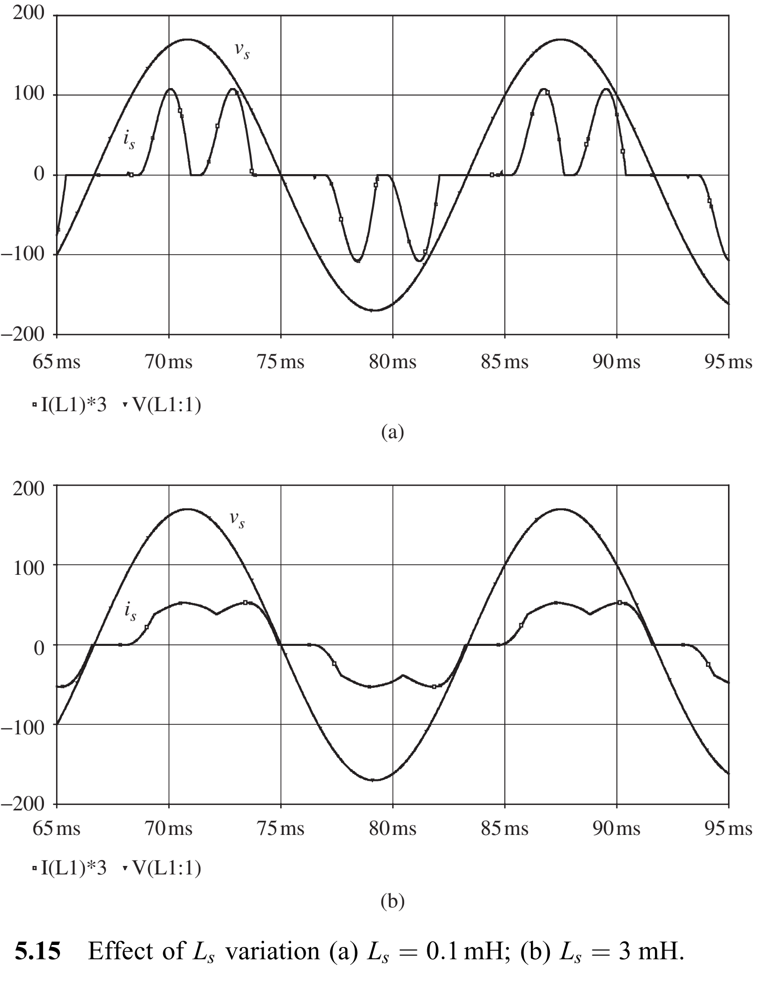


FIGURE 5.15 Effect of L_s variation (a) $L_s = 0.1$ mH; (b) $L_s = 3$ mH.

the diode pair (D_1, D_6) and then through the diode pair (D_1, D_2). At larger values of L_s, within each half-cycle, the input current between the two pulses does not go to zero, as shown in Figure 5.15b.

The effects of L_s and C_d on the waveforms can be determined by a parametric analysis, similar to the case of single-phase rectifiers. The *THD* in the current waveform of Figure 5.15b is much smaller than in Figure 5.15a (23% versus 82%). The ac-side inductance L_s is required to provide a line-frequency reactance $X_{L_s}(=2\pi f_1 L_s)$ that is typically greater than 2% of the base impedance Z_{base}, which is defined as follows:

$$\text{Base Impedance} \quad Z_{base} = 3\frac{V_s^2}{P} \tag{5.36}$$

where P is the three-phase power rating of the power electronic system, and V_s is the rms value of the phase voltage. Therefore, typically, the minimum ac-side inductance should be such that

$$X_{L_s} \geq (0.02 \times Z_{base}) \tag{5.37}$$

5.4.3 Comparison of Single-Phase and Three-Phase Rectifiers

Examination of single-phase and three-phase rectifier waveforms shows the differences in their characteristics. Three-phase rectification results in six identical “pulses” per cycle in the rectified dc-side voltage, whereas single-phase rectification results in two such pulses. Therefore, three-phase rectifiers are superior in terms of minimizing distortion in line currents and ripple across the dc-bus voltage. Consequently, as stated earlier, three-phase rectifiers should be used if a three-phase supply is available. However, three-phase rectifiers, just like single-phase rectifiers, are also unable to meet the harmonic limits specified by the IEEE-519 unless corrective actions such as those described in Chapter 12 are taken.

5.5 MEANS TO AVOID TRANSIENT INRUSH CURRENTS AT STARTING

In power electronic systems with rectifier front-ends, it may be necessary to take steps to avoid a large inrush of current at the instant the system is connected to the utility source. In such power electronic systems, the dc-bus capacitor is very large and initially has no voltage across it. Therefore, at the instant the switch in Figure 5.16a is closed to connect the power electronic system to the utility source, a large current flows through the diode-bridge rectifier, charging the dc-bus capacitor.

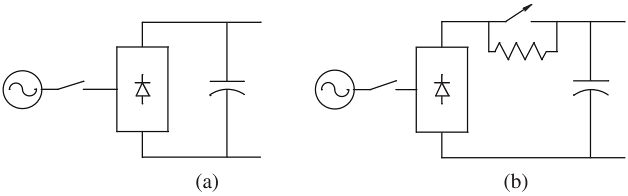

(a) (b)

FIGURE 5.16 Means to avoid inrush current.

This transient current inrush is highly undesirable; fortunately, several means of avoiding it are available. These include using a front-end that consists of thyristors discussed in Chapter 14 or using a series semiconductor switch as shown in Figure 5.16b. At the instant of starting, the resistance across the switch lets the dc-bus capacitor get charged without a large inrush current, and subsequently the semiconductor switch is turned on to bypass the resistance. There are other techniques that can also be employed.

5.6 FRONT-ENDS WITH BI-DIRECTIONAL POWER FLOW

In stop-and-go applications such as elevators, it is cost-effective to feed the energy recovered by regenerative braking of the motor drive back into the utility supply. Converter arrangements for such applications are considered in Chapter 12.

REFERENCE

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design*, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).

PROBLEMS

5.1. In a single-phase diode rectifier bridge, $I_s = 10\,\text{A(rms)}$, $I_{s1} = 8\,\text{A(rms)}$, and $DPF = 0.85$. Calculate $I_{distortion}$, $\%THD$, and PF.

5.2. In a single-phase diode bridge rectifier circuit, the following operating condition are given: $V_s = 120\,\text{V(rms)}$, $P = 0.95\,\text{kW}$, $I_{s1} = 10\,\text{A}$, and $THD = 75\,\%$. Calculate the following: DPF, $I_{distortion}$, I_s, and PF.

5.3. In a single-phase rectifier the input current can be approximated to have a triangular waveform every half cycle with a peak of 10 A and a base of 60°. Calculate the rms current through each diode.

5.4. In the above problem, calculate the ripple component in the dc-side current that will flow through the dc-side capacitor.

5.5. In a three-phase rectifier, if the input currents are of rectangular waveforms, as shown in Fig 5.14c, with an amplitude of 12 A, calculate I_s, I_{s1}, $I_{distortion}$, $\%THD$ and the power factor. Assume that $DPF = 1.0$, as associated with the current waveforms in Figure 5.14c.

5.6. In the above problem, calculate the three-phase power through the rectifier bridge if $V_{LL}(\text{rms}) = 208\,\text{V}$.

Simulation Problems

5.7. In the single-phase rectifier in Figure 5.8a, $L_s = 1\,\text{mH}$, $R_s = 0.25\,\Omega$, $C_d = 1{,}000\,\mu\text{F}$ and $R_{eq} = 20.0\,\Omega$.

(a) Obtain the %THD in the input current for the three values of the input inductance 1 mH, 3 mH, and 5 mH. Comment on the input current waveform as a function of the ac-side inductance in part (a).

(b) Measure the average and the peak-to-peak ripple in the output voltage for the three values of the input-side inductance in part (a), and comment on the output voltage waveform as a function of the ac-side inductance.

(c) Keeping the input inductance value as 1 mH, change the dc-side capacitance values to be $220\,\mu$F, $470\,\mu$F and $1,000\,\mu$F. Measure the peak-to-peak ripple in the output capacitor voltage for these three values of the output capacitance.

5.8. In the three-phase rectifier in Figure 5.13a, $L_s = 0.1\,\text{mH}$, $C_d = 500\,\mu\text{F}$ and $R_{eq} = 16.5\ \Omega$.

(a) Obtain the %THD in the input current for the three values of the input inductance of 0.1 mH, 0.5 mH and 1.0 mH.

(b) Comment on the input current waveform as a function of the ac-side inductance for values.

(c) Comment on the output voltage waveform as a function of the ac-side inductance. Measure the average and the peak-to-peak ripple in the output voltage for the three values of the input-side inductance.

(d) Measure the peak-to-peak ripple in the output capacitor current for the three values of the input-side inductance. What is fundamental frequency of this current?

6

POWER-FACTOR-CORRECTION (PFC) CIRCUITS AND DESIGNING THE FEEDBACK CONTROLLER

In diode rectifiers discussed in Chapter 5, power is drawn by means of highly distorted currents, which have a deleterious effect on the power quality of the utility source. In single-phase diode-rectifier systems, a corrective action such as that described in this chapter is often taken. This discussion is also useful in the learning process since it shows a real-world application of dc-dc converters discussed in Chapter 3 and their control in Chapter 4.

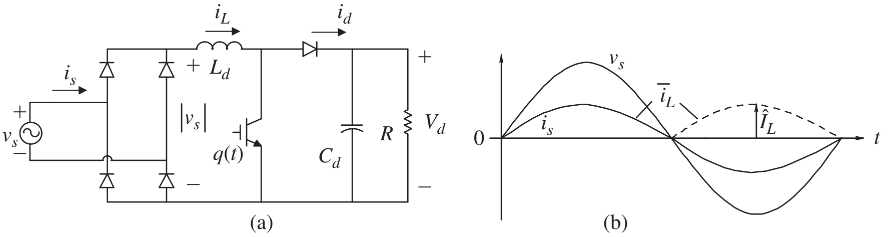
6.1 INTRODUCTION

Technical solutions to the problem of distortion in the input current have been known for a long time. However, only recently has the concern about the deleterious effects of harmonics led to the formulation of guidelines and standards, which in turn have focused attention on ways of limiting current distortion.

In the following sections, power-factor-corrected (PFC) interface, as they are often called, are briefly examined for single-phase rectification, where it is assumed that the power needs to flow only in one direction, such as in dc power supplies. The three-phase front-ends in motor-drives applications may require bi-directional power flow capability. Such front-ends, which also allow unity power factor of operation, are discussed in Chapter 12.

6.2 OPERATING PRINCIPLE OF SINGLE-PHASE PFCs

The operating principle of a commonly used single-phase PFC is shown in Figure 6.1a where, between the utility supply and the dc-bus capacitor, a Boost dc-dc converter is introduced. This Boost converter consists of a MOSFET, a diode, and a small inductor L_d. By pulse-width-modulating the MOSFET at a constant switching frequency, the current



(a) (b)

FIGURE 6.1 PFC circuit and waveforms.

i_L through the inductor L_d is shaped to have the full-wave-rectified waveform $\bar{i}_L(t) = \hat{I}_L|\sin \omega t|$, similar to $|v_s(t)|$, as shown in Figure 6.1b.

The inductor current contains high switching-frequency ripple, which is removed by a small filter.

The input current i_s in the circuit of Figure 6.1a becomes sinusoidal and in phase with the supply voltage. In the Boost converter, it is essential that the dc-bus voltage V_d be greater than the peak of the supply voltage $\hat{V}_s$:

$$V_d > \hat{V}_s \tag{6.1}$$

Figure 6.2a shows the average model of the Boost converter in the continuous-conduction mode (CCM) with $i_L > 0$ at all times. Neglecting a small voltage drop across the inductor and assuming the voltage across the capacitor to be a pure dc, in a Boost converter, the voltage transfer ratio is

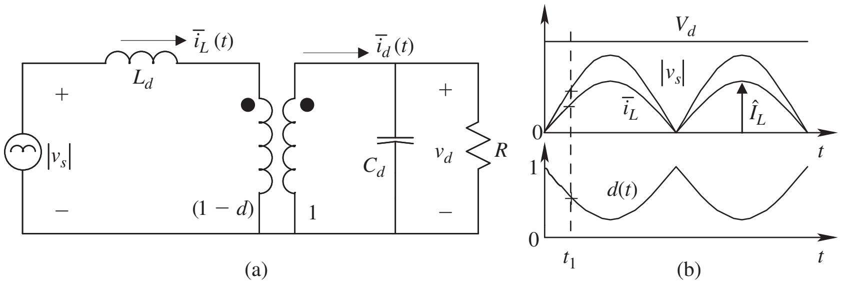
$$\frac{V_d}{|v_s|} = \frac{1}{1 - d(t)} \tag{6.2}$$

thus,

$$1 - d(t) = \frac{\hat{V}_s \, |\sin \omega t|}{V_d} \tag{6.3a}$$

and,

$$d(t) = 1 - \frac{\hat{V}_s \, |\sin \omega t|}{V_d} \tag{6.3b}$$



(a) (b)

FIGURE 6.2 Average model in CCM ($i_L(t) > 0$) and waveforms.

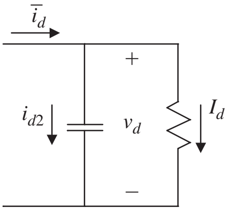


FIGURE 6.3 Current division in the output stage.

Equation 6.3a shows that $1 - d(t)$ of the switch varies sinusoidally during each half-cycle of the fundamental frequency, independent of the value of the inductor current provided it is greater than zero. The switch duty-ratio from Equation 6.3b is plotted in Figure 6.2b.

The inductor current is shaped to be $\bar{i}_L(t) = \hat{I}_L|\sin \omega t|$. Therefore, the current $\bar{i}_d(t)$ can be calculated from the turns-ratio of the ideal transformer in Figure 6.2a as,

$$\bar{i}_d(t) = (1 - d)\bar{i}_L(t) = (1 - d)\hat{I}_L|\sin \omega t| \tag{6.4a}$$

Substituting for $(1 - d)$ from Equation 6.3a in Equation 6.4a,

$$\bar{i}_d(t) = \frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\hat{I}_L|\sin \omega t|^2 \tag{6.4b}$$

Recognizing that in Equation 6.4b, $|\sin \omega t|^2 = \sin^2 \omega t = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos 2\omega t$:

$$\bar{i}_d(t) = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\hat{I}_L}_{I_d} \underbrace{- \frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\hat{I}_L \cos 2\omega t}_{i_{d2}(t)} \tag{6.5}$$

Equation 6.5 shows that the average current to the output stage consists of a dc component I_d and a component $i_{d2}(t)$ at the second-harmonic frequency.

Example 6.1

Derive $\bar{i}_d(t)$ in Equation 6.5 by equating input and output powers.

Solution Assume that $v_s = \hat{V}_s \sin \omega t$ and $i_s = \hat{I}_s \sin \omega t$. Therefore, the input power $P_{in}(t) = v_s i_s = \hat{V}_s\hat{I}_s \sin^2 \omega t$. Recognizing that $\sin^2\omega t = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos 2\omega t$, the input power is $P_{in}(t) = \hat{V}_s\hat{I}_s \sin^2 \omega t = \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s\hat{I}_s - \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s\hat{I}_s \cos 2\omega t$. The output power $p_o(t) = V_d\bar{i}_d$. Equating $p_{in}(t) = p_o(t)$, and recognizing that $\hat{I}_s = \hat{I}_L$

$$\bar{i}_d(t) = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s\hat{I}_L}{V_d}}_{I_d} \underbrace{- \frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\hat{I}_L \cos 2\omega t}_{i_{d2}(t)} \tag{6.6}$$

which is the same as Equation 6.5.

The output stage of the PFC is shown in Figure 6.3, where the dc component I_d of $\bar{i}_d$ flows through the load equivalent resistor. In PFCs, the capacitor in the output stage is quite large, such that it is justifiable to approximate that the second-harmonic frequency component $i_{d2}(t)$ flows entirely through the output capacitor, and none through the load equivalent resistor. The peak value of $i_{d2}(t)$ is

$$\hat{I}_{d2} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\hat{I}_L \tag{6.7}$$

Based on the assumption that $i_{d2}(t)$ flows entirely through the output capacitor, the peak value of the second-harmonic frequency ripple in the output voltage can be calculated as follows, where the reactance of the capacitor at twice the line frequency is $1/(2\omega C)$:

$$\hat{V}_{d2} \simeq \left(\frac{1}{2\omega C}\right)\hat{I}_{d2} = \frac{\hat{I}_L}{4\omega C}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d} \tag{6.8}$$

$\hat{V}_{d2}$ depends inversely on the output capacitance C and therefore an appropriate value of C must be chosen to minimize this ripple.

Example 6.2
Calculate $\hat{V}_{d2}$ at full-load and the nominal input voltage, for the parameters and operating values of a PFC given in Table 6.1 later on. Ignore the capacitor ESR.

Solution Assuming the PFC to be lossless, $V_s I_s = P_o$. Therefore, using the values given in Table 6.1, $\hat{I}_L = \hat{I}_s = \sqrt{2}\frac{P_o}{V_s} = 2.946\,\text{A}$. $\hat{V}_s = \sqrt{2} \times 120 = 169.7\,\text{V}$. Therefore, From Equation 6.8, the peak value of the second-harmonic frequency voltage is,

$$\hat{V}_{d2} = \frac{\hat{I}_L}{4\omega C}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d} \simeq 6\,\text{V}.$$

6.3 CONTROL OF PFCs

Figure 6.4 shows the PFC power circuit along with its control circuit in a block-diagram form. In controlling a PFC, the main objective is to draw a sinusoidal current, in-phase with the utility voltage. The reference inductor current $i_L^*(t)$ is of the full-wave rectified form, similar to that in Figure 6.1b. The requirements on the form and the amplitude of the inductor current lead to two control loops, as shown in Figure 6.4, to pulse-width modulate the switch of the Boost converter:

- The average inner current control loop ensures the form of $i_L^*(t)$ based on the template $\sin|\omega t|$ provided by measuring the rectifier output voltage $|v_s(t)|$.
- The outer voltage control loop determines the amplitude $\hat{I}_L$ of $i_L^*(t)$ based on the output voltage feedback. If the inductor current is insufficient for a given load supplied by the PFC, the output voltage will drop below its preselected reference value V_d^*. By measuring the output voltage and using it as the feedback signal, the voltage control

loop adjusts the inductor current amplitude to bring the output voltage to its reference value. In addition to determining the inductor current amplitude, this voltage feedback control acts to regulate the output voltage of the PFC to the pre-selected dc voltage.

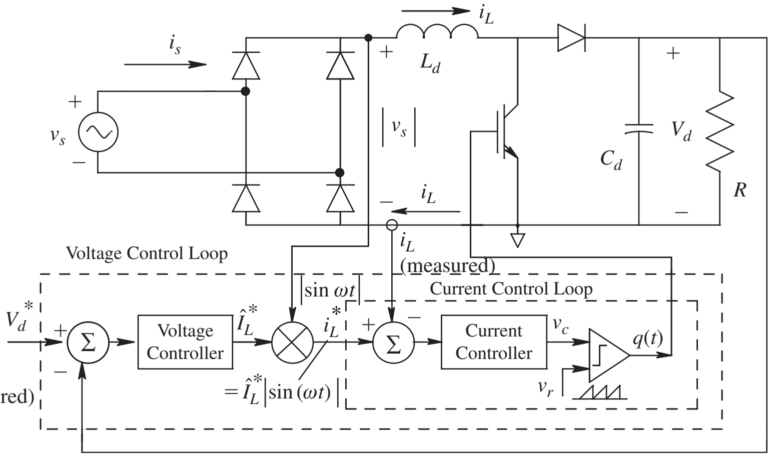


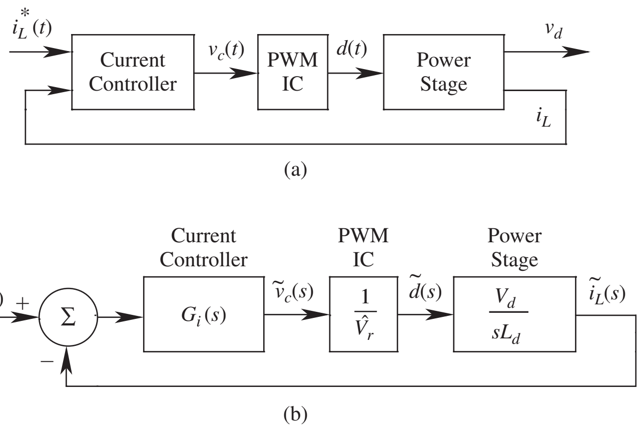
FIGURE 6.4 PFC control loops.

In Figure 6.4, the inner current-control loop is required to have a very high bandwidth compared to the outer voltage-control loop. Hence, each loop can be designed separately, similar to the approach taken in the peak-current-mode control discussed Chapter 4.

6.4 DESIGNING THE INNER AVERAGE-CURRENT-CONTROL LOOP

The inner current control loop is shown within the inner dotted box in Figure 6.4. In order to follow the reference with as little THD as possible, an average-current-mode control is used with a high bandwidth, where the error between the reference $i_L^*(t)$ and the measured inductor current $i_L(t)$ is amplified by a current controller to produce the control voltage $v_c(t)$. This control voltage is compared with a ramp signal $v_r(t)$, with a peak of $\hat{V}_r$ at the switching-frequency f_s in the PWM controller IC [1], to produce the switching signal $q(t)$.

Just the inner current control loop of Figure 6.4 can be simplified, as shown in Figure 6.5a. The reference input $i_L^*(t)$ varies with time as shown in Figure 6.2b, where the corresponding $|v_s(t)|$ and $d(t)$ waveforms are also plotted. However, these quantities vary much more slowly compared to the current control-loop bandwidth, approximately 10 kHz in the numerical example considered later on. Therefore, at each instant of time, for example at t_1 in Figure 6.2b, the circuit of Figure 6.2a can be considered in a "dc" steady state with the associated variables having values of $i_L(t_1)$, $|v_s(t_1)|$ and $d(t_1)$. This equilibrium condition varies slowly with time, compared to the current-control-loop bandwidth, which is designed to be much larger. In Laplace domain, this current loop is shown in Figure 6.5b, as discussed below, where "~" on top represents small signal perturbations at very high frequencies in the range of the current-control-loop bandwidth, for example 10 kHz.



(a)

(b)

FIGURE 6.5 PFC current loop.

6.4.1 $\tilde{d}(s)/\tilde{v}_c(s)$ for the PWM Controller

If $\hat{V}_r$ is the difference between the peak and the valley of the ramp voltage in the PWM-IC, then the small-signal transfer function of the PWM controller, as discussed in Chapter 4 is,

$$\text{PWM Controller Transfer Function } \frac{\tilde{d}(s)}{\tilde{v}_c(s)} = \frac{1}{\hat{V}_r} \tag{6.9}$$

6.4.2 $\tilde{i}_L(s)/\tilde{d}(s)$ for the Boost Converter in the Power Stage

In spite of the varying dc steady state operating point, the transfer function in the Boost converter simplifies as follows at high frequencies at which the current-control-loop bandwidth is designed:

$$\frac{\tilde{i}_L(s)}{\tilde{d}(s)} \simeq \frac{V_d}{sL_d} \tag{6.10}$$

This can be observed from the small-signal circuit for the Boost converters in Figure 4.7b of Chapter 4, where at high frequencies, the capacitor acts as a short-circuit, resulting in the above transfer function (ignoring capacitor ESR, and noting that V_o in Chapter 4 is V_d in this chapter). This conclusion can be confirmed by PSpice simulations that show that in the Boost converter of a PFC, all the curves, corresponding to various input voltages and the associated duty-ratios, merge at high frequencies to yield results similar to that of the transfer function in Equation 6.10.

6.4.3 Designing the Current Controller $G_i(s)$

The transfer function in Equation 6.10 is an approximation valid at high frequencies, and not a pure integrator. Therefore, to have a high loop dc gain and a zero dc steady state error in Figure 6.5b, the current controller transfer function $G_i(s)$ must have a pole at the origin. In the loop in Figure 6.5b, the phase due to the pole at origin in $G_i(s)$ and that of the power-stage transfer function (Equation 6.10) add up to −180°. Hence, $G_i(s)$, as in the peak-current mode control discussed in Chapter 4, includes a pole-zero pair that provides a phase boost, and hence the specified phase margin, for example 60° at the loop crossover frequency:

$$G_i(s) = \frac{k_c}{s}\frac{1 + s/\omega_z}{1 + s/\omega_p} \tag{6.11}$$

where, k_c is the controller gain. Knowing the phase boost, ϕ_{boost}, we can calculate the pole-zero locations to provide the necessary phase boost, as discussed in Chapter 4:

$$K_{boost} = \tan\left(45^\circ + \frac{\phi_{boost}}{2}\right) \tag{6.12}$$

$$f_z = \frac{f_{ci}}{K_{boost}} \tag{6.13}$$

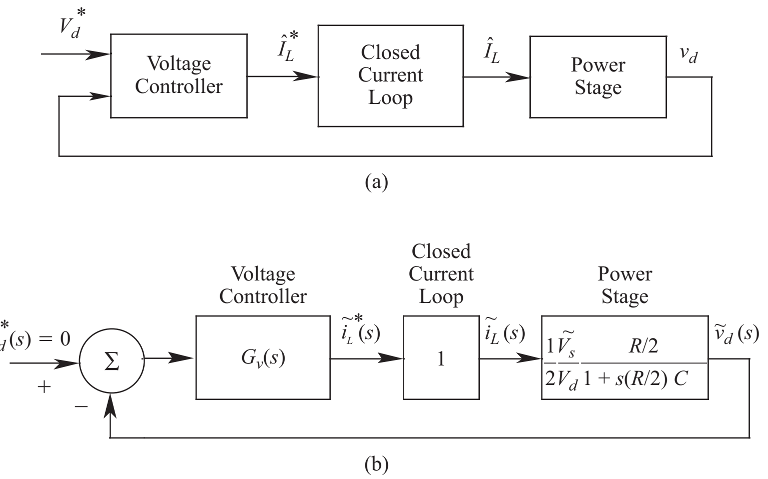
$$f_p = K_{boost} f_{ci} \tag{6.14}$$

where f_{ci} is the crossover frequency of the current loop transfer function.

6.5 DESIGNING THE OUTER VOLTAGE-CONTROL LOOP

As mentioned earlier, the outer voltage-control loop is needed to determine the peak, $\hat{I}_L$, of the inductor current. In this voltage loop, the bandwidth is limited to approximately 15 Hz. The reason has to do with the fact that the output voltage across the capacitor contains a component v_{d2} as derived in Equation 6.8 at twice the line-frequency (at 120 Hz in 60-Hz line-frequency systems). This output voltage ripple must not be corrected by the voltage loop; otherwise it will lead to a third-harmonic distortion in the input current, as explained in Appendix 6A at the end of this chapter.

In view of such a low bandwidth of the voltage-control loop (approximately three orders of magnitude below the current-loop bandwidth of ~10 kHz), it is perfectly


V_d^*
Voltage Controller
$\hat{I}_L^*$
Closed Current Loop
$\hat{I}_L$
Power Stage
v_d
$\tilde{v}_d^*(s) = 0$
Σ
+
−
Voltage Controller
$G_v(s)$
$\tilde{i}_L^*(s)$
Closed Current Loop
1
$\tilde{i}_L(s)$
Power Stage
$\frac{1}{2}\frac{\tilde{V}_s}{V_d}\frac{R/2}{1 + s(R/2)C}$
$\tilde{v}_d(s)$

(a)

(b)

FIGURE 6.6 Voltage control loop.

reasonable to assume the current loop to be ideal at low frequencies around 15 Hz. Therefore, in the voltage-control block diagram shown in Figure 6.6a, the current closed-loop produces $\hat{I}_L$ equal to its reference value $\hat{I}_L^*$. In addition to a large dc component, $\hat{I}_L^*$ contains an unwanted second-harmonic frequency component $\hat{I}_{L2}$ due to v_{d2} in the input to the voltage controller. $\hat{I}_{L2}$ at the second-harmonic frequency results in a third-harmonic frequency distortion in the current drawn from the utility, as explained in Appendix 6A. Therefore, in the output of the voltage controller block in Figure 6.6a, $\hat{I}_{L2}$ is limited to approximately 1.5% of the dc component in $\hat{I}_L^*$.

The voltage control loop for low-frequency perturbations, in the range of the voltage-loop bandwidth of approximately 15 Hz, is shown in Figure 6.6b. As derived in Appendix 6B, the transfer function of the power stage in Figure 6.6b at these low perturbation frequencies (ignoring the capacitor ESR) is:

$$\frac{\tilde{v}_d(s)}{\tilde{i}_L(s)} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\frac{R/2}{1+s(R/2)C} \tag{6.15}$$

To achieve a zero steady state error, the voltage-controller transfer function should have a pole at the origin. However, since the PFC circuit is often a pre-regulator (not a strict regulator), this requirement is waived, which otherwise would make the voltage controller design much more complicated. The following simple transfer function is often used for the voltage controller in Figure 6.6b, where a pole is placed at the voltage-loop crossover frequency ω_{cv} (yet to be determined) below 15 Hz,

$$G_v(s) = \frac{k_v}{1+s/\omega_{cv}} \tag{6.16}$$

At full-load, the power stage transfer function given by Equation 6.15 has a pole at a very low frequency, for example of the order of one or two Hz, which introduces a phase lag approaching 90° much beyond the frequency at which this pole occurs. The transfer function of the controller given by Equation 6.16 introduces a lag of 45° at the loop crossover frequency. Therefore, these two phase lags of ~135° at the crossover frequency result in a satisfactory phase margin of 45°. Using Equations 6.15 and 6.16, by definition, at the crossover frequency f_{cv}, the loop transfer function in Figure 6.6b has a magnitude equal to unity,

$$\left|\frac{k_v}{1+s/\omega_{cv}}\frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\frac{R/2}{1+s(R/2)C}\right|_{s=j(2\pi\times f_{cv})} = 1 \tag{6.17}$$

In the voltage controller of Figure 6.6b and Equation 6.16, the input $\hat{V}_{d2}$ results in an output $\hat{I}_{L2}$. Therefore, at the second-harmonic frequency in the voltage controller of Equation 6.16,

$$\left|\frac{k_v}{1+s/\omega_{cv}}\right|_{s=j(2\pi\times 120)} = \frac{\hat{I}_{L2}}{\hat{V}_{d2}} \tag{6.18}$$

TABLE 6.1 Parameters and Operating Values

Nominal input ac source voltage, $V_{s,\mathrm{rms}}$	120 V
Line frequency, f	60 Hz
Output Voltage, V_d	250 V (dc)
Maximum Power Output	250 W
Switching Frequency, f_s	100 kHz
Output Filter capacitor, C	220 μF
ESR of the Capacitor, r	100 mΩ
Inductor, L_d	1 mH
Full-Load Equivalent Resistance, R	250 Ω

From Equations 6.17 and 6.18, the two unknowns k_v and ω_{cv} in the voltage controller transfer function of Equation 6.16 can be calculated, as described by a numerical example.

6.6 EXAMPLE OF SINGLE-PHASE PFC SYSTEMS

The operation and control of a PFC is demonstrated by means of an example, where the parameters are as follows in Table 6.1, and the total harmonic distortion in the input line current is required to be less than 3% [1, 2]:

6.6.1 Design of the Current-Control Loop

In Equation 6.9, assume that $\hat{V}_r = 1$. Following the procedure described in Chapter 4 for the peak-current-mode control of dc-dc converters, for the loop crossover frequency of 10 kHz($\omega_{ci} = 2\pi \times 10^4$ rad/s) and the phase margin of 60°, the parameters in the current controller of Equation 6.11 are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} k_c &= 4212 \\ \omega_z &= 1.68 \times 10^4 \text{ rad/s} \\ \omega_p &= 2.35 \times 10^5 \text{ rad/s} \end{aligned} \tag{6.19}$$

Based on these parameter values given in Equation 6.19 of the transfer function $G_i(s)$ in Equation 6.11, the op-amp circuit is similar to Figure 4.19 in Chapter 4 with the following values for a chosen value of $R_1 = 100\ \mathrm{k}\Omega$:

$$\begin{aligned} C_2 &\simeq 0.17\,\mathrm{nF} \\ C_1 &\simeq 2.2\,\mathrm{nF} \\ R_2 &\simeq 27\,\mathrm{k}\Omega \end{aligned} \tag{6.20}$$

6.6.2 Design of the Voltage-Control Loop

In this example at full-load, the plant transfer function given by Equation 6.15 has a pole at the frequency of 36.36 rad/s (5.79 Hz). At full-load, $\hat{I}_L = 2.946$ A, and in Equation 6.8,

$\hat{V}_{d2} = 6.029\,\text{V}$. Based on the previous discussion, the second-harmonic component is limited to 1.5% of $\hat{I}_L$, such that $\hat{I}_{L2} = 0.0442\,\text{A}$. Using these values, from Equation 6.17 and 6.18, the parameters in the voltage controller transfer function of Equation 6.16 are calculated: $k_v = 0.0754$, and $\omega_{cv} = 73.7\,\text{rad/s}$ (11.73 Hz). This transfer function is realized by an op-amp circuit shown in Figure 6.7, where

$$\begin{aligned} R_1 &= 100\,\text{k}\Omega \\ R_2 &= 7.54\,\text{k}\Omega \qquad (6.21) \\ C_1 &= 1.8\,\mu\text{F} \end{aligned}$$

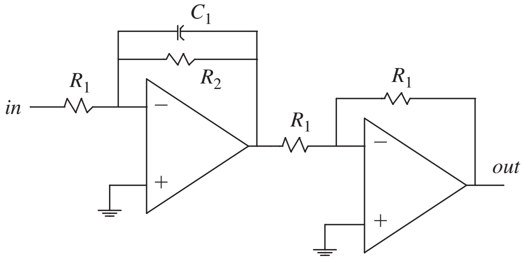


FIGURE 6.7 Op-amp circuit to implement transfer function $G_v(s)$.

6.7 SIMULATION RESULTS

The PSpice-based simulation of the *PFC* system is shown in Figure 6.8, where the input voltage and the full-bridge rectifier are combined for simplification purposes. The output load is decreased as a step at 100 ms. The resulting waveforms for the voltage and the inductor current are shown in Figure 6.9.

6.8 FEEDFORWARD OF THE INPUT VOLTAGE

The input voltage is fed forward as shown in Figure 6.10. In a system with a PFC interface, the output is nearly constant, independent of the changes in the rms value of the input voltage from the utility. Therefore, an increase in the utility voltage $\hat{V}_s$ causes a decrease in $\hat{I}_L$, and vice versa. To avoid propagating the input voltage disturbance though the *PFC* feedback loops, the input voltage peak is fed forward, as shown in Figure 6.10, in determining $\hat{I}_L^*$.

6.9 OTHER CONTROL METHODS FOR PFCs

In this book, an average-current-control method is described for controlling PFCs. There are other methods such as a single-cycle control. The reader is referred to References 4 and 5 for further exploration.

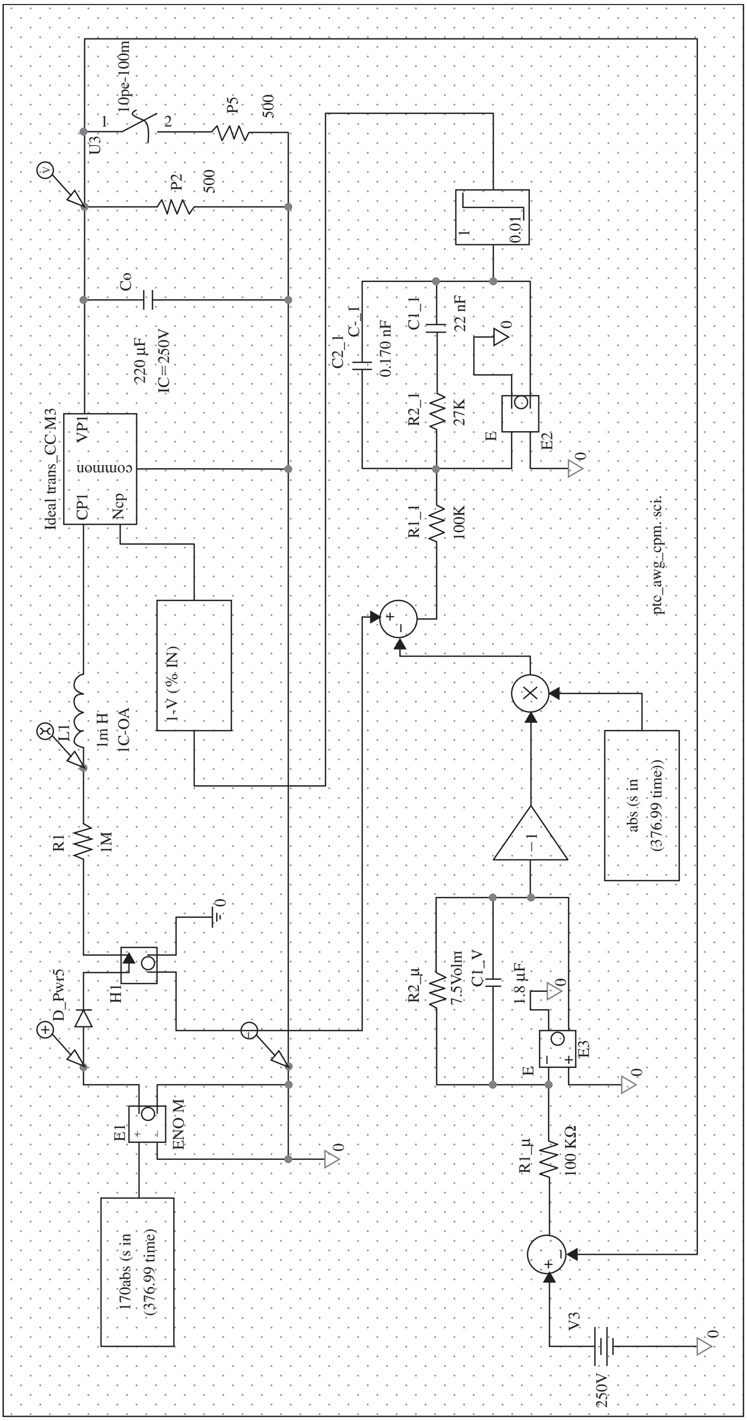

Ideal trans_CC M3
CP1
Ncp
common
VP1
Co
220 µF
IC=250V
P2
500
U3
1
2
10pe-100m
P5
500
V
L1
1m H
IC-0A
R1
1M
D_Pwr5
H1
0
E1
ENO M
170abs (s in (376.99 time)
1-V (% IN)
C2_1
C_1
0.170 nF
C1_1
22 nF
R2_1
27K
R1_1
100K
E
E2
0
1
0.01
pte_awg_cpm. sci.
abs (s in (376.99 time))
−1
R2_µ
7.5Volm
C1_V
1.8 µF
E3
R1_µ
100 KΩ
V3
250V

FIGURE 6.8 PSpice simulation diagram (the load is decreased at 100 ms); for a better resolution, execute the PSpice Schematic on the accompanying website.

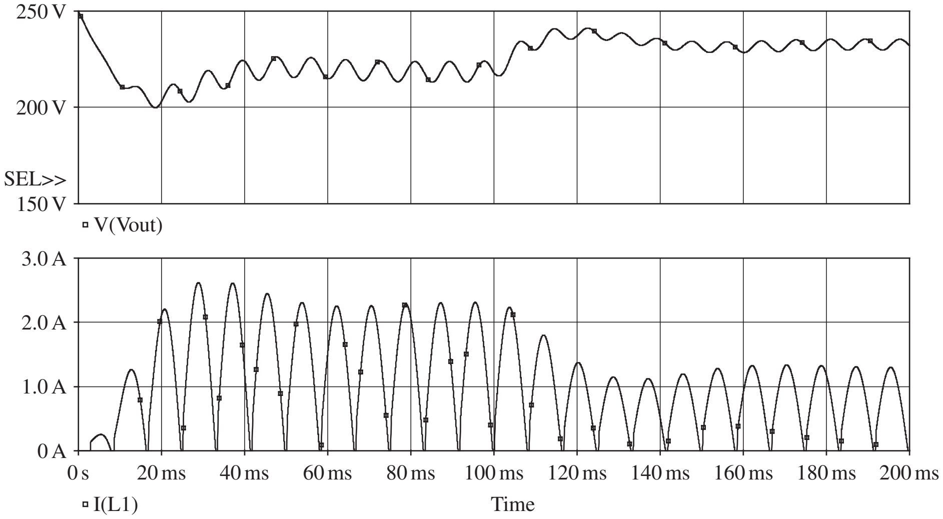


FIGURE 6.9 Simulation results: output voltage and inductor current.

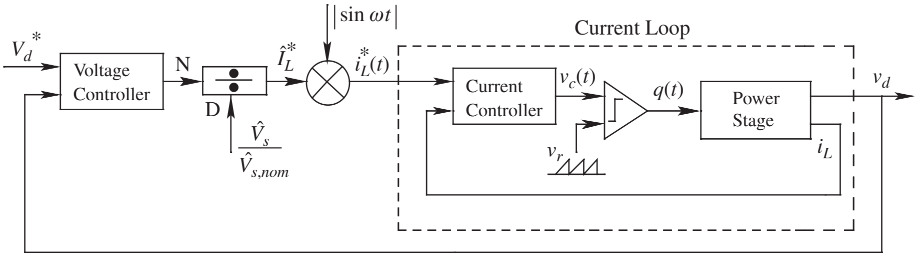

|sin ωt|
Current Loop
V_d^*
Voltage Controller
N
D
$\hat{I}_L^*$
$i_L^*(t)$
$\hat{V}_s$
$\hat{V}_{s,nom}$
Current Controller
$v_c(t)$
$q(t)$
Power Stage
v_d
v_r
i_L

FIGURE 6.10 Feedforward of the input voltage.

REFERENCES

1. "UC3854 Controlled Power Factor Correction Circuit Design," Philip C. Todd, Unitrode Application Note U-134.
2. "High power Factor Switching Pre-Regulator Design Optimization," Lyod Dixon, Unitrode Design Application Manual.
3. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).
4. "PFC Controller ICs Continue to Advance," Mark Valentine, Power Electronics Technology, September 2006, www.powerelectronics.com.
5. R. Gupta, H. Krishnaswami, N. Mohan, "A Unified Analysis of CCM Boost PFC for Various Current Control Strategies," PEDES, New Delhi, India, 2006.

PROBLEMS

6.1. In a single phase, 60-Hz power factor correction circuit, $V_s = 120\,\text{V(rms)}$, $V_d = 250\,\text{V}$, and the output power is 300 W. Calculate and draw the following waveforms, synchronized to v_s waveform: $\bar{i}_L(t)$, $d(t)$, and the average current $\bar{i}_d$ through the output diode.

6.2. In the numerical example given in this chapter, calculate the rms input current if the utility voltage is 110 V(rms), and compare it with its nominal value when $V_s = 120$ V(rms).

6.3. In problem 6.1, calculate the second-harmonic peak voltage in the capacitor if $C = 690\ \mu$F.

6.4. In the numerical example given in this chapter, calculate the maximum peak-peak ripple current in the inductor.

6.5. Repeat the design of the current loop in the given numerical example in this chapter, if the loop crossover frequency is 25 kHz.

6.6. Repeat the design of the outer voltage loop in the numerical example given in this chapter, if the output capacitance $C = 690\ \mu$F.

Simulation Problem

6.7. In the simulation diagram of Figure 6.8:
   (a) Observe the input voltage to the boost converter (output of the diode-rectifier bridge, not modeled here), the inductor current and the voltage across the load.
   (b) List the harmonic components of the inductor current i_L and the capacitor current i_C.
   (c) Confirm the validity of Equation 6.5 for the current into the output stage of the PFC.

APPENDIX 6A Proving that $\frac{\hat{I}_{s3}}{\hat{I}_{L2}} = \frac{1}{2}$

The output of the voltage regulator G_v in Figure 6.6b in steady state is

$$\text{output of } G_v = \hat{I}_L - \hat{I}_{L,2} \cos 2\omega t \tag{6A.1}$$

in which $\hat{I}_{L2}$, by a proper controller design is much smaller than $\hat{I}_L$, for example less than 1.5%. The above expression is multiplied by $|\sin \omega t|$ to establish the reference for the inductor current. The second-harmonic distortion in Equation 6A.1 results in a third-harmonic distortion in the input ac current. This can be proven by multiplying the second-harmonic component in Equation 6A.1 with sin ωt, in order to see the distortion in the input ac current, as follows:

$$(-\hat{I}_{L2} \cos 2\omega t)\sin \omega t = \frac{1}{2}\hat{I}_{L2} \sin \omega t - \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\hat{I}_{L2}}_{\hat{I}_{s3}} \sin 3\omega t \tag{6A.2}$$

In Equation 6A.2, the fundamental-frequency component, due to the second-harmonic distortion, is compensated by the voltage-loop controller. However, the second-harmonic distortion with a peak $\hat{I}_{L2}$ results in a third-harmonic frequency distortion with one-half the amplitude. Therefore,

$$\frac{\hat{I}_{s3}}{\hat{I}_{L2}} = \frac{1}{2} \tag{6A.3}$$

APPENDIX 6B Proving that $\frac{\tilde{v}_d}{\tilde{i}_L}(s)=\frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\frac{R/2}{1+s(R/2)C}$

In designing the controller, the output of $G_v(s)$ in Figure 6.6b under dynamic conditions has a strong dc component, a second harmonic frequency component i_{L2}, and a low-frequency (less than 15 Hz) perturbation term:

$$\text{Output of the voltage regulator} = \hat{I}_L + i_{L2} + \tilde{i}_L \tag{6B.1}$$

Multiplying the reference current peak in Equation 6B.1 with $|\sin\omega t|$, the inductor current is,

$$\bar{i}_L(t) = (\hat{I}_L + i_{L2} + \tilde{i}_L)|\sin\omega t| \tag{6B.2}$$

In the circuit of Figure 6.2, assuming that the voltage drop across L_d is negligible,

$$|v_s(t)|\bar{i}_L(t) = (V_d + v_{d2} + \tilde{v}_d)(I_d + i_{d2} + \tilde{i}_d) \tag{6B.3}$$

Substituting into Equation 6B.3 $|v_s(t)| = \hat{V}_s|\sin\omega t|$ and the inductor current from Equation 6B.2,

$$\hat{V}_s|\sin\omega t|\,(\hat{I}_L + i_{L2} + \tilde{i}_L)|\sin\omega t| = (V_d + v_{d2} + \tilde{v}_d)(I_d + i_{d2} + \tilde{i}_d) \tag{6B.4}$$

Noting that $|\sin\omega t|^2 = \sin^2\omega t = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos 2\omega t$ and neglecting the product of $\tilde{v}_d$ and $\tilde{i}_d$,

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s\hat{I}_L + \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s i_{L2} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s\tilde{i}_L - \frac{\hat{V}_s}{2}(\hat{I}_L + i_{L2} + \tilde{i}_L)\cos(2\omega t)\\ &\quad\simeq V_d(I_d + i_{d2}) + v_{d2}(I_d + i_{d2} + \tilde{i}_d) + \tilde{v}_d i_{d2} + \tilde{i}_d V_d + \tilde{v}_d I_d\end{aligned} \tag{6B.5}$$

Equating the perturbation frequency terms on the two sides of the above equation,

$$\tilde{i}_d V_d + \tilde{v}_d I_d = \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s\tilde{i}_L \tag{6B.6}$$

Recognizing that in the PFC of Figure 6.1a, $I_d = V_d/R$. Therefore in Equation 6B.6,

$$\left(\tilde{i}_d + \frac{\tilde{v}_d}{R}\right)V_d = \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s\tilde{i}_L \tag{6B.7}$$

In the PFC output stage of Figure 6.1a, the voltage and the current are related as,

$$\tilde{i}_d = \frac{1+sRC}{R}\tilde{v}_d \tag{6B.8}$$

Substituting Equation 6B.8 into Equation 6B.7,

$$\frac{\tilde{v}_d}{\tilde{i}_L}(s) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_s}{V_d}\frac{R/2}{1+s(R/2)C} \tag{6B.9}$$

7

MAGNETIC CIRCUIT CONCEPTS

The purpose of this chapter is to review some of the basic concepts associated with magnetic circuits and to develop an understanding of inductors and transformers needed in power electronics.

7.1 AMPERE-TURNS AND FLUX

Let us consider a simple magnetic structure of Figure 7.1 consisting of an N-turn coil with a current i, on a magnetic core made up of iron. This coil applies Ni ampere-turns to the core. We will assume the magnetic field intensity H_m in the core to be uniform along the mean path length ℓ_m. The magnetic field intensity in the air gap is denoted as H_g. From Ampere's Law, the closed line integral of the magnetic field intensity along the mean path within the core and in the air gap is equal to the applied ampere-turns:

$$H_m \ell_m + H_g \ell_g = Ni \tag{7.1}$$

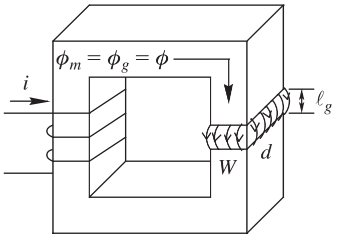


FIGURE 7.1 Magnetic structure with air gap.

In the core and in the air gap, the flux densities corresponding to H_m and H_g are as follows:

$$B_m = \mu_m H_m \tag{7.2}$$

$$B_g = \mu_o H_g \tag{7.3}$$

where, $\mu_o = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}\text{H/m}$. In terms of the above flux densities in Equation 7.1,

$$\frac{B_m}{\mu_m}\ell_m + \frac{B_g}{\mu_o}\ell_g = Ni \tag{7.4}$$

Since flux lines form closed paths, the flux crossing any perpendicular cross-sectional area in the core is the same as that crossing the air gap. Therefore,

$$\phi = A_m B_m = A_g B_g \tag{7.5}$$

$$B_m = \frac{\phi}{A_m} \quad \text{and} \quad B_g = \frac{\phi}{A_g} \tag{7.6}$$

Substituting flux densities from Equation 7.6 into Equation 7.4,

$$\phi\left(\underbrace{\frac{\ell_m}{A_m\mu_m}}_{\Re_m} + \underbrace{\frac{\ell_g}{A_g\mu_o}}_{\Re_g}\right) = Ni \tag{7.7}$$

In Equation 7.7, the two terms within the parenthesis equal the reluctance $\Re_m$ of the core and the reluctance $\Re_g$ of the air gap, respectively. Therefore, the effective reluctance $\Re$ of the whole structure in the path of the flux lines is the sum of the two reluctances:

$$\Re = \Re_m + \Re_g \tag{7.8}$$

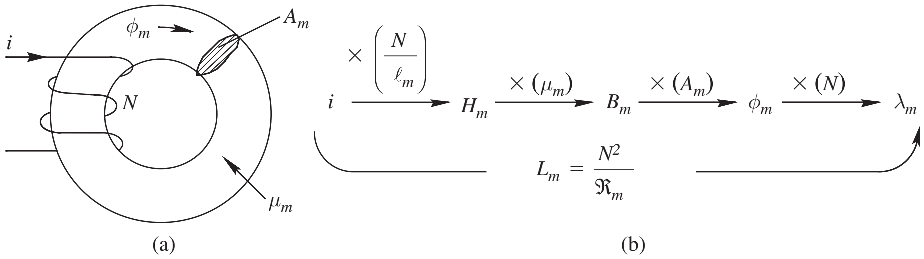
Substituting from Equation 7.8 into Equation 7.7,

$$\phi = \frac{Ni}{\Re} \tag{7.9}$$

Equation 7.9 allows the flux ϕ to be calculated for the applied ampere-turns, and hence B_m and B_g can be calculated from Equation 7.6.

7.2 INDUCTANCE *L*

At any instant of time in the coil of Figure 7.2a, the flux linkage of the coil λ_m, due to flux lines entirely in the core, is equal to the flux ϕ_m times the number of turns N that are



(a) (b)

FIGURE 7.2 Coil inductance.

linked. This flux linkage is related to the current i by a parameter defined as the inductance L_m:

$$\lambda_m = N\phi_m = L_m\, i \tag{7.10}$$

where the inductance $L_m (= \lambda_m/i)$ is constant if the core material is in its linear operating region.

The coil inductance in the linear magnetic region can be calculated by multiplying all the factors shown in Figure 7.2b, which are based on earlier equations:

$$L_m = \frac{\lambda_m}{i} = \frac{\underbrace{\underbrace{\underbrace{\underbrace{\left(\frac{Ni}{\ell_m}\right)}_{H_m}\mu_m}_{B_m} A_m}_{\phi_m} N}_{\lambda_m}}{i} = \frac{N^2}{\left(\frac{\ell_m}{\mu_m A_m}\right)} = \frac{N^2}{\Re_m} \tag{7.11}$$

Equation 7.11 indicates that the inductance L_m is strictly a property of the magnetic circuit (i.e., the core material, the geometry, and the number of turns), provided the operation is in the linear range of the magnetic material, where the slope of its *B-H* characteristic can be represented by a constant μ_m.

7.2.1 Energy Storage due to Magnetic Fields

Energy in an inductor is stored in its magnetic field. From the study of electric circuits, we know that at anytime, with a current *i*, the energy stored in the inductor is,

$$W = \frac{1}{2} L_m\, i^2\, [J] \tag{7.12}$$

where $[J]$, for Joules, is a unit of energy. Initially assuming a structure without an air gap, such as in Figure 7.2a, we can express the energy storage in terms of flux density, by substituting into Equation 7.12 the inductance from Equation 7.11, and the current from the Ampere's Law in Equation 7.1:

$$W_m = \frac{1}{2}\frac{N^2}{\frac{\ell_m}{\mu_m A_m}}\underbrace{(H_m\ell_m/N)^2}_{i^2} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{(H_m\ell_m)^2}{\frac{\ell_m}{\mu_m A_m}} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{B_m^2}{\mu_m}\underbrace{A_m\ell_m}_{volume}\, [J] \tag{7.13}$$

where $A_m\ell_m = volume$, and in the linear region $B_m = \mu_m H_m$. Therefore, from Equation 7.13, the energy density in the core is,

$$w_m = \frac{1}{2}\frac{B_m^2}{\mu_m} \tag{7.14}$$

Similarly, the energy density in the air gap depends on μ_o and the flux density in it. Therefore, from Equation 7.14, the energy density in any medium can be expressed as

$$w = \frac{1}{2}\frac{B^2}{\mu}\ [J/m^3] \tag{7.15}$$

In inductors, the energy is primarily stored in the air gap purposely introduced in the path of flux lines.

In transformers, there is no air gap in the path of the flux lines. Therefore, the energy stored in the core of an ideal transformer is zero, where the core permeability is assumed infinite, and hence H_m is zero for a finite flux density. In a real transformer, the core permeability is finite, resulting in some energy storage in the core.

7.3 FARADAY'S LAW: INDUCED VOLTAGE IN A COIL DUE TO TIME-RATE OF CHANGE OF FLUX LINKAGE

In our discussion so far, we have established in magnetic circuits relationships between the electrical quantity i and the magnetic quantities H, B, ϕ, and λ. These relationships are valid under dc (static) conditions, as well as at any instant when these quantities are varying with time. We will now examine the voltage across the coil under time-*varying* conditions. In the coil of Figure 7.3, Faraday's Law dictates that the time-rate of change of flux-linkage equals the voltage across the coil at any instant:

$$e(t) = \frac{d}{dt}\lambda(t) = N\frac{d}{dt}\phi(t) \tag{7.16}$$

This assumes that all flux lines link all N-turns such that $\lambda = N\phi$. The polarity of the emf $e(t)$ and the direction of $\phi(t)$ in the above equation are yet to be justified.

The relationship in Equation 7.16 is valid, no matter what is causing the flux to change. One possibility is that a second coil is placed on the same core. When the second coil is supplied by a time-varying current, mutual coupling causes the flux ϕ through the coil to change with time. The other possibility is that a voltage $e(t)$ is applied across the coil in Figure 7.3, causing the change in flux, which can be calculated by integrating both sides of Equation 7.16 with respect to time:

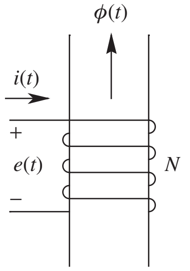


FIGURE 7.3 Voltage polarity and direction of flux and current.

$$\phi(t) = \phi(0) + \frac{1}{N}\int_0^t e(\tau)\cdot d\tau \tag{7.17}$$

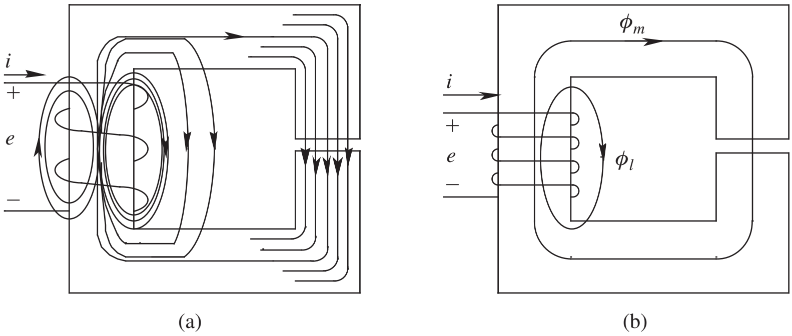
where $\phi(0)$ is the initial flux at $t = 0$ and τ is a variable of integration.

Recalling Ohm's law, $v = Ri$, the current direction through a resistor is into the terminal at the positive polarity. This is the passive sign convention. Similarly, in the coil of Figure 7.3, we can establish the voltage polarity and the flux direction in order to apply Faraday's law, given by Equations 7.16 and 7.17. If the flux direction is given, we can establish the voltage polarity as follows: first determine the direction of a hypothetical current that will produce flux in the same direction as given. Then, the positive polarity for the voltage is at the terminal, which this hypothetical current is entering. Conversely, if the voltage polarity is given, imagine a hypothetical current entering the positive-polarity terminal. This current, based on how the coil is wound, for example in Figure 7.3, determines the flux direction for use in Equations 7.16 and 7.17. Following these rules to determine the voltage polarity and the flux direction is easier than applying Lenz's law (not discussed here).

The voltage is induced due to $d\lambda/dt$, regardless of whether any current flows in that coil.

7.4 LEAKAGE AND MAGNETIZING INDUCTANCES

Just as conductors guide currents in electric circuits, magnetic cores guide *flux* in *magnetic circuits*. But there is an important difference. In electric circuits, the conductivity of copper is approximately 10^{20} times higher than that of air, allowing leakage currents to be neglected at dc or at low frequencies such as 60 Hz. In magnetic circuits, however, the permeabilities of magnetic materials are, at best, only 10^4 times greater than that of air. Because of this relatively low ratio, the core window in the structure of Figure 7.4a has "leakage" flux lines, which do not reach their intended destination that may be another winding, for example in a transformer, or an air gap in an inductor. Note that the coil



(a) (b)

FIGURE 7.4 (a) Magnetic and leakage fluxes; (b) equivalent representation of magnetic and leakage fluxes.

shown in Figure 7.4a is drawn schematically. In practice, the coil consists of multiple layers, and the core is designed to fit as snugly to the coil as possible, thus minimizing the unused "window" area.

The leakage effect makes accurate analysis of magnetic circuits more difficult that requires sophisticated numerical methods, such as finite element analysis. However, we can account for the effect of leakage fluxes by making certain approximations. We can divide the total flux ϕ into two parts:

1. The magnetic flux ϕ_m, which is completely confined to the core and links all N turns, and,
2. The leakage flux, which is partially or entirely in air and is represented by an "equivalent" leakage flux ϕ_ℓ, which also links all N turns of the coil but does not follow the entire magnetic path, as shown in Figure 7.4b.

In Figure 7.4b, $\phi = \phi_m + \phi_\ell$, where ϕ is the equivalent flux that links all N turns. Therefore, the total flux linkage of the coil is

$$\lambda = N\phi = \underbrace{N\phi_m}_{\lambda_m} + \underbrace{N\phi_\ell}_{\lambda_\ell} = \lambda_m + \lambda_\ell \tag{7.18}$$

The total inductance (called the self-inductance) can be obtained by dividing both sides of Equation 7.18 by the current i:

$$\underbrace{\frac{\lambda}{i}}_{L_{self}} = \underbrace{\frac{\lambda_m}{i}}_{L_m} + \underbrace{\frac{\lambda_\ell}{i}}_{L_\ell} \tag{7.19}$$

$$\therefore \qquad L_{self} = L_m + L_\ell \tag{7.20}$$

where L_m is often called the *magnetizing inductance* due to ϕ_m in the magnetic core, and L_ℓ is called the *leakage inductance* due to the leakage flux ϕ_ℓ. From Equations 7.19 and 7.20, the total flux linkage of the coil in Equation 7.18 can be written as,

$$\lambda = (L_m + L_\ell)i \tag{7.21}$$

Hence, from Faraday's law in Equation 7.16,

$$e(t) = \underbrace{L_m \frac{di}{dt}}_{e_m(t)} + L_\ell \frac{di}{dt} \tag{7.22}$$

This results in the electrical circuit of Figure 7.5a. In Figure 7.5b, the voltage drop due to the leakage inductance can be shown separately so that the voltage induced in the coil is solely due to the magnetizing flux. The coil resistance R can then be added in series to complete the representation of the coil.

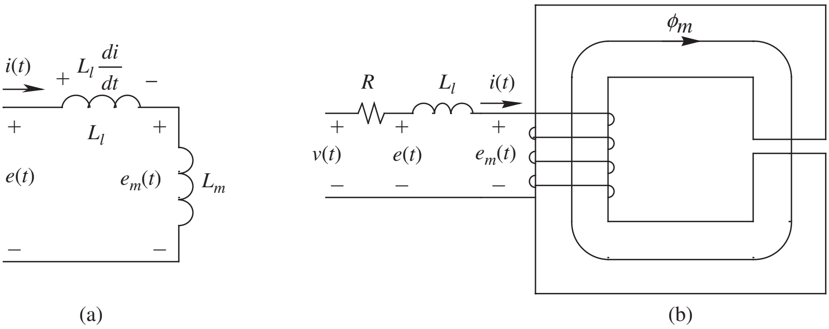


FIGURE 7.5 (a) Circuit representation; (b) leakage inductance separated from the core.

7.4.1 Mutual Inductances

Most magnetic circuits, such as those encountered in inductors and transformers consist of multiple coils. In such circuits, the flux established by the current in one coil partially links the other coil or coils. This phenomenon can be described mathematically by means of mutual inductances, as examined in circuit theory courses. However, we will use simpler and more intuitive means to analyze mutually coupled coils, as in a Flyback converter discussed in Chapter 8 dealing with transformer-isolated dc-dc converters.

7.5 TRANSFORMERS

In power electronics, high-frequency transformers are essential to switch-mode dc power supplies. Such transformers often consist of two or more tightly coupled windings where almost all of the flux produced by one winding links the other windings. Including the leakage flux in detail makes the analysis very complicated and not very useful for our purposes here. Therefore, we will include only the magnetizing flux ϕ_m that links all the windings, ignoring the leakage flux whose consequences will be acknowledged separately.

To understand the operating principles of transformers, we will consider a three-winding transformer shown in Figure 7.6 such that this analysis can be extended to any number of windings.

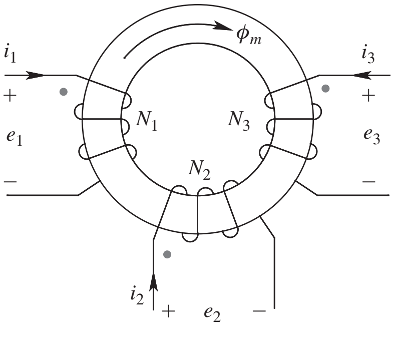


FIGURE 7.6 Transformer with three windings.

Faraday's Law: In this transformer, all windings are linked by the same flux ϕ_m. Therefore, from the Faraday's law, the induced voltages at the dotted terminals with respect to their undotted terminals are as follows:

$$e_1 = N_1 \frac{d\phi_m}{dt} \tag{7.23}$$

$$e_2 = N_2 \frac{d\phi_m}{dt} \tag{7.24}$$

$$e_3 = N_3 \frac{d\phi_m}{dt} \tag{7.25}$$

The above equations based on Faraday's law result in the following relationship that shows that the volts-per-turn induced in each winding are the same due to the same rate of change of flux that links them,

$$\frac{d\phi_m}{dt} = \frac{e_1}{N_1} = \frac{e_2}{N_2} = \frac{e_3}{N_3} \tag{7.26}$$

Equation 7.26 shows how desired voltage-ratios between various windings can be achieved by selecting the appropriate winding turns-ratios. The instantaneous flux ϕ_m is obtained by expressing Equation 7.26 in its integral form below with proper integral limits,

$$\phi_m = \frac{1}{N_1}\int e_1 dt = \frac{1}{N_2}\int e_2 dt = \frac{1}{N_3}\int e_3 dt \tag{7.27}$$

Ampere's Law: In accordance with the Ampere's law given in Equation 7.9, the flux ϕ_m at any instant of time is supported by the net magnetizing ampere-turns applied to the core in Figure 7.6,

$$N_1 i_1 + N_2 i_2 + N_3 i_3 = \Re_m \phi_m \tag{7.28}$$

In Equation 7.28, $\Re_m$ is the reluctance in the flux path of the core of Figure 7.6, and the currents are defined positive into the dotted terminals of each winding such as to produce flux lines in the same direction. The net ampere-turns consist of various winding currents that depend on the circuits connected to them.

Equations 7.27 and 7.28 are the key to understanding transformers: to one of the windings, the applied voltage, equal to the induced voltage in it if the winding resistance and the leakage flux are ignored, results in flux ϕ_m which is supported by the net magnetizing ampere-turns given by Equation 7.28, overcoming the core reluctance.

7.5.1 Transformer Equivalent Circuit

It is often useful to have an equivalent circuit of a transformer such as that shown in Figure 7.7b. Prior to developing this equivalent circuit, consider this to be an ideal transformer, with an infinite core permeability resulting in $\Re_m = 0$. Therefore, the net

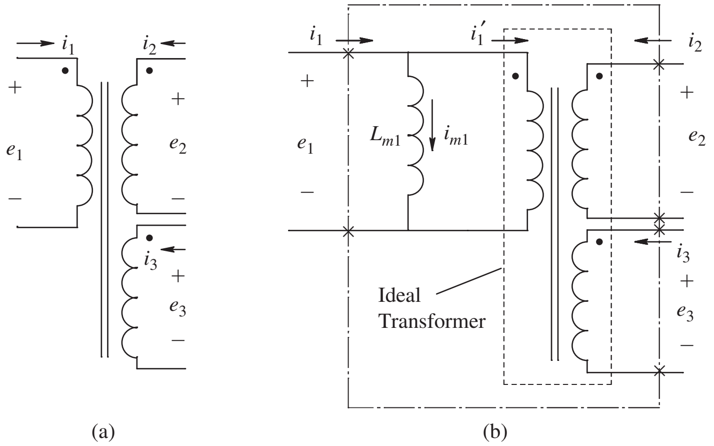


FIGURE 7.7 Equivalent circuits of transformers: (a) ideal, and (b) actual (leakage impedances not shown).

magnetizing ampere-turns in Equation 7.28 are zero, and such an ideal transformer is shown in Figure 7.7a.

A practical transformer such as that in Figure 7.6 doesn't have infinite core permeability and hence needs net ampere-turns to support the core flux. Although any of the windings could have been selected, let us select winding 1 to deliver the net magnetizing ampere-turns, with a magnetizing current i_{m1} flowing through N_1 turns. Therefore, in Equation 7.28,

$$N_1 i_{m1} = \Re_m \phi_m \tag{7.29}$$

From Equations 7.28 and 7.29, we can write the following,

$$N_1 \underbrace{(i_1 - i_{m1})}_{i_1'} + N_2 i_2 + N_3 i_3 = 0 \tag{7.30}$$

where i_1 can be considered as consisting of the sum of two components,

$$i_1 = i_m + i_1' \tag{7.31}$$

and, from Equation 7.30,

$$N_1 i_1' + N_2 i_2 + N_3 i_3 = 0 \tag{7.32}$$

The net ampere-turns in Equation 7.32 equal zero, and hence this equation corresponds to the ideal-transformer portion of the equivalent circuit, as shown in Figure 7.7b. In i_1 of Equation 7.31 and Figure 7.7b, the magnetizing current i_{m1} flows through the magnetizing inductance L_{m1}, as justified on the following page.

From Equation 7.29,

$$\phi_m = \frac{N_1 i_{m1}}{\Re_m} \tag{7.33}$$

Substituting for ϕ_m from Equation 7.33 into Equation 7.23,

$$e_1 = \left(\frac{N_1^2}{\Re_m}\right) \frac{di_{m1}}{dt} \tag{7.34}$$

where, using Equation 7.11, the quantity within the brackets in the equation above is the magnetizing inductance of winding 1,

$$L_{m1} = \frac{N_1^2}{\Re_m} \tag{7.35}$$

The analysis above is based on neglecting the leakage flux, assuming that the flux produced by a winding links all the other windings. In a simplified analysis, the leakage flux of a winding can be assumed to result in a leakage inductance, which can be added, along with the winding resistance, in series with the induced voltage $e(t)$ in the winding in the equivalent circuit representation. A systematic description of the principle on which transformers operate is presented in [1].

REFERENCE

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design,* 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).

PROBLEMS

Inductors

The magnetic core in Problems 7.1 through 7.5 has the following properties: the core area $A_m = 0.931\ \text{cm}^2$, the magnetic path length of $\ell_m = 3.76$ cm, and the relative permeability of the material is $\mu_r = \mu_m/\mu_o = 5000$.

7.1. Calculate the reluctance $\Re$ of this core.
7.2. Calculate the reluctance of an air gap of length $\ell_g = 1$ mm, if it is introduced in the core of Problem 7.1.
7.3. A coil with $N = 25$ turns is wound on a core with an air gap described in Problem 7.2. Calculate the inductance of this coil.
7.4. If the flux density in the core in Problem 7.3 is not to exceed 0.2 T, what is the maximum current that can be allowed to flow through this inductor coil?
7.5. At the maximum current calculated in Problem 7.4, calculate the energy stored in the magnetic core and the air gap, and compare the two.

Two-Winding Transformers

7.6. In Figure 7.7, assume that the transformer has only two windings: winding 1 and winding 2, with $N_1/N_2 = 5$ and the leakage inductances are to be neglected.

Winding 1 is applied a voltage $v_1 = \sqrt{2} \times 120 \sin \omega t$ volts at a frequency of 20 kHz. The load at the second winding is a resistor $R_L = 10\ \Omega$. Assuming this to be an ideal transformer so that the magnetizing current is zero, calculate and plot v_1, i_1 and i_2. What would this plot look like if i_2 is defined to be coming out of the dotted terminal of winding 2.

7.7. Repeat Problem 7.6, if the rms value of the magnetizing current is 1/5th of the rms value of the winding-1 current in Problem 7.6.

Three-Winding Transformers

In Problems 7.8 through 7.13, the three-winding transformer with $N_1 = 10$ turns, $N_2 = 5$ turns, and $N_3 = 5$ turns uses a magnetic core that has the following properties: $A_m = 0.639\ \text{cm}^2$, the magnetic path length of $\ell_m = 3.12$ cm, and the relative permeability of the material $\mu_r = \mu_m/\mu_o = 5000$. A square-wave voltage, of 30-V amplitude, alternating between −30 V and +30 V, at a frequency of 100 kHz, is applied to winding 1. Ignore the leakage inductances and assume the flux waveform to be symmetric with the same positive and negative peak amplitudes.

7.8. Calculate and draw the magnetizing current waveform, along with the applied voltage waveform, and the waveforms of the voltages induced in windings 2 and 3, assuming them to be open.

7.9. Calculate the self-inductances of each winding in Problem 7.8.

7.10. Calculate the peak flux density in Problem 7.8.

7.11. A load resistance of $10\ \Omega$ is connected to winding 2, and winding 3 is open. Calculate and draw the currents in windings 1 and 2, along with the applied voltage waveform.

7.12. Assuming that winding 1 is not applied a voltage, and windings 1 and 2 are open, what is the peak amplitude of the square-wave voltage at 100 kHz that can be applied to winding 3 of this transformer, if the peak flux density calculated in Problem 7.10 is not to be exceeded?

7.13. In Problem 7.8, what is the peak amplitude of the voltage that can be applied to winding 1 without exceeding the peak flux density calculated in Problem 7.10, if the frequency of the square wave voltage is 200 kHz? What is the peak value of the magnetizing current, as compared to the one at 100 kHz?

8

SWITCH-MODE DC POWER SUPPLIES

8.1 APPLICATIONS OF SWITCH-MODE DC POWER SUPPLIES

Switch-mode dc power supplies represent an important power electronics application area with the worldwide market in excess of several billion dollars per year. Many of these power supplies incorporate transformer isolation for reasons that are discussed below. Within these power supplies, transformer-isolated dc-dc converters are derived from non-isolated dc-dc converter topologies already discussed in Chapter 3. For short, we will refer to transformer-isolated switch-mode dc power supplies as SMPS, whose block diagram is shown in Figure 8.1. As shown in Figure 8.1, these supplies encompass the rectification of the utility supply, and the voltage V_{in} across a large filter capacitor is the input to the transformer-isolated dc-dc converter that is the focus of discussion in this chapter. Internally, the transformer operates at very high frequencies, upwards of a few hundred kHz are typical, thus resulting in small size and weight, as discussed in the next chapter.

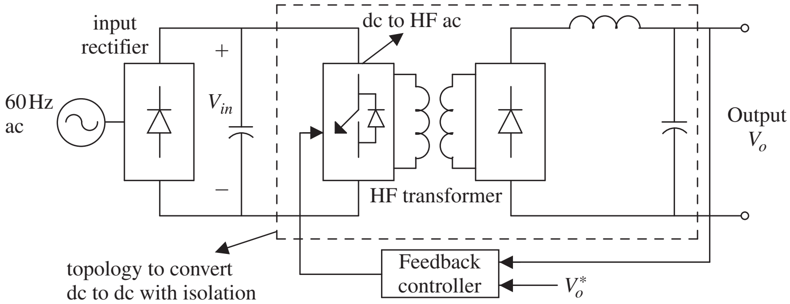

input
rectifier
60 Hz
ac
+
V_{in}
−
dc to HF ac
HF transformer
Output
V_o
topology to convert
dc to dc with isolation
Feedback
controller
V_o^*

FIGURE 8.1 Block diagram of switch-mode dc power supplies.

8.2 NEED FOR ELECTRICAL ISOLATION

Electrical isolation by means of transformers is needed in switch-mode dc power supplies for three reasons:

1. Safety. It is necessary for the low-voltage dc output to be isolated from the utility supply to avoid the shock hazard.
2. Different Reference Potentials. The dc supply may have to operate at a different potential, for example, the dc supply to the gate drive for the upper MOSFET in the power-pole is referenced to its Source.
3. Voltage matching. If the dc-dc conversion is large, then to avoid requiring large voltage and current ratings of semiconductor devices, it may be economical and operationally more suitable to use an electrical transformer for conversion of voltage levels.

8.3 CLASSIFICATION OF TRANSFORMER-ISOLATED DC-DC CONVERTERS

In the block diagram of Figure 8.1, there are following three categories of transformer-isolated dc-dc converters, all of which are discussed in detail in this chapter:

1. Flyback converters derived from Buck-Boost dc-dc converters
2. Forward converter derived from Buck dc-dc converters
3. Full-Bridge and Half-Bridge converters derived from Buck dc-dc converters

8.4 FLYBACK CONVERTERS

Flyback converters are very commonly used in applications at low power levels below 50 W. These are derived from the Buck-Boost converter redrawn in Figure 8.2a, where the inductor is drawn descriptively on a low permeability core.

The Flyback converter in Figure 8.2b consists of two mutually-coupled coils, where the coil orientations are such that at the instant when the transistor is turned-off, the current switches to the second coil to maintain the same flux in the core. Therefore, the dots on coils are as shown in Figure 8.2b where the current into the dot of either coil produces core flux in the same direction. Commonly, the circuit of Figure 8.2b is redrawn as in Figure 8.2c.

We will consider the steady state in the incomplete demagnetization mode where the energy is never completely depleted from the magnetic core. This corresponds to the continuous conduction mode (CCM) in Buck-Boost converters. We will assume ideal devices and components, the output voltage $v_o(t) = V_o$, and the leakage inductances to be zero.

Turning on the transistor at $t = 0$ in the circuit in Figure 8.2c applies the input voltage V_{in} across coil 1, and the core magnetizing flux ϕ_m increases linearly from its initial value $\phi_m(0)$, as shown in the waveforms of Figure 8.3. During the transistor on-interval DT_s, the increase in flux can be calculated from the Faraday's law as

$$\Delta\phi_{p-p} = \frac{V_{in}}{N_1} DT_s \tag{8.1}$$

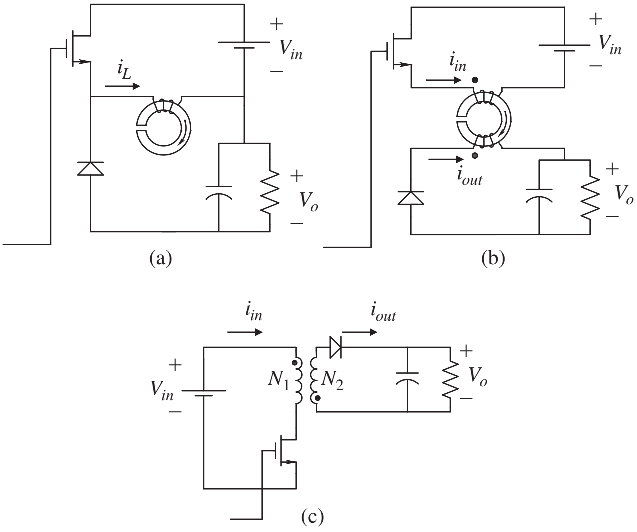


FIGURE 8.2 Buck-Boost and the Flyback converters.

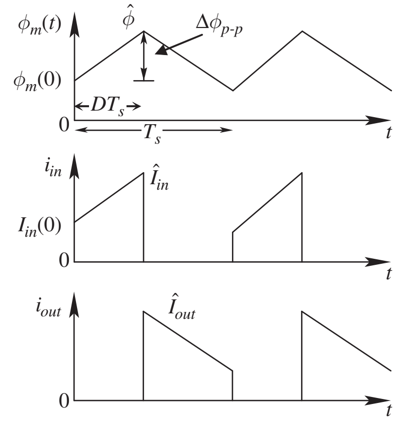


FIGURE 8.3 Flyback converter waveforms.

Due to increasing ϕ_m, the induced voltage $(N_2/N_1)V_{in}$ across coil 2 adds to the output voltage V_o to reverse bias the diode, resulting in $i_{out} = 0$. Corresponding to the core flux, the current i_{in} can be calculated using the relationship $\phi = Ni/\Re$, where $\Re$ is the core reluctance in the flux path. Therefore, using Equation 8.1, the increase in the input current during the on-interval, from its initial value $I_{in}(0)$ can be calculated using Equation 8.1 as,

$$\Delta i_{in} = \frac{\Re}{N_1^2} V_{in} DT_s \tag{8.2}$$

During the on-interval DT_s, the output load is entirely supplied by the energy stored in the output capacitor, and the core magnetizing flux and the input current reach their peak values at the end of this interval:

$$\hat{\phi}_m = \phi_m(0) + \frac{V_{in}}{N_1} DT_s \tag{8.3}$$

$$\hat{I}_{in} = I_{in}(0) + \frac{\Re}{N_1^2} V_{in} DT_s = I_{in}(0) + \frac{V_{in}(DT_s)}{L_{m1}} \tag{8.4}$$

where $L_{m1} (= N_1^2/\Re)$ is the magnetizing inductance of the transformer seen from the primary side. After the on-interval, turning off the transistor forces the input current in Figure 8.2c to zero. The magnetic energy stored in the magnetic core due to the flux ϕ_m cannot change instantaneously, and hence the ampere-turns applied to the core must be the same at the instant immediately before and after turning the transistor off. Therefore, the current i_{out} in coil 2 through the diode suddenly jumps to its peak value such that,

$$N_2 \hat{I}_{out}\Big|_{i_{in}=0} = N_1 \hat{I}_{in}\Big|_{i_{out}=0} \tag{8.5}$$

$$\therefore \qquad \hat{I}_{out} = \frac{N_1}{N_2} \hat{I}_{in} \tag{8.6}$$

With the diode conducting, the output voltage V_o appears across coil 2 with a negative polarity. Hence, during the off-interval $(1-D)T_s$, the core flux declines linearly, as plotted in Figure 8.3, by $\Delta\phi_{p-p}$, where,

$$\Delta\phi_{p-p} = \frac{V_o}{N_2}(1-D)T_s \tag{8.7}$$

Using Equations 8.1 and 8.7,

$$\frac{V_o}{V_{in}} = \left(\frac{N_2}{N_1}\right) \frac{D}{1-D} \tag{8.8}$$

The change in the current $i_{out}(t)$ can be calculated in a manner similar to Equation 8.2, and this current is plotted in Figure 8.3.

Equation 8.8 shows that in a Flyback converter, the dependence of the voltage-ratio on the duty-ratio D is identical to that in the Buck-Boost converter, and it also depends on the coils turns-ratio N_2/N_1. Flyback converters require minimum number of components by integrating the inductor (needed for a Buck-Boost operation) with the transformer that provides electrical isolation and matching of the voltage levels. These converters are very commonly used in low power applications in the complete demagnetization mode (corresponding to the discontinuous-conduction mode in Buck-Boost), which makes their control easier. A disadvantage of Flyback converters is the need for snubbers to prevent voltage spikes across the transistor and diode due to leakage inductances associated with the two coils.

Example 8.1

In a Flyback converter shown in Figure 8.2c, $V_{in} = 48\,V$, $V_o = 5\,V$, $N_1/N_2 = 6$, and the magnetizing inductance $L_{m1} = 150\,\mu H$. This converter is operating in equivalent CCM with a switching frequency $f_s = 200\,\text{kHz}$ and supplying an output load $P_o = 30\,\text{W}$. Assuming this converter to be lossless, calculate the waveforms associated with it.

Solution From Equation 8.8, the duty-ratio $D = 0.385$, where $T_s = 5\,\mu\text{s}$. The average currents are $I_{in} = 0.6\,25\,\text{A}$ and $I_{out} = 6\,\text{A}$. In Figure 8.3, the rise in current during the on-interval DT_s can be calculated as,

$$\hat{I}_{in} - I_{in}(0) = \frac{V_{in}(DT_s)}{L_{m1}} = 0.616\,\text{A}$$

From the waveforms of Figure 8.3, the average input current can be calculated as follows:

$$I_{in} = \frac{\hat{I}_{in} + I_{in}(0)}{2} D = 0.625\,\text{A}\,; \qquad \hat{I}_{in} + I_{in}(0) = 3.247\,\text{A}$$

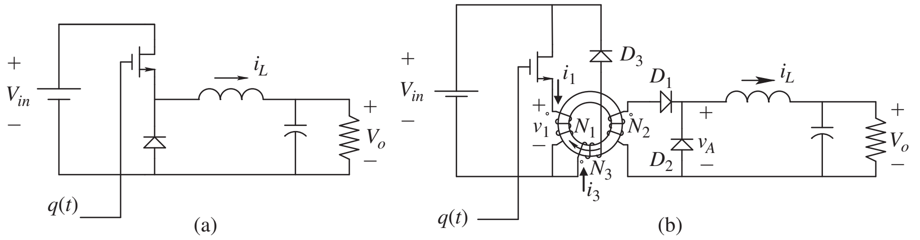
From equations above, in Figure 8.3, $\hat{I}_{in} = 1.93\,\text{A}$ and $I_{in}(0) = 1.315\,\text{A}$. The output current has a peak value $\hat{I}_{out} = \hat{I}_{in}\frac{N_1}{N_2} = 11.58\,\text{A}$ and $I_{out}(0) = I_{in}(0)\frac{N_1}{N_2} = 7.89\,\text{A}$.

8.5 FORWARD CONVERTERS

The forward converter and its variations derived from a Buck converter are commonly used in applications at low power levels up to a kW. A Buck converter is shown in Figure 8.4a. In this circuit, a three-winding transformer is added as shown in Figure 8.4b to realize a Forward converter. The third winding in series with a diode D_3, and the diode D_1 are needed to demagnetize the core every switching cycle. The winding orientations in Figure 8.4b are such that the current into the dot of any of the windings will produce core flux in the same direction. We will consider steady state converter operation in the continuous conduction mode where the output inductor current i_L flows continuously. In the following analysis, we will assume ideal semiconductor devices, $v_o(t) = V_o$, and the leakage inductances to be zero.

Initially, assuming an ideal transformer in the Forward converter of Figure 8.4b, the third winding and the diode D_3 can be removed and D_1 can be replaced by a short circuit. In such an ideal case, the Forward converter operation is identical to that of the Buck converter, as shown by the waveform in Figure 8.5, except for the presence of the transformer turns-ratio N_2/N_1. Therefore, in the continuous conduction mode,

$$V_o = \left(\frac{N_2}{N_1}\right) D V_{in} \tag{8.9}$$



(a) (b)

FIGURE 8.4 Buck and Forward converters.

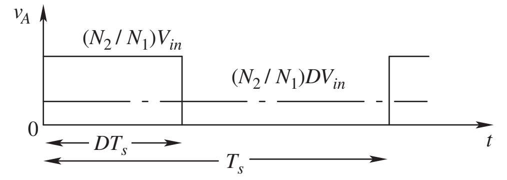


FIGURE 8.5 Forward converter operation.

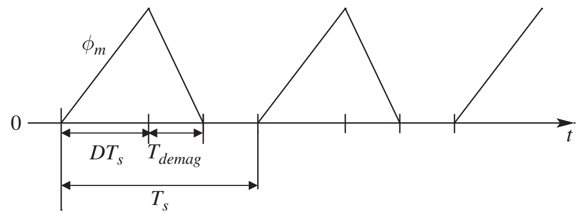


FIGURE 8.6 Forward converter core flux.

In the case with a real transformer, the core must be completely demagnetized during the off-interval of the transistor, and hence the need for the third winding and the diodes D_1 and D_3, as shown in Figure 8.4b. Turning on the transistor causes the magnetizing flux in the core to build up as shown in Figure 8.6. During this on-interval DT_s, D_3 gets reverse biased, thus preventing the current from flowing through the tertiary winding. The diode D_2 also gets reverse biased, and the output inductor current flows through D_1.

When the transistor is turned off, the magnetic energy stored in the transformer core forces a current to flow into the dotted terminal of the tertiary winding, since the current into the dotted terminal of the secondary winding cannot flow due to D_1, which results in V_{in} to be applied negatively across the tertiary winding, and the core flux to decline, as shown in Figure 8.6. (The output inductor current freewheels through D_2.) After an interval T_{demag}, the core flux comes to zero and stays zero during the remaining interval, until the next cycle begins.

To avoid the core from saturating, T_{demag} must be less than the off-interval $(1-D)T_s$ of the transistor. Typically, windings 1 and 3 are wound bifilar to provide a very tight mutual coupling between the two, and hence, $N_3 = N_1$. Therefore, to the core is applied an equal magnitude but opposite polarity per-turn voltage during DT_s and T_{demag}, respectively. With $N_3 = N_1$, $T_{demag} = DT_s$, and at the upper limit, DT_s and T_{demag} are both equal to $T_s/2$. Therefore, with $N_3 = N_1$, the upper limit on the duty-ratio is $D_{\max} = 0.5$.

Example 8.2

In a Forward converter shown in Figure 8.4b, $V_{in} = 48$ V, $V_o = 5$ V, $N_1/N_2 = 3.5$, $N_1/N_3 = 1$, and the magnetizing inductance $L_{m1} = 150$ μH. This converter is operating in equivalent CCM with a switching frequency $f_s = 200$ kHz and supplying an output load $P_o = 60$ W. Assume the filter inductor current i_L to be ripple-free. Assuming this converter to be lossless, calculate the waveforms associated with it.

Solution From Equation 8.9, the duty-ratio $D = 0.365$, where $T_s = 5$ μs. The average currents are $I_{in} = 1.25$ A and $I_{out} = 12$ A. The voltage waveforms are shown in Figure 8.7,

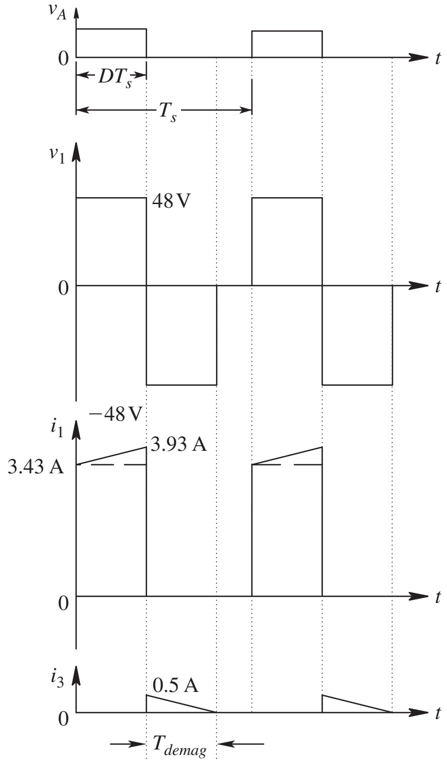


FIGURE 8.7 Waveforms in the Forward converter of Example 8.2.

where the output current reflected to the primary side is $(N_2/N_1)I_{out} = 3.43$ A. The peak of the magnetizing current during the on-interval DT_s can be calculated as

$$\Delta I_m = \frac{V_{in}(DT_s)}{L_{m1}} = 0.5\,\text{A}$$

During the transistor off-interval, this magnetizing current, flowing through the diode D3, decreases and comes to zero after $T_{demag} = DT_s = 1.825\,\mu$s, as shown in Figure 8.7.

8.5.1 Two-Switch Forward Converters

Single-switch Forward converters are used in power ratings up to a few hundred watts. However, Two-Switch Forward converters discussed below eliminate the need for a separate demagnetizing winding and are used in much higher power ratings of a kW and even higher.

Figure 8.8 shows the topology of the Two-Switch Forward converter, where both transistors are gated on and off simultaneously with a duty-ratio $D \leq 0.5$. During the on-interval DT_s when both transistors are on, diodes D_1 and D_2 get reverse biased, and the output inductor current i_L flows through D_o, similar to that in a single-switch Forward

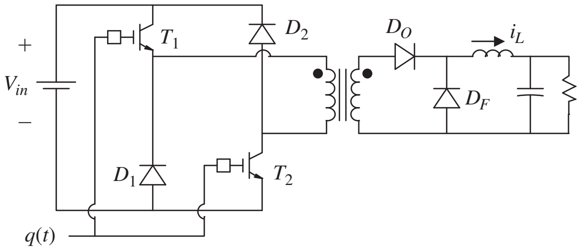


FIGURE 8.8 Two-switch Forward converter.

converter. During the off interval when both transistors are turned off, the magnetizing current in the transformer core flows through the two primary-side diodes into V_{in}, thus applying V_{in} negatively to the core and causing it to demagnetize. Application of $-V_{in}$ to the primary winding causes D_o to get reverse biased and the output inductor current i_L freewheels through D_F.

Based on the discussion regarding the demagnetization of the core in a single-switch Forward converter, the switch duty-ratio D is limited to 0.5. The voltage conversion ratio remains the same as in Equation 8.9.

8.6 FULL-BRIDGE CONVERTERS

Full-Bridge converters consist of four transistors, hence are economically feasible only at higher power levels in applications at a few hundred watts and higher. Like Forward converters, full-bridge converters are also derived from Buck converters. Unlike Flyback and Forward converters that operate in only one quadrant of the B-H loop, Full-Bridge converters use the magnetic core in two quadrants.

A Full-Bridge converter consists of two switching power-poles, as shown in Figure 8.9, with a center-tapped transformer secondary winding. In analyzing this converter, we will assume the transformer ideal, although the effects of magnetizing current can be easily accounted for. We will consider steady state converter operation in the continuous conduction mode where the output inductor current i_L flows continuously. As with previous converters, we will assume ideal devices and components, and $v_o(t) = V_o$.

In the Full-Bridge converter of Figure 8.9, the voltage v_1 applied to the primary winding alternates without a dc component. The waveform of this voltage is shown in Figure 8.10, where $v_1 = V_{in}$ when transistors T_1 and T_2 are on during DT_s, and $v_1 = -V_{in}$

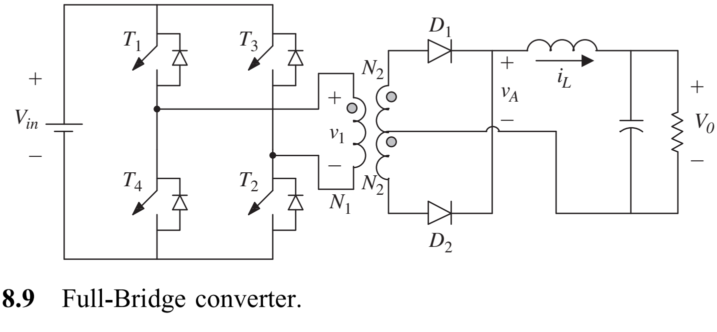


FIGURE 8.9 Full-Bridge converter.

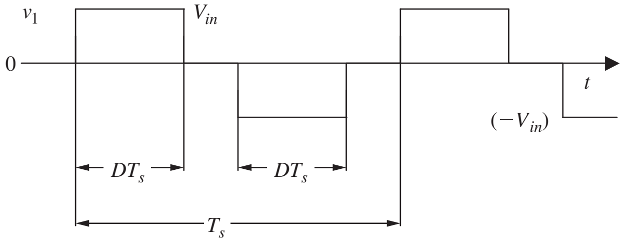


FIGURE 8.10 Full-Bridge converter waveforms.

when T_3 and T_4 are on for an interval of the same duration. This waveform applies equal positive and negative volt-seconds to the transformer primary. The switch duty-ratio D (<0.5) is controlled to achieve the output voltage regulation by means of zero intervals between the positive and the negative applied voltages.

The way the voltage across the primary winding, hence the secondary winding, is forced to be zero classifies Full-Bridge converters into the following two categories:

1. Pulse-Width Modulated (PWM)
2. Phase-Shift Modulated (PSM)

PWM Control. In PWM control, all four transistors are turned off, resulting in a zero voltage across the transformer windings, as discussed shortly. With all transistors off, the output inductor current freewheels through the two secondary windings, and there are no conduction losses on the primary side of the transformer. Therefore, the PWM control results in lower conduction losses, and it is the control method discussed in this chapter.

PSM Control. In phase-shift modulated control, the two transistors of each power-pole are operated at nearly 50% duty-ratio, with $D \simeq 0.5$. The output of each power-pole pulsates between V_{in} and 0 with a duty-ratio of nearly 50%. The length of the zero intervals is controlled by phase-shifting the two power-pole outputs with respect to each other, as the name of this control implies. During zero intervals, either both transistors at the top, or both transistors at the bottom are on, creating a short circuit (through one of the anti-parallel diodes, depending on the direction of the current) across the primary winding, resulting in $v_1 = 0$. During this short-circuited condition, the output inductor current is reflected to the primary winding and circulates through the primary-side semiconductor devices, causing additional conduction losses. However, increased conduction losses can be offset by the reduction in switching losses by this means of control, as we will discuss in detail in Chapter 10 on soft-switching.

8.6.1 PWM Control

As shown by the block diagram of Figure 8.11a, the PWM-IC for Full-Bridge converters provides gate signals to the transistor pairs (T_1, T_2 and T_3, T_4) during alternate cycles of the ramp voltage in Figure 8.11b.

Corresponding to these PWM switching signals, the resulting sub-circuits are shown in Figure 8.12 for one-half switching cycle, where the other half-cycle is symmetric.

Interval DT_s with transistors T_1, T_2 in their on state. Turning on T_1, T_2 applies positive voltage V_{in} to the primary winding, causing D_2 to become reverse biased and i_L

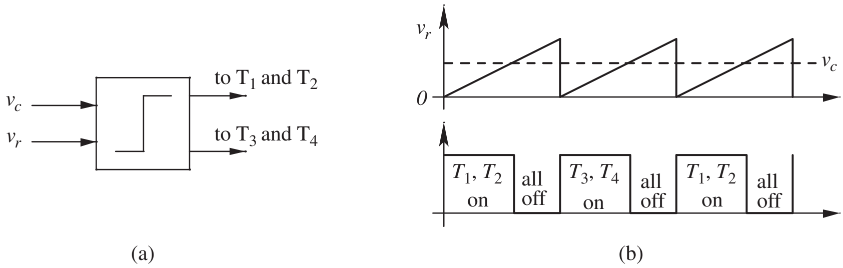

v_c
v_r
to T$_1$ and T$_2$
to T$_3$ and T$_4$
v_r
0
v_c
T_1, T_2 on
all off
T_3, T_4 on
all off
T_1, T_2 on
all off
(a)
(b)

FIGURE 8.11 PWM-IC and control signals for transistors.

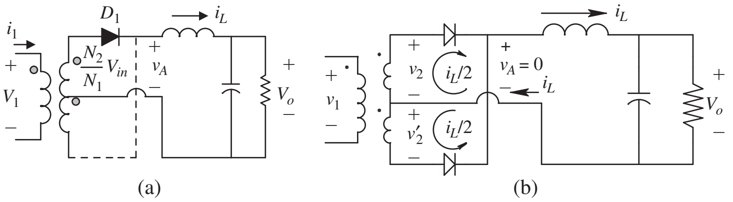

D_1
i_L
i_1
V_1
$\frac{N_2}{N_1}V_{in}$
v_A
V_o
v_1
v_2
$i_L/2$
v_2'
$i_L/2$
$v_A = 0$
i_L
V_o
(a)
(b)

FIGURE 8.12 Full-Bridge: sub-circuits.

is carried through D_1, as shown in Figure 8.12a. During this interval, $v_A = (N_2/N_1)V_{in}$ as plotted in Figure 8.13.

Interval $(1/2 - D)T_s$ *with all Transistors off.* When all the transistors are turned off, there is no current in the primary winding, and the output inductor current divides equally (assuming an ideal transformer) between the two output diodes as shown in the sub-circuit of Figure 8.12b. This ensures that the total ampere-turns acting on the transformer core equal zero because of $i_L/2$ coming out of the dotted terminal and $i_L/2$ going into the dotted terminal. Applying the Kirchhoff's voltage law in the loop consisting of the two secondaries in Figure 8.11b shows that $v_2 + v_2' = 0$. Since $v_2 = v_2'$, the two voltages must be individually zero, and hence also the primary voltage v_1:

$$v_1 = v_2 = v_2' = 0 \tag{8.10}$$

During this interval, $v_A = 0$ as plotted in Figure 8.13.

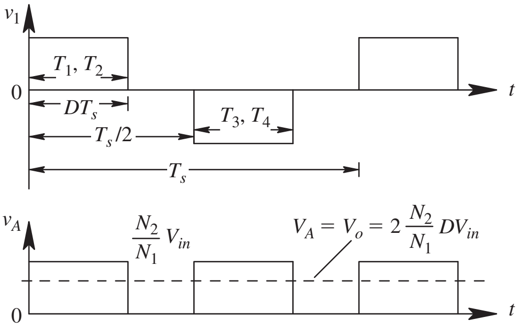


FIGURE 8.13 Full-Bridge converter waveforms.

The above discussion completes the discussion of one-half switching cycle. The other half-cycle with T_3, T_4 on applies a negative voltage $(-V_{in})$ across the primary winding for an interval DT_s and results in D_2 conducting and D_1 reverse biased. During this interval, $v_A = (N_2/N_1)V_{in}$ as before when the positive voltage was applied to the primary winding. The waveforms during this half-cycle are as plotted in Figure 8.13.

From Figure 8.13, recognizing that $V_A = V_o$ in the dc steady state,

$$\frac{V_o}{V_{in}} = 2\left(\frac{N_2}{N_1}\right)D \tag{8.11}$$

Example 8.3

In a Full-bridge converter shown in Figure 8.9, $V_{in} = 48\,\text{V}$, $V_o = 5\,\text{V}$, and $N_1/N_2 = 6$. This converter is operating in CCM with a switching frequency $f_s = 200\,\text{kHz}$ and supplying an output load $P_o = 100\,\text{W}$. The filter inductor has an inductance of $L = 0.25\,\mu\text{H}$. Assuming this converter to be lossless, calculate the waveforms associated with it.

Solution From Equation 8.11, the duty-ratio $D = 0.3125$, where $T_s = 5\,\mu\text{s}$. The average currents are $I_{in} = 2.083\,\text{A}$ and $I_{out} = 20\,\text{A}$. The voltage waveforms are shown in Figure 8.14.

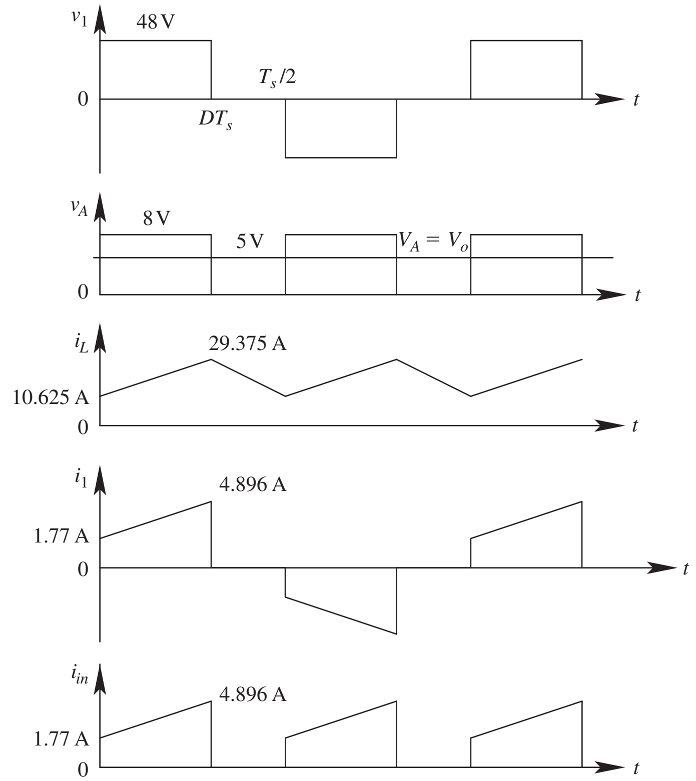


FIGURE 8.14 Waveforms of the Full-Bridge converter of Example 8.3.

The peak-peak-ripple in the filter inductor current i_L can be calculated from the voltage waveforms in Figure 8.14,

$$\Delta I_{L,p-p} = \frac{(v_A - V_o)(DT_s)}{L} = 18.75\,\text{A}$$

Therefore, i_L waveform is as shown in Figure 8.14, with a minimum of $I_{L,\min} = I_{out} - \frac{\Delta I_{L,p-p}}{2} = 10.625\,\text{A}$ and a maximum of $I_{L,\max} = I_{out} + \frac{\Delta I_{L,p-p}}{2} = 29.375\,\text{A}$.

Taking the transformer turns-ratio into account, the primary current i_1 and the input current i_{in} ramp from $1.77\,A$ to $4.896\,A$, and are zero when all the transistors are off.

8.7 HALF-BRIDGE AND PUSH-PULL CONVERTERS

Variations of Full-Bridge converters are shown in Figure 8.15. The Half-Bridge converter in Figure 8.15a consists of only two transistors but requires two split capacitors to form a dc input mid-point. It is sometimes used at slightly lower power levels compared to the Full-Bridge converter.

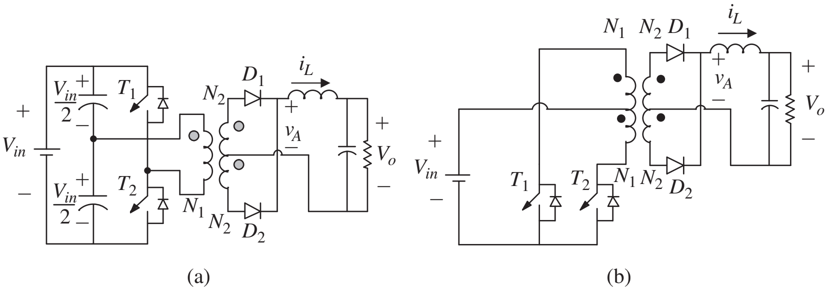


FIGURE 8.15 Half-Bridge and Push-Pull converters.

The Push-Pull converter in Figure 8.15b has the advantage of having both transistors gates referenced to the low-side of the input voltage. The penalty is in the transformer where during the power transfer interval, only one half of the primary winding and one half of the secondary winding are utilized.

8.8 PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS

To provide electrical isolation between the input and the output, the feedback control loop should also have electrical isolation. There are several ways of providing this isolation as discussed in Reference [1].

REFERENCE

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design*, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).

PROBLEMS

Flyback Converters

In Problems 8.1 through 8.4, in a Flyback converter, $V_{in} = 30\,\text{V}$, $N_1 = 30$ turns, and $N_2 = 15$ turns. The self-inductance of winding 1 is $50\,\mu\text{H}$, and $f_s = 200\,\text{kHz}$. The output voltage is regulated at $V_o = 9\,\text{V}$.

8.1. Calculate and draw the waveforms shown in Figure 8.3 along with the ripple current in the output capacitor, if the load is 30 W.

8.2. For the same duty-ratio as in Problem 8.1, calculate the critical power which makes this converter operate at the border of incomplete and complete demagnetization modes.

8.3. Draw the waveforms, similar to those in Problem 8.1, in Problem 8.2.

8.4. Consider that a Flyback converter is operating in the complete demagnetizing mode. Under this mode of operation, derive the voltage transfer ratio V_o/V_{in} in terms of the transformer magnetizing inductance L_{m1} seen from the input-side winding, switching frequency f_s, the duty-ratio D, and the load resistance R.

Forward Converter

In Problems 8.5 through 8.7, in a Forward converter, $V_{in} = 30\,\text{V}$, $N_1 = 10$ turns, $N_2 = 5$ turns, and $N_3 = 10$ turns. The self-inductance of winding 1 is $150\,\mu\text{H}$, and the switching frequency $f_s = 250\,\text{kHz}$. The output voltage is regulated such that $V_o = 5\,\text{V}$. The output filter inductance is $50\,\mu\text{H}$, and the output load is 30 W.

8.5. Calculate and draw the waveforms for v_A, i_L, i_{in}, and i_{D_3} in Figure 8.4b, where i_{in} is the current drawn from the input, and i_{D_3} is the current through the diode D_3.

8.6. If the maximum duty ratio needs to be increased to 0.7, calculate N_1/N_3.

8.7. Why is diode D_1 necessary in Figure 8.4b?

8.8. Consider that a Forward converter is operating in the discontinuous-conduction mode. Under this mode of operation, derive the voltage transfer ratio V_o/V_{in} in terms of the circuit parameters.

Two-Switch Forward Converter

In Problems 8.9 and 8.10, in a two-switch Forward converter, $V_{in} = 30\,\text{V}$, $N_1/N_2 = 2$, and the switching frequency $f_s = 300\,\text{kHz}$. The output voltage is regulated such that $V_o = 5\,\text{V}$. The self-inductance of winding 1 is $150\,\mu\text{H}$, and the output filter inductance is $50\,\mu\text{H}$.

8.9. Calculate and draw waveforms if the output load is 200 W.

8.10. Why is the duty-ratio in this converter limited to 0.5?

Full-Bridge Converter

8.11. In a Full-bridge converter shown in Figure 8.9, $V_{in} = 30\,\text{V}$, $f_s = 300\,\text{kHz}$, and $N_1/N_2 = 4$. The output voltage is regulated by PWM such that $V_o = 5\,\text{V}$. The output power $P_o = 250\,\text{W}$, and the peak-peak ripple in the output inductor current is 10% of its average value at full-load. Calculate the value of the filter-inductor L. Calculate and plot all the waveforms associated with this converter.

Assume the transformer ideal and the flux waveform to be symmetric with the same positive and negative peak amplitudes.

Half-Bridge Converter

8.12. A regulated dc power supply similar to Problem 8.11 is implemented using a Half-Bridge topology shown in Figure 8.15a, where $N_1/N_2 = 2$. Calculate all the waveforms associated with this converter.

Comparison of MOSFETs in Full-Bridge and Half-Bridge Converters

8.13. Compare the voltage and current ratings of MOSFETs in Full-Bridge and Half-Bridge converters of Problems 8.11 and 8.12 respectively.

Push-Pull Converter

8.14. A regulated dc power supply similar to Problem 8.11 is implemented using a Push-Pull topology shown in Figure 8.15b, where $N_1/N_2 = 5$. Calculate all the waveforms associated with this converter.

Simulation Problems

8.15. Simulate a Flyback converter with the following parameters and operating conditions: $V_{in} = 20\,\text{V}$, $V_o = 5\,\text{V}$, $N_1/N_2 = 2$, $L_{m1} = 280\,\mu\text{H}$, the output capacitance $C = 100\,\mu\text{F}$ and the switching frequency $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$. $R_{Load} = 6\,\Omega$.
   (a) Obtain the waveforms for i_{in}, i_{out} and v_o. What is the relationship between i_{in} and i_{out} at the time of transition from the switch to diode, and vice versa?
   (b) What is the value of R_{crit} in this converter?
   (c) For $R = 100\,\Omega$, obtain the waveforms for i_{in}, i_{out} and v_o.

8.16. Simulate a Forward converter with the following parameters and operating conditions: $V_{in} = 20\,\text{V}$, $V_o = 7.5\,\text{V}$, $N_1{:}N_2{:}N_3 = 1$, $L_{m1} = 144\,\mu\text{H}$, the filter-inductor $L = 100\,\mu\text{H}$ and the output capacitance $C = 100\,\mu\text{F}$ and the switching frequency $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$. $R_{Load} = 4\,\Omega$.
   (a) Obtain the waveforms for i_1, i_3, i_{D1}, i_L and v_o. What is the relationship between i_1, i_3, and i_{D1} at the time of transitions when the switch turns-on, turns-off and the core gets demagnetized?
   (b) What is the voltage across the switch?
   (c) What is the value of R_{crit} in this converter?
   (d) For $R = 50\,\Omega$, obtain the waveforms for i_1, i_3, i_{D1}, i_L and v_o.

8.17. Simulate a Full-Bridge converter, with a mid-point rectifier shown in Figure 8.9, with the following parameters and operating conditions: $V_{in} = 175\,\text{V}$, $V_o = 4.5\,\text{V}$, $N_1/N_2 = 25$, $L_{m1} = 10\,\text{mH}$, the filter-inductor $L = 7.5\,\mu\text{H}$ and the output capacitance $C = 100\,\mu\text{F}$, and the switching frequency $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$. $R_{Load} = 0.5\,\Omega$.
   (a) Obtain the waveforms for v_1, v_2, v_2', v_A and v_o. What are their values when all switches are off?
   (b) Plot the waveforms of i_1, i_{D1}, i_{D2} and i_L defined in Figure 8.12. What are their values when all switches are off?
   (c) Based on the converter parameters and the operating conditions, calculate the peak-peak ripple current in i_L and verify your answer with the simulation results.

9

DESIGN OF HIGH-FREQUENCY INDUCTORS AND TRANSFORMERS

9.1 INTRODUCTION

As discussed in Chapter 8, inductors and transformers are needed in switch-mode dc power supplies, where switching frequencies are in excess of 100 kHz. High-frequency inductors and transformers are generally not available off-the-shelf, and must be designed based on the application specifications. A detailed design discussion is presented in Reference [1]. In this chapter, a simple and a commonly used approach called the Area-Product method is presented, where the thermal considerations are ignored. This implies that the magnetic component built on the design basis presented here should be evaluated for its temperature rise and efficiency, and the core and the conductor sizes should be adjusted accordingly.

9.2 BASICS OF MAGNETIC DESIGN

In designing high frequency inductors and transformers, a designer is faced with countless choices. These include choice of core materials, core shapes (some offer better thermal conduction whereas others offer better shielding to stray flux), cooling methods (natural convection versus forced cooling), and losses (lower losses offer higher efficiency at the expense of higher size and weight) to name a few. However, all magnetic design-optimization programs calculate two basic quantities from given electrical specifications:

1. The peak flux density $B_{\max}$ in the magnetic core to limit core losses, and
2. The peak current density $J_{\max}$ in the winding conductors to limit conduction losses.

The design procedure presented in this chapter assumes values for these two quantities based on the intended applications of inductors and transformers. However, they may be far from optimum in certain situations.

9.3 INDUCTOR AND TRANSFORMER CONSTRUCTION

Figures 9.1a and 9.1b represent the cross-section of an inductor and a transformer wound on toroidal cores. In Figure 9.1a for an inductor, the same current i passes through all N turns of a winding. In the transformer of Figure 9.1b, there are two windings where the current i_1 in winding 1, with N_1 bigger cross-section conductors, is in opposite direction to that of i_2 in winding 2 with N_2 smaller cross-section conductors. In each winding, the conductor cross-section is chosen such that the peak current density $J_{\max}$ is not exceeded at the maximum specified current in that winding. The core area A_{core} in Figures 9.1a and b allows the flow of flux lines without exceeding the maximum flux density $B_{\max}$ in the core.

9.4 AREA-PRODUCT METHOD

The area-product method, based on pre-selected values of the peak flux density $B_{\max}$ in the core and the peak current density $J_{\max}$ in the conductors, allows an appropriate core size to be chosen, as described below.

9.4.1 Core Window Area A_{window}

The windows of the toroidal cores in Figures 9.1a and b accommodate the winding conductors, where the conductor cross-sectional area A_{cond} depends on the maximum rms current for which the winding is designed. In the expression for the window area below, the window fill-factor k_w in a range from 0.3 to 0.6 accounts for the fact that the entire area of the window cannot be filled, and the subscript y designates a winding, where in general there may be more than one, like in a transformer

$$A_{window} = \frac{1}{k_w} \sum_{y} (N_y A_{cond,y}) \tag{9.1}$$

In Equation 9.1, the conductor cross-sectional area in winding y depends on its maximum rms current and the maximum allowed current density $J_{\max}$ that is generally chosen to be the same for all windings:

$$A_{cond,y} = \frac{I_{\mathrm{rms},y}}{J_{\max}} \tag{9.2}$$

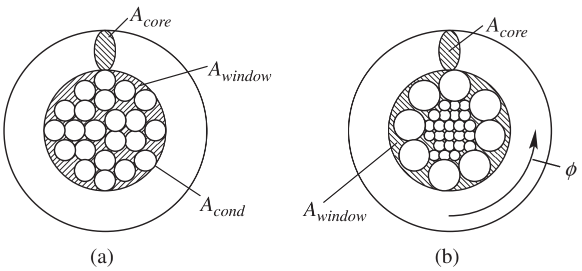


FIGURE 9.1 Cross-sections.

Substituting Equation 9.2 into Equation 9.1,

$$A_{window} = \frac{\sum_{y} (N_y I_{\text{rms},y})}{k_w J_{\max}} \tag{9.3}$$

which shows that the window area is linearly proportional to the number of turns chosen by the designer.

9.4.2 Core Cross-Sectional Area A_{core}

The core cross-sectional area in Figures 9.1a and b depends on the peak flux $\hat{\phi}$ and the choice of the maximum allowed flux density $B_{\max}$ to limit core losses:

$$A_{core} = \frac{\hat{\phi}}{B_{\max}} \tag{9.4}$$

How the flux is produced depends on whether the device is an inductor or a transformer. In an inductor, $\hat{\phi}$ depends on the peak current, where $L\hat{I}$ equals the peak flux linkage $N\hat{\phi}$. Hence,

$$\hat{\phi} = \frac{L\hat{I}}{N} \quad \text{(inductor)} \tag{9.5}$$

In a transformer, based on Faraday's law, the flux depends linearly on the applied volt-seconds and inversely on the number of turns. This is shown in Figure 9.2 for a Forward converter transformer with $N_1 = N_3$, and the duty-ratio D, which is limited to 0.5. Therefore, we can express the peak flux in Figure 9.2 as,

$$\hat{\phi} = \frac{k_{conv} V_{in}}{N_1 f_s} \quad \text{(transformer)} \tag{9.6}$$

where the factor k_{conv} equals D in a Forward converter, and typically has a maximum value of 0.5. The factor k_{conv} can be derived for transformers in other converter topologies

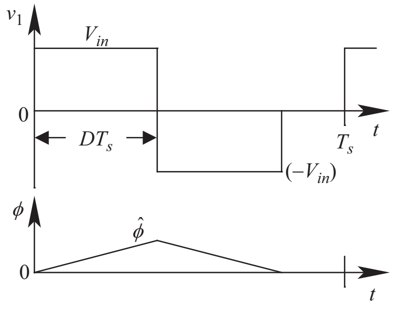


FIGURE 9.2 Waveforms in a transformer for a Forward converter.

based on the specified operating conditions, for example, it equals $D/2$ in a Full-Bridge converter. In general, the peak flux can be expressed in terms of any one of the windings, y for example, as

$$\hat{\phi} = \frac{k_{conv} V_y}{N_y f_s} \quad \text{(transformer)} \tag{9.7}$$

Substituting for $\hat{\phi}$ from Equation 9.5 or 9.7 into Equation 9.4,

$$A_{core} = \frac{L\hat{I}}{NB_{\max}} \quad \text{(inductor)} \tag{9.8}$$

$$A_{core} = \frac{k_{conv} V_y}{N_y f_s B_{\max}} \quad \text{(transformer)} \tag{9.9}$$

Equations 9.8 and 9.9 show that in both cases, the core cross-sectional area is inversely proportional to the number of turns chosen by the designer.

9.4.3 Core Area-Product A_p $(= A_{core} A_{window})$

The core area-product is obtained by multiplying the core cross-sectional area A_{core} with its window area A_{window}:

$$A_p = A_{core} A_{window} \tag{9.10}$$

Substituting for A_{window} and A_{core} from the previous equations,

$$A_p = \frac{L\hat{I} I_{\text{rms}}}{k_w J_{\max} B_{\max}} \quad \text{(inductor)} \tag{9.11}$$

$$A_p = \frac{k_{conv} \sum_y (V_y I_{y,\text{rms}})}{k_w B_{\max} J_{\max} f_s} \quad \text{(transformer)} \tag{9.12}$$

Equations 9.11 and 9.12 show that the area-product that represents the overall size of the device is independent (as it ought to be) of the number of turns. After all, the core and the overall component size should depend on the electrical specifications and the assumed values of $B_{\max}$ and $J_{\max}$, and *not* on the number of turns, which is an internal design variable.

9.4.4 Design Procedure Based on Area-Product A_p

Once we pick the appropriate material and the shape for a core, the cores by various manufacturers are cataloged based on the area-product A_p. Having calculated the value of A_p above, we can select the appropriate core. It should be noted that there are infinite combinations of the core cross-sectional area A_{core} and the window area A_{window} that yield a desired area-product A_p. However, manufacturers take pains in producing cores such that for a given A_p, a core has A_{core} and A_{window} that are individually optimized for power density. Once we select a core, it has specific A_{core} and A_{window}, which allow the number of turns to be calculated as follows:

$$N = \frac{L\hat{I}}{B_{\max} A_{core}} \quad \text{(inductor; from Equation 9.8)} \tag{9.13}$$

$$N_y = \frac{k_{conv} V_y}{A_{core} f_s B_{\max}} \quad \text{(inductor; from Equation 9.9)} \tag{9.14}$$

In an inductor, to ensure that it has the specified inductance, an air gap of an appropriate length ℓ_g is introduced in the path of flux lines. Assuming the chosen core material to have very high permeability, the core inductance is primarily dictated by the reluctance $\Re_g$ of the air gap, such that

$$L \simeq \frac{N^2}{\Re_g} \tag{9.15}$$

where,

$$\Re_g \simeq \frac{\ell_g}{\mu_o A_{core}} \tag{9.16}$$

Using Equations 9.15 and 9.16, the air gap length ℓ_g can be calculated as

$$\ell_g = \frac{N^2 \mu_o A_{core}}{L} \tag{9.17}$$

The above equations are approximate because they ignore the effects of finite core permeability and the fringing flux, which can be substantial. Core manufacturers generally specify measured inductance as a function of the number of turns for various values of the air gap length. In this section, we used a toroidal core for descriptive purposes in which it will be difficult to introduce an air gap. If a toroidal core must be used, it can be picked with a distributed air gap such that it has the effective air gap length as calculated above. The above procedure explained for toroidal cores is equally valid for other types of cores. The actual design described in the next section illustrates the introduction of air gap in a pot core.

9.5 DESIGN EXAMPLE OF AN INDUCTOR

In this example, we will discuss the design of an inductor that has an inductance $L = 100\ \mu\text{H}$. The worst-case current through the inductor is shown in Figure 9.3, where the average current $I = 5.0\,\text{A}$, and the peak-peak ripple $\Delta I = 0.75\,\text{A}$ at the switching frequency $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$. We will assume the following maximum values for the flux density and the current density: $B_{\max} = 0.25\,\text{T}$, and $J_{\max} = 6.0\,\text{A/mm}^2$ (for larger cores, this is typically in a range of 3 to $4\,\text{A/mm}^2$). The window fill factor is assumed to be $k_w = 0.5$.

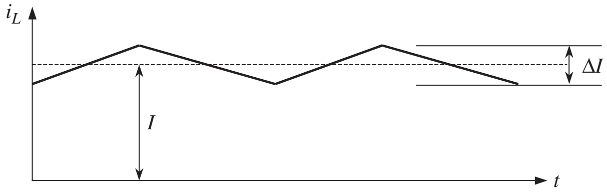


FIGURE 9.3 Inductor current waveforms.

The peak value of the inductor current from Figure 9.3 is $\hat{I} = I + \frac{\Delta I}{2} = 5.375\,\text{A}$. The rms value of the current for the waveform shown in Figure 9.3 can be calculated as $I_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{I^2 + \frac{1}{12}\Delta I^2} \simeq 5.0\,\text{A}$ (the derivation is left as a homework problem).

From Equation 9.11,

$$\text{Area-Product} \quad A_p = \frac{100 \times 10^{-6} \times 5.375 \times 5}{0.5 \times 0.25 \times 6 \times 10^6} \times 10^{12} = 3587\,\text{mm}^4$$

From the Magnetics, Inc. catalog [2], we will select a P-type material, which has the saturation flux density of 0.5 T and is quite suitable for use at the switching frequency of 100 kHz. A pot core 26 × 16, which is shown in Figure 9.4 for a laboratory experiment, has the core Area $A_{core} = 93.1\,\text{mm}^2$ and the window Area $A_{window} = 39\,\text{mm}^2$. Therefore, we will select this core, which has an Area-Product $A_p = 93.1 \times 39 = 3631\,\text{mm}^4$. From Equation 9.13,

$$N = \frac{100\mu \times 5.375}{0.25 \times 93.1 \times 10^{-6}} \simeq 23 \text{ Turns}$$

Winding wire cross sectional area $A_{cond} = I_{\text{rms}}/J_{\text{max}} = 5.0/6.0 = 0.83\,\text{mm}^2$. We will use five strands of American Wire Gauge AWG 25 wires [3], each with a cross-sectional area of $0.16\,\text{mm}^2$, in parallel. From Equation 9.17, the air gap length can be calculated as

$$\ell_g = \frac{23^2 \times 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \times 93.1 \times 10^{-6}}{100\,\mu} \simeq 0.62\,\text{mm}$$

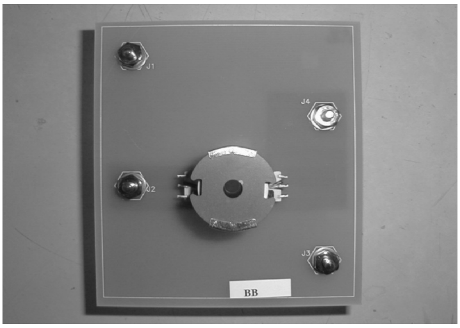


FIGURE 9.4 Pot core mounted on a plug-in board.

9.6 DESIGN EXAMPLE OF A TRANSFORMER FOR A FORWARD CONVERTER

The required electrical specifications for the transformer in a Forward converter are as follows: $f_s = 100\,\text{kHz}$ and $V_1 = V_2 = V_3 = 30\,\text{V}$. Assume the rms value of the current in each winding to be 2.5 A. We will choose the following values for this design: $B_{\max} = 0.25\,\text{T}$ and $J_{\max} = 5\,\text{A/mm}^2$. From Equation 9.12, where $k_w = 0.5$ and $k_{conv} = 0.5$,

$$A_p = \frac{k_{conv}}{k_w f_s B_{\max} J_{\max}} \sum_y \hat{V}_{\mathrm{y}} I_{\mathrm{rms},y} = 1800\,\text{mm}^4$$

For the pot core 22 × 13 [2], $A_{core} = 63.9\,\text{mm}^2$, $A_{window} = 29.2\,\text{mm}^2$, and therefore $A_p = 1866\,\text{mm}^4$. For this core, the winding wire cross-sectional area is obtained as

$$A_{cond,1} = \frac{I_{1,\mathrm{rms}}}{J_{\max}} = \frac{2.5}{5} = 0.5\,\text{mm}^2$$

We will use three strands of AWG 25 wires [3], each with a cross-sectional area of $0.16\,\text{mm}^2$, in parallel for each winding. From Equation 9.14,

$$N_1 = \frac{0.5 \times 30}{(63.9 \times 10^{-6}) \times (100 \times 10^3) \times 0.25} \simeq 10.$$

Hence,

$$N_1 = N_2 = N_3 = 10$$

9.7 THERMAL CONSIDERATIONS

Designs presented here do not include eddy current losses in the windings, which can be very substantial due to proximity effects. These proximity losses in a conductor are due to the high-frequency magnetic field generated by other conductors in close proximity. These proximity losses can be minimized by designing inductors with a single-layer construction. In transformers, windings can be interleaved to minimize these losses, as described in detail in [1]. Therefore, the area-product method discussed in this chapter is a good starting point, but the designs must be evaluated for temperature rise due to additional losses.

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design*, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).
2. Magnetics, Inc. Ferrite Cores, www.mag-inc.com.
3. Wire Gauge Comparison Chart, http://www.engineeringtoolbox.com/wire-gauges-d_419.html.

PROBLEMS

Inductor Design

9.1. Derive the expression for the rms current for the current waveform in Figure 9.3.

9.2. In the design example of the inductor in section 9.5 of this chapter, the core has an area $A_{core} = 93.1\,\text{mm}^2$, the mean magnetic path length $\ell = 37.6\,\text{mm}$, and the relative permeability of the core material is $\mu_r = \mu_m/\mu_o = 5000$. Calculate the inductance with 23 turns if the air gap is not introduced in this core in the flux path.

9.3. In the inductor design presented in section 9.5 of this chapter, what is the reluctance offered by the magnetic core as compared to that offered by the air gap, if the mean magnetic path length $\ell = 37.6\,\text{mm}$ of the core?

9.4. In Problem 9.2, what is the maximum current that will cause the peak flux density to reach 0.25 T?

9.5. In the inductor designed in section 9.5 of this chapter, what will be the inductance and the maximum current that can be passed without exceeding the $B_{\max}$ specified, if the air gap introduced by mistake is only one-half of the required value?

Transformer Design

9.6. In the design example of the transformer in section 9.6 of this chapter, the core has an area $A_{core} = 63.9\,\text{mm}^2$, the magnetic path $\ell = 31.2\,\text{mm}$, and the relative permeability of the core material is $\mu_r = \mu_m/\mu_o = 5000$. Calculate the peak magnetizing current at duty-ratio of 0.5 in this example.

9.7. What is the tertiary winding conductor diameter needed for the magnetizing current calculated in Problem 9.6?

9.8. Derive k_{conv} for transformers in Two-Switch Forward, Half-Bridge, and Push-Pull converters.

10

SOFT-SWITCHING IN DC-DC CONVERTERS AND CONVERTERS FOR INDUCTION HEATING AND COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS

10.1 INTRODUCTION

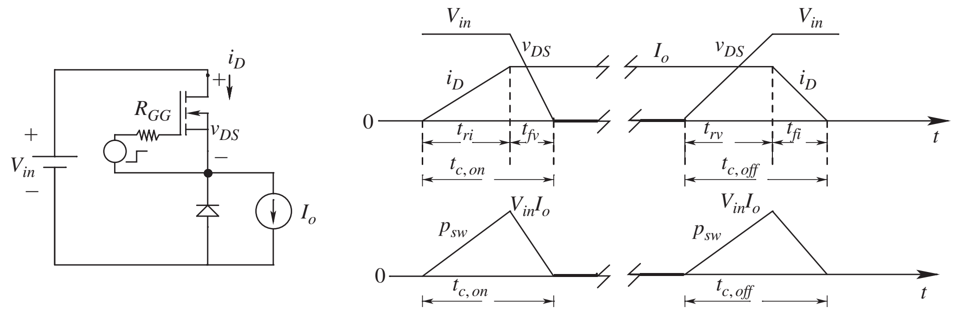
In converters so far, we have discussed hard switching in the switching power-pole, as described in Chapter 2. In this chapter, we will look at the problems associated with hard switching, and some of the practical circuits where this problem can be minimized with soft-switching.

10.2 HARD-SWITCHING IN SWITCHING POWER-POLES

In the switching power-pole repeated in Figure 10.1a, the hard-switching waveforms are as shown in Figure 10.1b, which were discussed in Chapter 2. Because of the simultaneously high voltage and current associated with the transistor during the switching transition, the switching power losses in the transistor increase linearly proportional to the switching frequency and the times $t_{c(on)}$ and $t_{c(off)}$ shown in Figure 10.1b, assuming an ideal diode,

$$P_{sw} \propto f_s\left(t_{c(on)} + t_{c(off)}\right) \tag{10.1}$$

In hard-switching converters, in addition to the switching power losses decreasing the energy efficiency, the other problems are device stresses, thermal management of power losses, and electromagnetic interference resulting from high di/dt and dv/dt due to fast transitions in the converter voltages and currents. The above problems are



(a) (b)

FIGURE 10.1 Hard switching in a power-pole.

exacerbated by the presence of the stray capacitances and leakage inductances associated with the converter layout and the components.

In order to reduce the overall converter size, while maintaining high energy efficiency, the trend is to design dc-dc converters operating at as high a switching frequency as possible (typically 100–200 kHz in small power ratings), using fast-switching MOSFETs. At high switching frequency, the switching power losses become unacceptable if hard-switching is used, and hence soft-switching is often employed, as briefly described in this chapter.

The problems described above, associated with hard-switching, can be minimized by means of the following:

- Circuit layout to reduce stray capacitances and inductances.
- Snubbers to reduce di/dt and dv/dt.
- Gate-drive control to reduce di/dt and dv/dt.
- Soft-switching.

It is always recommended to have a layout to reduce stray capacitances and inductances. Snubbers consist of passive elements (R, C, and possibly a diode) to reduce di/dt and dv/dt during the switching transient, by shaping the switching trajectory. The trend in modern power electronics is to use snubbers only in transformer-isolated dc-dc converters, where the leakage inductance associated with the high-frequency transformer can be substantial, in spite of a good circuit layout. Generally, snubbers do not reduce the overall losses; rather they shift some of the switching losses in the transistor to the snubber resistor. A detailed discussion of snubbers is beyond the scope of this book and the reader is advised to refer to [1].

By controlling the gate voltage of MOSFETs and IGBTs, it is possible to slow down the turn-on and turn-off speed, thereby resulting in reduced di/dt and dv/dt, at the expense of higher switching losses in the transistor. The above techniques, at best, result in a partial solution to the problems of hard-switching.

However, there are certain topologies and control, as described in the next section, that allow soft-switching that essentially eliminate the drawbacks of hard-switching without creating new problems.

10.3 SOFT-SWITCHING IN SWITCHING POWER-POLES

There are many such circuits and control techniques proposed in the literature, most of which may make the problem of EMI and the overall losses worse due to large conduction losses in the switches and other passive components. Avoiding these topologies, only a few soft-switching circuits are practical.

The goal in soft-switching is that the switching transition in the power-pole occurs under very favorable conditions, that is, the switching transistor has a zero voltage and/or zero current associated with it. Based on these conditions, the soft-switching circuits can be classified as follows:

- ZVS (zero voltage switching), and
- ZCS (zero current switching)

We will consider only the converter circuits using MOSFETs, which result in ZVS (zero voltage switching). The reason is that, based on Equation 10.1, soft-switching is of interest at high switching frequencies where MOSFETs are used. In MOSFETs operating at high switching frequencies, a significant reduction of switching loss is achieved by *not* dissipating the charge associated with the junction capacitance inside the MOSFET each time it turns on. This implies that for a meaningful soft-switching, the MOSFETs should be turned on under a zero voltage switching (ZVS) condition. As we will see shortly, the turn-off also occurs at ZVS.

10.3.1 Zero Voltage Switching (ZVS)

To illustrate the ZVS principle, the intrinsic anti-parallel diode of the MOSFET is shown as being distinct in Figures 10.2a and 10.2b, where a capacitor is used in parallel. This MOSFET is connected in a circuit such that before applying the gate voltage to turn the MOSFET on, the switch voltage is brought to zero and the anti-parallel diode is conducting as shown in Figure 10.2a. This results in an ideal lossless turn on at ZVS. At turn-off, as shown in Figure 10.2b, the capacitor across the switch results in an essentially ZVS turn-off where the current through the MOSFET channel is removed while the voltage across the device remains small (essentially zero) due to the parallel capacitor. This ZVS principle is illustrated by modifying the synchronous-rectified Buck dc-dc converter, as discussed below.

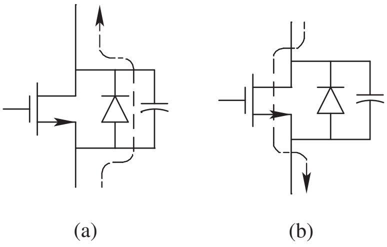


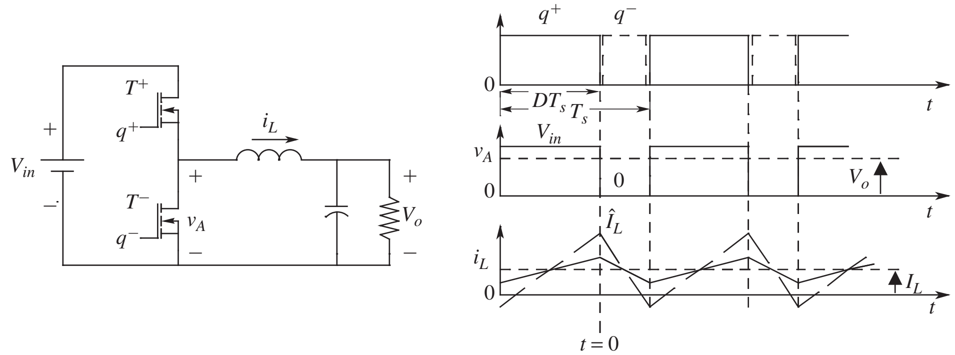
FIGURE 10.2 ZVS in a MOSFET.

10.3.2 Synchronous Buck Converter with ZVS

As discussed in section 3.10 of Chapter 3, a synchronous-rectified Buck dc-dc converter, used in applications where the output voltage is very low, is shown in Figure 10.3a where the diode is replaced by another MOSFET and the two MOSFETs are provided complimentary gate signals q^+ and q^-. The waveforms associated with this synchronous Buck converter are shown in Figure 10.3b, where the inductor is large such that the inductor-current ripple is small (shown by the solid curve in Figure 10.3b), and the inductor current remains positive in the direction shown in Figure 10.3a in the continuous conduction mode.

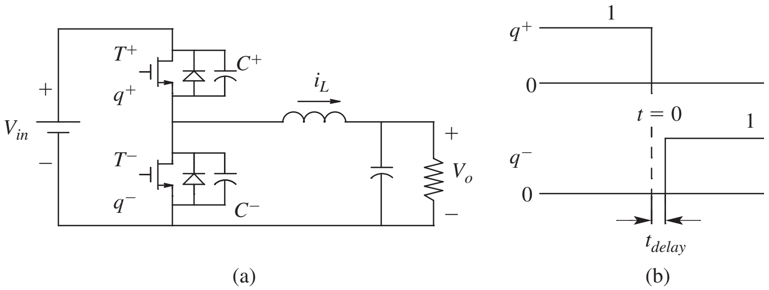
To achieve ZVS, the circuit of Figure 10.3a is modified as shown in Figure 10.4a by showing the internal diode of the MOSFET explicitly, and adding small external capacitances (in addition to the junction capacitances inherent in MOSFETs). The inductance value in this circuit is chosen to be much smaller such that the inductor current has a waveform shown dotted in Figure 10.3b with a large ripple, such that the current i_L is both positive as well negative during every switching cycle.

We will consider the transition at the time $t = 0$ labeled in Figure 10.3b and Figure 10.4b, when the inductor current is at its peak $\hat{I}_L$ in Figure 10.4a. The gate signal q^+ of the transistor T^+, which is initially conducting $\hat{I}_L$, goes to zero, while q^- remains zero, as shown in Figure 10.4b. The transition time during which the current transfers



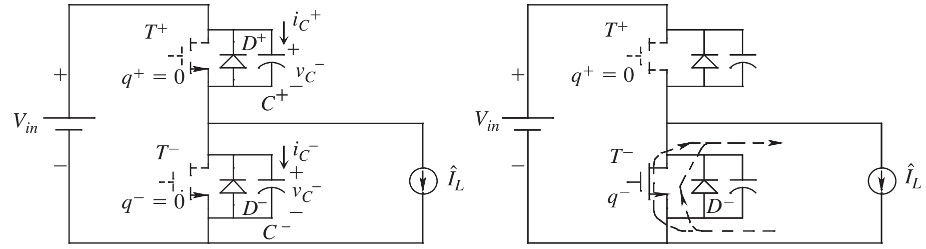
(a) (b)

FIGURE 10.3 Synchronous-rectified Buck converter.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 10.4 Synchronous-rectified Buck converter with ZVS.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 10.5 Transition in synchronous-rectified Buck converter with ZVS.

from T^+ to T^- is very short, and it is reasonable to assume for discussion purposes that the inductor current remains constant at $\hat{I}_L$ as shown in Figure 10.5a.

In the circuit of Figure 10.5a with both q and q^- equal to zero, initially $v_{C^+}(0) = 0$ and $v_{C^-}(0) = V_{in}$, where from Kirchhoff's law these two voltages must add to the input voltage,

$$v_{C^+} + v_{C^-} = V_{in} \tag{10.2}$$

As the current through T^+ declines, equal and opposite currents flow through the two capacitors in Figure 10.5a, which can be derived from Equation 10.2 as follows, assuming equal capacitances C: differentiating both sides of Equation 10.2 and multiplying both sides by C,

$$C\frac{d}{dt}v_{C^+} + C\frac{d}{dt}v_{C^-} = 0 \tag{10.3}$$

$$i_{C^+} + i_{C^-} = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad i_{C^+} = -i_{C^-} \tag{10.4}$$

As the current through T^+ declines, a positive i_{C^+} causes v_{C^+} to rise from 0, and a negative i_{C^-} causes v_{C^-} to decline from its initial value of V_{in}. If this voltage transition happens slowly compared to the current fall time of the MOSFET T^+, then the turn-off of T^+ is achieved at essentially zero voltage (ZVS). After the current through T^+ has gone to zero, applying the Kirchhoff's current law in Figure 10.5a and using Equation 10.4 results in,

$$i_{C^+} = -\,i_{C^-} = \frac{\hat{I}_L}{2} \tag{10.5}$$

In Figure 10.5a, during the turn-off transition of T^+, v_{C^+} rises to V_{in} and v_{C^-} declines to 0. The voltage v_{C^-} cannot become negative because of the diode D^- (assuming an ideal diode with zero forward voltage drop), which begins to conduct the entire i_L in Figure 10.5b, marking the ZVS turn-off of T^+.

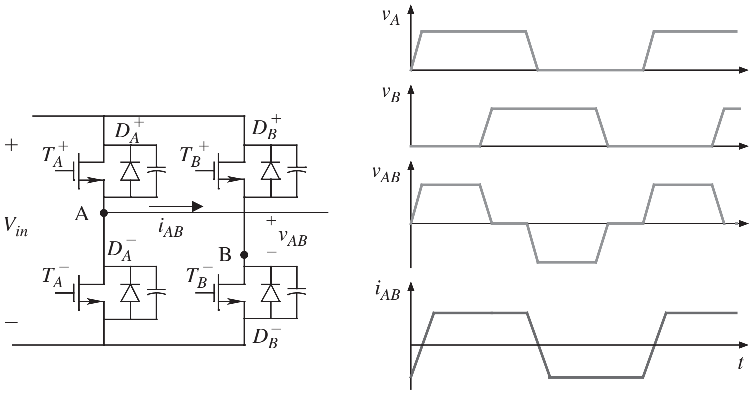
Once D^- begins to conduct, the voltage is zero across T^-, which is applied a gate signal q^- to turn-on, as shown in Figure 10.4b, thus resulting in the ZVS turn-on of T^-. Subsequently, the entire inductor current begins to flow through the channel of T^- in Figure 10.5b. The important item to note here is that the gate signal to T^- is appropriately delayed by an interval T_{delay} shown in Figure 10.4b, making sure that q^- is applied after D^- begins to conduct.

The next half-cycle in this converter is similar with the ZVS turn-off of T^-, followed by the ZVS turn-on of T^+, facilitated by the negative peak of the inductor current.

Although this Buck converter results in ZVS turn-on and turn-off of both transistors, the inductor current has a large ripple, which will also make the size of the filter capacitor large since it has to carry the inductor current ripple. In order to make this circuit practical, the overall ripple that the output capacitor has to carry can be made much smaller (similar ripple reduction occurs in the current drawn from the input source) by interleaving of two or more such converters, as discussed in section 3.11 of Chapter 3. Another advantage of this converter is its ability to respond rapidly to load change.

10.3.3 Phase-Shift Modulated (PSM) DC-DC Converters

Another practical soft-switching technology is the phase-shift modulated (PSM) dc-dc converter shown in Figure 10.6a. It is a variation of the PWM dc-dc converters discussed in Chapter 8.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 10.6 Phase-Shift Modulated (PSM) DC-DC Converter.

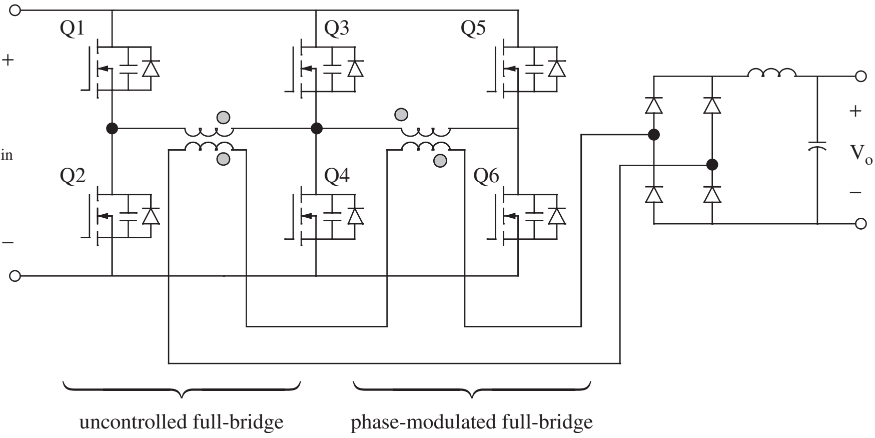


FIGURE 10.7 A superior hybrid topology to achieve ZVS down to no load [3–5].

The switches in each power-pole of the PSM converter operate at nearly 50% duty-ratio, and the regulation of the output voltage is provided by shifting the output of one switching power-pole with respect to the other, as shown in Figure 10.6b, to control the zero-voltage intervals in the transformer primary voltage v_{AB}.

To provide the ZVS turn-on and turn-off of switches, a capacitor is placed across each switch. This topology makes use of the transformer leakage inductance and the magnetizing current. The operation of this circuit and a superior hybrid topology shown in Figure 10.7, patented by the University of Minnesota, are fully described in [3–5].

10.4 INVERTERS FOR INDUCTION HEATING AND COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS

It is possible to achieve soft-switching in converters for induction heating and compact fluorescent lamps by using a half-bridge converter with soft-switching, shown Figure 10.8.

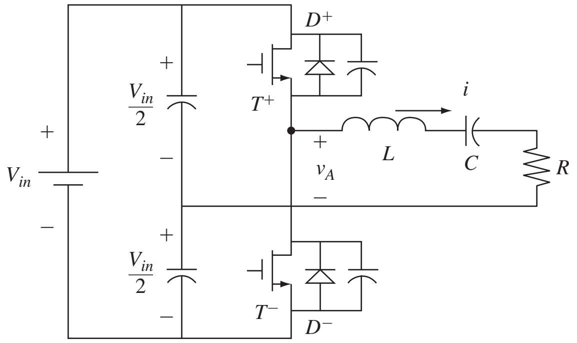


FIGURE 10.8 Half-Bridge resonant converter.

It consists of two dc capacitors that establish the mid-point such that each capacitor has $V_{in}/2$ across them. The load in this generic circuit is represented by a resistance R in series with the resonant circuit elements L and C, which have a resonant frequency,

$$f_o = \frac{1}{2\pi}\frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} \tag{10.6}$$

The switching frequency f_s is selected to be greater than the resonant frequency,

$$f_s > f_o \tag{10.7}$$

In Figure 10.8, two switches are switched with essentially 50% duty-ratio. This results in v_A which has a square waveform as shown in Figure 10.9. Because the switching frequency in the resonant circuit is higher than the resonant frequency, this circuit appears as inductive at the switching frequency. Therefore, the current i lags behind the voltage waveform, as shown in Figure 10.9. Since the impedance of the resonant circuit will be much higher at the harmonic frequency of the input voltage, the current will have essentially a sinusoidal waveform as shown in Figure 10.9.

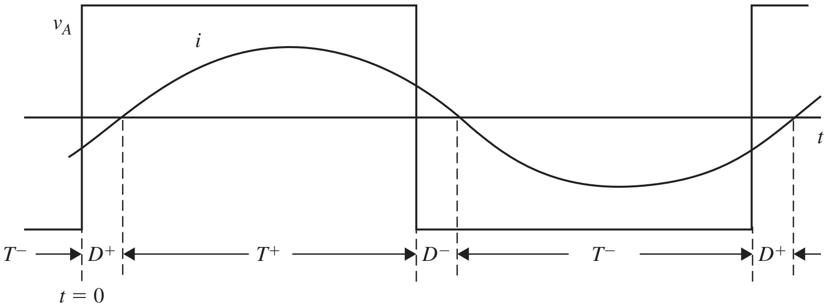


FIGURE 10.9 Converter output waveforms.

At $t = 0$, T^- is forced to turn-off, essentially at ZVS due to lossless capacitors, and after a brief period during which capacitor voltages change, the current begins to flow through D^+. As soon as D^+ begins to conduct, T^+ is gated on, and the current can flow through it when it becomes positive. At $T_s/2$, T^+ is forced to turn-off at essential ZVS and the next half-cycle ensues.

A detailed description of such resonant circuits is provided in [1] and an excellent reference for electronics ballast is [6].

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).
2. R. Ayyanar, N. Mohan, and E. Persson, "Soft-Switching in DC-DC Converters: Principles, Practical Topologies, Design Techniques, Latest Developments," Tutorial at IEEE-APEC 2002.
3. R. Ayyanar and N. Mohan, U.S. Patent 6,310,785, University of Minnesota, 2001.
4. R. Ayyanar and N. Mohan, "Novel soft-switching dc-dc converter with full ZVS-range and reduced filter requirement—Part I: Regulated output applications", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, vol. 16 (2001), March 2001, pp. 184−192.
5. R. Ayyanar and N. Mohan, "Novel soft-switching dc-dc converter with full ZVS-range and reduced filter requirement—Part II: Constant-input, variable output applications", IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics, vol. 16 (2001), March 2001, pp. 193−200.
6. T. Ribarich and J. Ribarich, "A New Procedure for High-Frequency Electronics Ballast Design," IEEE IAS Annual Meeting, New Orleans, LA, Oct. 1997.

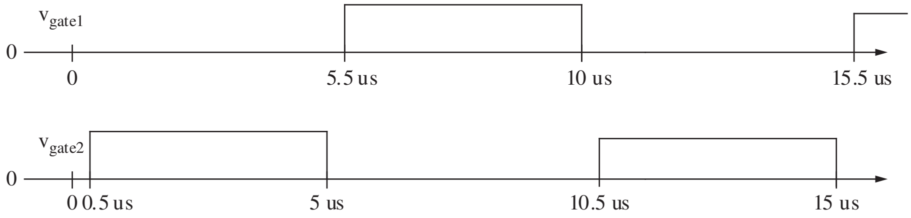
PROBLEMS

10.1. In a synchronous-rectified Buck converter with ZVS shown in Figure 10.4a, $V_{in} = 12$ V, $V_o = 5$ V, $f_s = 100$ kHz, and the maximum load is 25 W. Calculate the filter inductance such that the negative peak current through the inductor is at least 1.5 Amps.

10.2. In Problem 10.1, calculate the capacitances across the MOSFETs if the charge/discharge time is to be no more than 0.5 μs.

Simulation Problems

10.3. In a Synchronous Buck Converter such as that shown in Figure 10.4a, $V_{in} = 21$ V, $V_o = 10$ V, $L_{m1} = 280$ μH, the filter-inductor $L = 20$ μH and the output capacitance $C = 1{,}000$ μF and the switching frequency $f_s = 100$ kHz. $R_{Load} = 10.0$ Ω. The gate voltages are as shown below:



(a) Obtain the waveforms for v_A and i_L.
(b) Obtain the voltage across and the current through one of the switches. Comment on the zero voltage/current switchings.
(c) Around the blanking time, obtain the currents through one of the switches and through its associated diode and the snubber capacitors.

10.4. In a resonant converter shown in Figure 10.8, $V_{in} = 155$ V, $L = 100$ μH, $C = 17.4$ nF and $R = 15.0$ Ω. The snubber capacitors across the MOSFETs are 1.0 nF each. The switching frequency $f_s = 125$ kHz.
(a) Obtain the waveforms for v_A and i_L.
(b) By Fourier analysis, obtain and plot v_{A1} and i_{L1} waveforms, where the subscript 1 refers to the fundamental frequency component. Why does the current lag the voltage?
(c) Plot the voltage across the capacitor and the current through it.

11

APPLICATIONS OF SWITCH-MODE POWER ELECTRONICS IN MOTOR DRIVES, UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLIES, AND POWER SYSTEMS

11.1 INTRODUCTION

Electric motor drives (ac and dc), uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) and power systems are major applications areas of switch-mode power electronics. In these applications, the role of power electronics converters is to synthesize appropriate voltages of desirable amplitude, frequency, phase, and the number of phases, where the power flow is often bi-directional. This synthesis process is described in detail in the next chapter. The purpose of this chapter is to present various applications and describe the voltage and current requirements they impose on the power electronics converters.

11.2 ELECTRIC MOTOR DRIVES

As described in Chapter 1, Motor drives represent an important application area of power electronics with market value of tens of billions of dollars annually. Figure 11.1 shows the block diagram of an electric-motor drive, or for short, an electric drive. In response to an input command, electric drives efficiently control the speed and the position of the mechanical load. The controller, by comparing the input command for speed and position with the actual values measured through sensors, provides appropriate control signals to the power-processing unit (PPU) consisting of power semiconductor devices.

As Figure 11.1 shows, the power-processing unit gets its power from the utility source with single-phase or three-phase sinusoidal voltages of a fixed frequency and constant amplitude. The power-processing unit, in response to the control inputs,

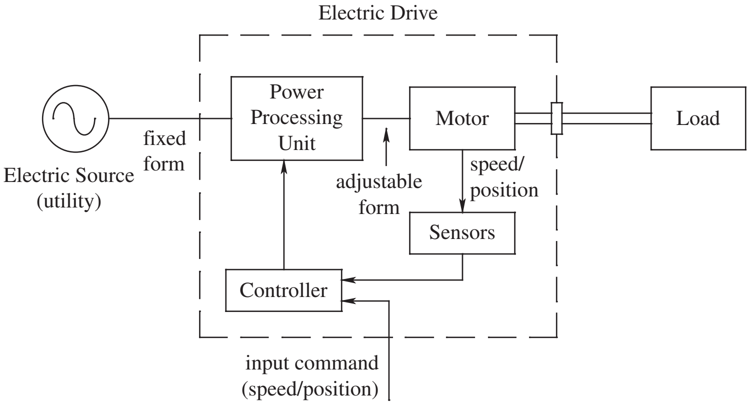


FIGURE 11.1 Block diagram of an electric drive system.

efficiently converts these fixed-form input voltages into an output of the appropriate form (in frequency, amplitude, and the number of phases) that is optimally suited for operating the motor. The input command to the electric drive in Figure 11.1 may come from a process computer, which considers the objectives of the overall process and issues a command to control the mechanical load. However, in general-purpose applications, electric drives operate in an open-loop manner without any feedback.

We will briefly examine various types of electric machines in terms of their terminal characteristics in steady state in order to determine the voltage and current ratings in designing the power electronics interface.

11.2.1 DC Motors

DC motors were widely used in the past for all types of drive applications, and they continue to be used for controlling speed and position. There are two designs of dc machines: stators consisting of either permanent magnets or a field winding. The power-processing units can also be classified into two categories, either switch-mode power converters that operate at a high switching frequency as discussed in the next chapter or line-commutated, thyristor converters, which are discussed later in Chapter 14. In this chapter, we will describe permanent-magnet dc motors, which are usually supplied by switch-mode power electronic converters.

Figure 11.2 shows a cut-away view of a dc motor. It shows a permanent-magnet stator, a rotor that carries a winding, a commutator, and the brushes. In dc machines, the stator establishes a uniform flux ϕ_f in the air gap in the radial direction (the subscript "f" is for field). If permanent magnets like those shown in Figure 11.2 are used, the air gap flux density established by the stator remains constant. A field winding whose current can be varied can be used to achieve an additional degree of control over the air gap flux density.

As shown in Figure 11.2, the rotor slots contain a winding, called the armature winding, which handles electrical power for conversion to (or from) mechanical power at the rotor shaft. In addition, there is a commutator affixed to the rotor. On its outer surface, the commutator contains copper segments, which are electrically insulated from each other by means of mica or plastic. The coils of the armature winding are connected to these commutator segments so that a stationary dc source can supply voltage and current to the rotating commutator by means of stationary carbon brushes that rest on top of the

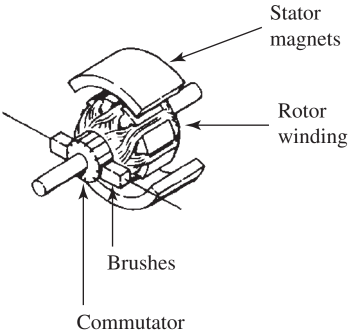


FIGURE 11.2 Exploded view of a dc motor.
Source: Electro-Craft Corporation.

commutator. The wear due to the mechanical contact between the commutator and the brushes requires periodic maintenance, which is the main drawback of dc machines.

In a dc machine, the magnitude and the direction of the electromagnetic torque depend on the armature current i_a. Therefore, in a permanent-magnet dc machine, the electromagnetic torque produced by the machine is linearly related to a machine torque-constant k_T, which is unique to a given machine and is specified in its data sheets,

$$T_{em} = k_T \, i_a \tag{11.1}$$

Similarly, the induced emf e_a depends only on the rotational speed ω_m, and can be related to it by a voltage-constant k_E, which is unique to a given machine and specified in its data sheets,

$$e_{\mathrm{a}} = k_{\mathrm{E}} \, \omega_m \tag{11.2}$$

Equating the mechanical power ($\omega_m T_{em}$) to the electrical power ($e_a i_a$), the torque-constant k_T and the voltage-constant k_E are exactly the same numerically in MKS units,

$$k_T = k_E \tag{11.3}$$

The direction of the armature current i_a determines the direction of currents through the conductors. Therefore, the direction of the electromagnetic torque produced by the machine also depends on the direction of i_a. This explains, how a dc machine while rotating in a forward or reverse direction can be made to go from motoring mode (where the speed and torque are in the same direction) to its generator mode (where the speed and torque are in the opposite direction) by reversing the direction of i_a.

Applying a reverse-polarity dc voltage to the armature terminals makes the armature current flow in the opposite direction. Therefore, the electromagnetic torque is reversed, and after some time reversing the direction of rotation and the polarity of induced emfs in conductors, which depends on the direction of rotation.

The above discussion shows that a dc machine can easily be made to operate as a motor or as a generator in forward or reverse direction of rotation.

It is convenient to discuss a dc machine in terms of its equivalent circuit of Figure 11.3, which shows conversion between electrical and mechanical power. The armature current

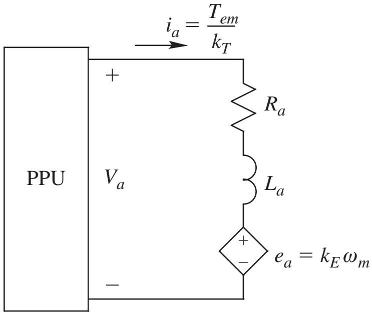


FIGURE 11.3 DC motor equivalent circuit.

i_a produces the electromagnetic torque $T_{em}(= k_T i_a)$ necessary to rotate the mechanical load at a speed. Across the armature terminals, the rotation at the speed of ω_m induces a voltage, called the back-emf $e_a(= k_E \omega_m)$, represented by a dependent voltage-source.

The applied voltage v_a from the PPU overcomes the back-emf e_a and causes the current i_a to flow. Recognizing that there is a voltage drop across both the armature winding resistance R_a (which includes the voltage drop across the carbon brushes) and the armature winding inductance L_a, we can write the equation of the electrical side as,

$$v_a = e_a + R_a \mathrm{i}_a + L_a \frac{di_a}{dt} \tag{11.4}$$

On the mechanical side, the electromagnetic torque produced by the motor overcomes the mechanical-load torque T_L to produce acceleration:

$$\frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = \frac{1}{J_{eq}}(T_{em} - T_L) \tag{11.5}$$

where $J_{eq}(= J_m + J_L)$ is the total effective value of the combined inertia of the dc machine and the mechanical load.

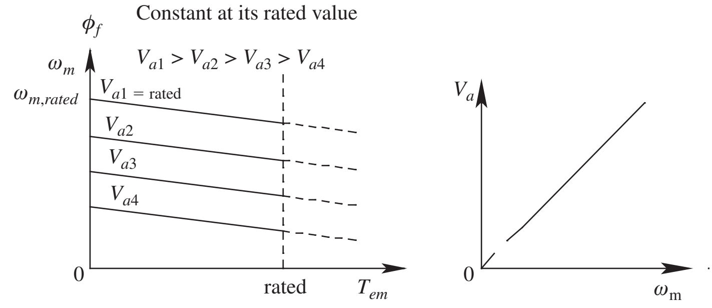
Note that the electric and the mechanical systems are coupled. The torque T_{em} in the mechanical system (Equation 11.1) depends on the electrical current i_a. The back-emf e_a in the electrical system (Equation 11.2) depends on the mechanical speed ω_m. The electrical power absorbed from the electrical source by the motor is converted into mechanical power and vice versa. In a dc steady state, with a voltage V_a applied to the armature terminals and a load-torque $T_L(= T_{em})$ being supplied to the load, the inductance L_a in the equivalent circuit of Figure 11.3 does not play a role. Hence, in Figure 11.3,

$$I_a = \frac{T_{em}(= T_L)}{k_T} \tag{11.6}$$

$$\omega_m = \frac{E_a}{k_E} = \frac{V_a - R_a I_a}{k_E} = \frac{V_a - R_a(T_{em}/k_T)}{k_E} \tag{11.7}$$

11.2.1.1 Requirements Imposed by DC Machines on the PPU

Based on Equations 11.6 and 11.7, the steady state torque-speed characteristics for various values of V_a are plotted in Figure 11.4a. Neglecting the voltage drop across the armature resistance in Equation 11.7, the terminal voltage V_a varies linearly with the speed ω_m, as plotted in Figure 11.4b. At low values of speed, the voltage drop across the armature resistance can be a significant component of the terminal voltage, and hence the relationship in Figure 11.4a in this region is shown dotted.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 11.4 (a) Torque-Speed characteristics, and (b) V_a versus ω_m.

In summary, in dc-motor drives, the voltage rating of the power-processing unit is dictated by the maximum speed and the current rating is dictated by the maximum load torque being supplied.

11.2.2 Permanent-Magnet AC Machines

Sinusoidal-waveform, permanent-magnet ac (PMAC) drives are used in applications where high efficiency and high power density are required in controlling the speed and position. In trade literature, they are also called "brushless dc" drives. We will examine these machines for speed and position control applications, usually in small (<10 kW) power ratings, where these drives have three-phase ac stator windings and the rotor has dc excitation in the form of permanent magnets. In such drives, the stator windings of the machine are supplied by controlled currents, which require a closed-loop operation, as described later in this section.

We will consider 2-pole machines, like the one shown schematically in Figure 11.5a. This analysis can be generalized to p-pole machines where $p > 2$. The stator contains three-phase, wye-connected windings, each of which produces a sinusoidally-distributed flux-density distribution in the air gap when supplied by a current.

The permanent-magnet pole pieces mounted on the rotor surface are shaped to ideally produce a sinusoidally-distributed flux density in the air gap. The rotor flux-density distribution (represented by a vector $\vec{B}_r$) peaks at an axis that is at an angle $\theta_m(t)$ with respect to the a-axis of phase winding a, as shown in Figure 11.5b. As the rotor turns, the entire rotor-produced flux density distribution in the air gap rotates with it and "cuts" the stator-winding conductors and produces emf in phase windings that are sinusoidal functions of time. In the ac steady state, these voltages can be represented by phasors.

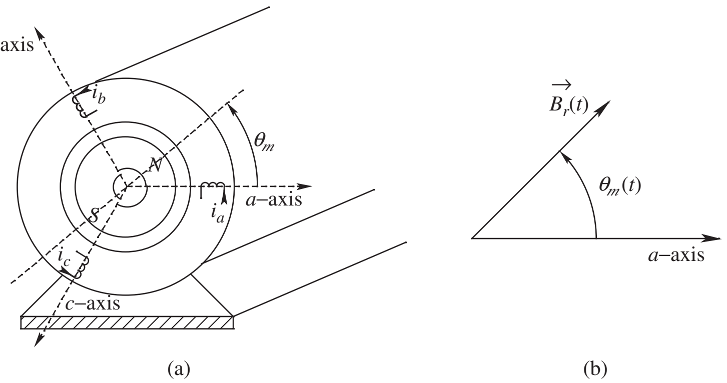


FIGURE 11.5 Two-pole PMAC machine.

Considering phase-a as the reference in Figure 11.5b, the induced voltage in it due to the rotor flux cutting it can be expressed as,

$$\bar{E}_{ma} = E_{\text{rms}} \angle 0^\circ \tag{11.8}$$

It should be noted that by Faraday's law ($e = d\lambda/dt$, where λ is the flux-linkage of the coil), the induced voltage in phase-a peaks when the rotor-flux peak in Figure 11.5a is pointing downward, 90° before it reaches the phase-a magnetic axis. Since the permanent magnets on the rotor produce a constant amplitude flux, the rms magnitude of the induced voltage in each stator phase is linearly related to the rotational speed ω_m by a per-phase voltage-constant $k_{E,phase}$,

$$E_{\text{rms}} = k_{E,phase}\, \omega_m \tag{11.9}$$

An important characteristic of the machines under consideration is that they are supplied through a current-regulated power-processing unit, which controls the currents i_a, i_b, and i_c supplied to the stator at any instant of time. To optimize such that the maximum torque-per-ampere is produced, each phase current in ac steady state is controlled in phase with the induced voltage. Therefore, with the voltage expressed in Equation 11.8, the current in ac steady state is,

$$\bar{I}_a = I_{\text{rms}} \angle 0^\circ \tag{11.10}$$

In ac steady state, accounting all three-phases, the input electric power, supplied by the current in opposition to the induced back-emf, equals the mechanical output power. Using Equations 11.8 through 11.10,

$$T_{em}\, \omega_m = 3\underbrace{(k_{E,phase}\, \omega_m)}_{E_{\text{rms}}} I_{\text{rms}} \tag{11.11}$$

The torque contribution of each phase is $T_{em}/3$, hence from Equation 11.11,

$$T_{em,phase} = \frac{T_{em}}{3} = k_{E,phase}\, I_{\text{rms}} \tag{11.12}$$

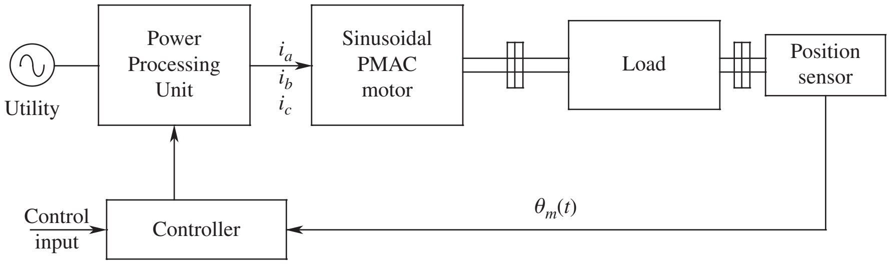


FIGURE 11.6 Block diagram of a PMAC machine.

where the constant that relates the rms current to the per-phase torque is the per-phase torque-constant $k_{T,phase}$, and similar to that in dc machines, in MKS units,

$$k_{T,phase} = k_{E,phase} \tag{11.13}$$

At this point, we should note that PMAC drives constitute a class, which we will call *self-synchronous* motor drives, where the term "*self*" is added to distinguish these machines from the conventional synchronous machines. The reason for this is as follows: in PMAC drives, the stator phase currents are synchronized to the mechanical position of the rotor such that, for example, the current into phase-a, in order to be in phase with the induced-emf, peaks when the rotor-flux peak is pointing downward, 90° before it reaches the phase-a magnetic axis. This explains the necessity for the rotor-position sensor, as shown in the block diagram of such drives in Figure 11.6.

As shown in the block diagram of Figure 11.6, the task of the controller is to enable the power-processing unit to supply the desired currents to the PMAC motors. The reference torque signal is generated from the outer speed and position loops. The rotor position θ_m is measured by the position sensor connected to the shaft. Knowing the torque constant $k_{T,phase}$ allows us to calculate the rms value of the reference current from Equation 11.12. Knowing the current rms value and θ_m allows the reference currents i_a, i_b, and i_c for the three phases to be calculated, which the PPU delivers at any instant of time.

The electromagnetic torque acts on the mechanical system connected to the rotor, and the resulting speed ω_m can be obtained from the equation below:

$$\frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = \frac{T_{em} - T_L}{J_{eq}} \Rightarrow \omega_m(t) = \omega_m(0) + \frac{1}{J_{eq}} \int_0^t (T_{em} - T_L) \cdot d\tau \tag{11.14}$$

where J_{eq} is the combined motor-load inertia and T_L is the load torque, which may include friction. The rotor position $\theta_m(t)$ is,

$$\theta_m(t) = \theta_m(0) + \int_0^t \omega_m(\tau) \cdot d\tau \tag{11.15}$$

where $\theta_m(0)$ is the rotor position at time $t = 0$. Similar to a dc machine, it is convenient to discuss a PMAC machine in terms of its equivalent circuit of Figure 11.7, which shows conversion between electrical and mechanical power.

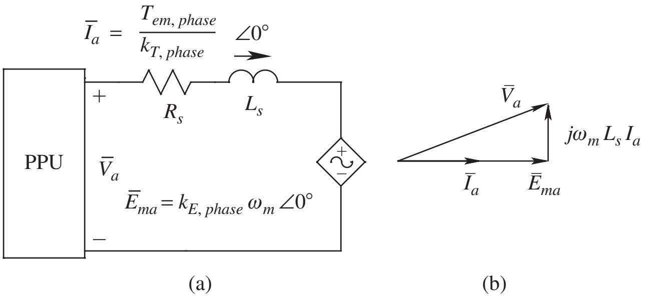

$\bar{I}_a = \frac{T_{em,phase}}{k_{T,phase}} \angle 0°$
R_s
L_s
PPU
+
$\bar{V}_a$
−
$\bar{E}_{ma} = k_{E,phase}\,\omega_m \angle 0°$
$\bar{V}_a$
$j\omega_m L_s I_a$
$\bar{I}_a$
$\bar{E}_{ma}$
(a)
(b)

FIGURE 11.7 Equivalent circuit diagram and the phasor diagram of PMAC (2-pole).

In the ac steady state, using phasors, the current $\bar{I}_a$ is ensured by the feedback control to be in phase with the phase-a induced voltage $\bar{E}_{ma}$. The phase currents produce the total electromagnetic torque necessary to rotate the mechanical load at a speed ω_m. The induced back-emf $\bar{E}_{ma} = E_{\text{rms}} \angle 0°$, whose rms magnitude is linearly proportional to the speed of rotation ω_m, is represented by a dependent voltage-source.

The applied voltage $\bar{V}_a$ in Figure 11.7a overcomes the back-emf $\bar{E}_{ma}$ and causes the current $\bar{I}_a$ to flow. The frequency of the phasors in Hz equals $\omega_m/(2\pi)$ in a 2-pole PMAC machines. There is a voltage drop across both the per-phase stator winding resistance R_s (neglected here) and a per-phase inductance L_s, which is the sum of the leakage inductance $L_{\ell s}$ caused by the leakage flux of the stator winding, and L_m due to the effect of the combined flux produced by the currents flowing in the stator phases. The phasor diagram, neglecting R_s, is shown in Figure 11.7b.

11.2.2.1 Requirements Imposed by PMAC Machines on the PPU

In PMAC machines, the speed is independent of the electromagnetic torque developed by the machine, as shown in Figure 11.8a, and depends on the frequency of voltages and currents applied to the stator phases of the machine.

In the per-phase equivalent circuit of Figure 11.7a and the phasor diagram of Figure 11.7b, the back-emf is proportional to the speed ω_m. Similarly, since the electrical

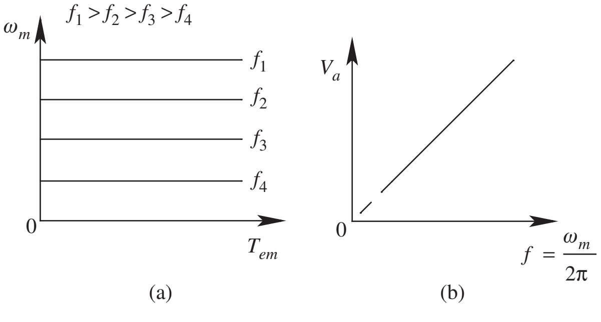


FIGURE 11.8 Torque-speed characteristics and the voltage versus frequency in PMAC.

frequency is linearly related to ω_m, the voltage drop across L_s is also proportional to ω_m. Therefore, neglecting the per-phase stator winding resistance R_s, in the phasor diagram of Figure 11.7b, the voltage phasors are all proportional to ω_m, requiring that the per-phase voltage magnitude that the power-processing unit needs to supply is proportional to the speed ω_m, as plotted in Figure 11.8b.

At very low speeds, this voltage-speed relationship, shown dotted in Figure 11.8b, is approximate, where a higher voltage, called the voltage boost, is needed to overcome the voltage drop across the stator winding resistance R_s; this voltage drop becomes significant at higher torque loading and hence cannot be neglected.

In summary, in PMAC-motor drives, similar to dc drives, the voltage rating of the power-processing unit is dictated by the maximum speed, and the current rating is dictated by the maximum load torque being supplied.

11.2.3 Induction Machines

Induction motors with squirrel-cage rotors are the workhorses of industry because of their low cost and rugged construction. When operated directly from line voltages (a 50- or 60-Hz utility input at essentially a constant voltage), induction motors operate at a nearly constant speed. However, by means of power electronic converters, it is possible to vary their speed efficiently.

Just as in PMAC motors, the stator of an induction motor consists of three-phase windings, distributed in the stator slots. These three windings are displaced by 120° in space with respect to each other, as shown by their axes in Figure 11.9a.

The rotor, consisting of a stack of insulated laminations, has electrically conducting bars of copper or aluminum inserted (molded) through it, close to the periphery in the axial direction. These bars are electrically shorted at each end of the rotor by electrically conducting end-rings, thus producing a conducting cage-like structure, as shown in Figure 11.9b. Such a rotor, called a squirrel-cage rotor, has a low cost, and rugged nature.

Figure 11.10a shows the stator windings whose voltages are shown in the phasor diagram of Figure 11.10b, where the frequency of the applied line voltages to the motor is f in Hz, and V_{rms} is the magnitude in rms,

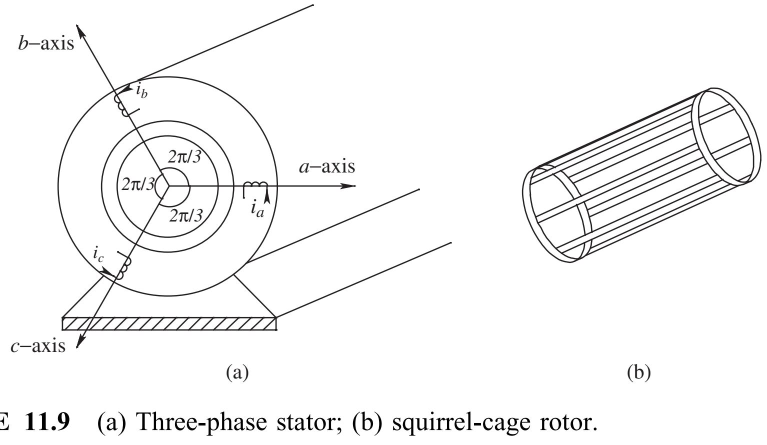
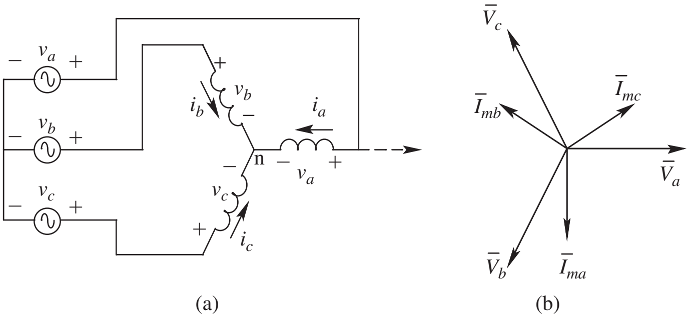


FIGURE 11.9 (a) Three-phase stator; (b) squirrel-cage rotor.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 11.10 Induction machine: applied voltages and magnetizing currents.

$$\bar{V}_a = V_{\text{rms}}\angle 0°,\quad \bar{V}_b = V_{\text{rms}}\angle{-120°},\ \text{and}\ \bar{V}_c = V_{\text{rms}}\ \angle{-240°} \tag{11.16}$$

By Faraday's law, the applied stator voltages given in Equation 11.16 establish a rotating flux-density distribution in the air gap by drawing magnetizing currents of rms value I_m, which are shown in Figure 11.10b:

$$\bar{I}_{ma} = \mathrm{I}_m\angle{-90°},\quad \bar{I}_{mb} = \mathrm{I}_m\angle{-210°},\ \text{and}\ \ \bar{I}_{mc} = \mathrm{I}_m\angle{-330°} \tag{11.17}$$

As these currents vary sinusoidally with time, the combined flux-density distribution in the air gap, produced by these currents, rotates with a constant amplitude at a synchronous speed ω_{syn}, where,

$$\omega_{syn} = 2\pi f\ \left(\omega_{syn} = \frac{2\pi f}{p/2}\quad \text{for a } p\text{-pole machine}\right) \tag{11.18}$$

The rotor in an induction motor turns (due to the electromagnetic torque developed, as will be discussed shortly) at a speed ω_m in the same direction as the rotation of the air gap flux-density distribution, such that $\omega_m < \omega_{syn}$. Therefore, there is a relative speed between the flux-density distribution rotating at ω_{syn} and the rotor conductors at ω_m. This relative speed, that is the speed at which the rotor is "slipping" with respect to the rotating flux-density distribution, is called the slip speed:

$$\textit{slip speed}\quad \omega_{slip} = \omega_{syn} - \omega_m \tag{11.19}$$

By Faraday's Law ($e = B\ell u$), voltages are induced in the rotor bars at the slip frequency due to the relative motion between the flux-density distribution and the rotor, where the slip frequency f_{slip} in terms of the frequency f of the stator voltages and currents is,

$$\textit{slip frequency}\quad f_{slip} = \frac{\omega_{slip}}{\omega_{syn}} f \tag{11.20}$$

Since the rotor bars are shorted at both ends, these induced bar voltages cause slip-frequency currents to flow in the rotor bars. The rotor-bar currents interact with the flux-density distribution established by the stator-applied voltages, and the result is a net electromagnetic torque T_{em} in the same direction as the rotor's rotation.

The sequence of events in an induction machine to meet the load torque demand is as follows: At essentially no load, an induction machine operates nearly at the synchronous speed that depends on the frequency of applied stator voltages (Equation 11.18). As the load torque increases, the motor slows down, resulting in a higher value of slip speed. Higher slip speed results in higher voltages induced in the rotor bars and hence higher rotor-bar currents. Higher rotor-bar currents result in a higher electromagnetic torque to satisfy the increased load-torque demand.

Neglecting second-order effects, the air gap flux is totally determined by the applied stator voltages. Hence, the air gap flux produced by the rotor-bar currents is nullified by the additional currents drawn by the stator windings, which are in addition to the magnetizing currents in Equation 11.17.

In this balanced three-phase sinusoidal steady state analysis, we will neglect second-order effects such as the stator winding resistance and leakage inductance, and the rotor circuit leakage inductance. As shown in Figure 11.11a for phase-a in this per-phase circuit, $\bar{V}_a$ and so on are applied, at a frequency f, which result in magnetizing currents to establish the air gap flux-density distribution in the air gap.

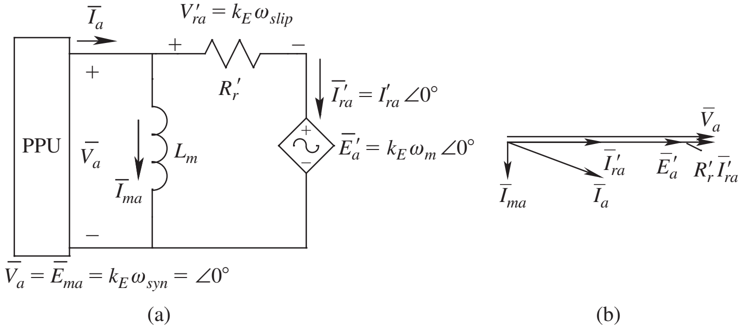
These magnetizing currents are represented as flowing through a magnetizing inductance L_m. The voltage magnitude and the frequency are such that the magnitude of the flux-density distribution in the air gap is at its rated value, and this distribution rotates counter-clockwise at the desired ω_{syn} (Equation 11.18) to induce a back-emf in the stationary stator phase windings such that,

$$\bar{V}_a = \bar{E}_{ma} = k_{E,phase}\,\omega_{syn}\angle 0^\circ \tag{11.21}$$

where, $k_{E,phase}$ is the machine per-phase voltage-constant.

Next, we will consider the effect of the rotor-bar currents. The rotor-bar currents result in additional stator currents (in addition to the magnetizing current), which can be represented on a per-phase basis by a current $\bar{I}'_{ra}$ in-phase with the applied voltage (since the rotor-circuit leakage inductance is ignored), as shown in Figure 11.11a.

$$\bar{I}'_{ra} = I'_{ra}\angle 0^\circ \tag{11.22}$$


$\bar{I}_a$
$\bar{V}'_{ra} = k_E\omega_{slip}$
+
−
+
R'_r
$\bar{I}'_{ra} = I'_{ra}\angle 0^\circ$
PPU
$\bar{V}_a$
L_m
$\bar{I}_{ma}$
$\bar{E}'_a = k_E\omega_m\angle 0^\circ$
−
$\bar{V}_a = \bar{E}_{ma} = k_E\omega_{syn} = \angle 0^\circ$
$\bar{V}_a$
$\bar{I}'_{ra}$
$\bar{E}'_a$
$R'_r\bar{I}'_{ra}$
$\bar{I}_{ma}$
$\bar{I}_a$

(a) (b)

FIGURE 11.11 Induction motor equivalent circuit and phasor diagram.

Note that the torque on the stator is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the torque on the rotor. The flux-density distribution (although produced differently than in PMAC machines) interacts with these stator currents, just like in PMAC machines, and hence the per-phase torque-constant equals the per-phase voltage constant,

$$k_{T,phase} = k_{E,phase} \tag{11.23}$$

The per-phase torque can be expressed as,

$$T_{em,phase} = k_{T,phase}\, I'_{ra} \tag{11.24}$$

This torque at a mechanical speed ω_m results in per-phase electromagnetic power that gets converted to mechanical power, where using Equations 11.23 and 11.24,

$$P_{em,phase} = \omega_m T_{em,phase} = \omega_m\, k_{E,phase}\, I'_{ra} \tag{11.25}$$

In Equation 11.25, $(\omega_m\, k_{E,phase})$ can be considered the back-emf $\bar{E}'_a$, just like in the DC and the PMAC machines, as shown in Figure 11.11a,

$$\bar{E}'_a = \omega_m\, k_{E,phase} \angle 0^\circ \tag{11.26}$$

In the rotor-circuit, the voltages induced depend on the slip-speed ω_{slip}, and overcome the *IR* voltage drop in the rotor bar resistances. The rotor-bar resistances, and the voltage drop and the power losses in them, are represented in the per-phase equivalent circuit of Figure 11.11a by a voltage drop across an equivalent resistance R'_r. Using the Kirchhoff's voltage law in Figure 11.11a,

$$\bar{V}'_{ra} = \underbrace{k_{E,phase}\, \omega_{syn} \angle 0^\circ}_{\bar{E}_{ma}} - \underbrace{k_{E,phase}\, \omega_m \angle 0^\circ}_{\bar{E}'_a} = k_{E,phase}\, \omega_{slip} \angle 0^\circ \tag{11.27}$$

Hence,

$$I'_{ra} = \left(\frac{k_{E,phase}}{R'_r}\right)\omega_{slip} \tag{11.28}$$

Using Equations 11.23, 11.25, and 11.28, the combined torque of all three phases is,

$$T_{em} = \frac{P_{em}}{\omega_m} = \underbrace{\left(3\frac{k^2_{T,phase}}{R'_r}\right)}_{k_{T,\omega_{slip}}} \omega_{slip} \tag{11.29}$$

where $k_{T,\omega_{slip}}$ in the above equation is a machine constant that shows that the torque produced is linearly proportional to the slip speed. Using Equations 11.19 and 11.29,

$$\omega_m = \omega_{syn} - \frac{T_{em}}{k_{T,\omega_{slip}}} \tag{11.30}$$

11.2.3.1 Requirements Imposed by Induction Machines on the PPU

Based on Equation 11.30, the torque-speed characteristics are shown in Figure 11.12 for various applied frequencies to the stator. Based on Equation 11.21, the stator voltage as function of frequency is shown in Figure 11.13 to maintain the peak of the flux-density distribution at its rated value. The relationship between the voltage and the synchronous speed or f shown in Figure 11.13 is approximate. A substantially higher voltage than indicated (shown dotted) is needed at very low frequencies where the voltage drop across the stator winding resistance R_s becomes substantial at higher torque loading, and hence cannot be neglected.

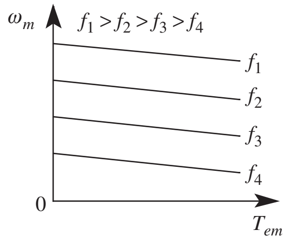


FIGURE 11.12 Induction motor torque-speed characteristics.

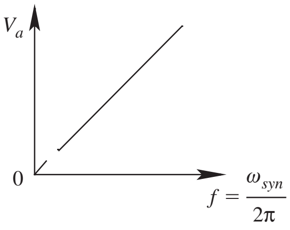


FIGURE 11.13 Induction motor voltage vs. frequency.

In summary, in induction-motor drives, similar to dc and PMAC drives, the voltage rating of the power-processing unit is dictated by the maximum speed, and the current rating is dictated by the maximum load torque being supplied.

11.3 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLIES (UPS)

Uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) are used to provide power to critical loads in industry, business, and medical facilities to which power should be available continuously, even during momentary utility power outages. The Computer Business Equipment Manufacturers Association (CBEMA) has specifications that show the voltage tolerance envelope as a function of time. The ITI-CBEMA curve shows that the UPS for critical loads are needed, not just for complete power outages but also for "swells" and "sags" in the equipment voltage due to disturbances on the utility grid. In considering the synthesis of a low-frequency ac from a dc voltage, the uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) can be considered as a special case of ac-motor drives.

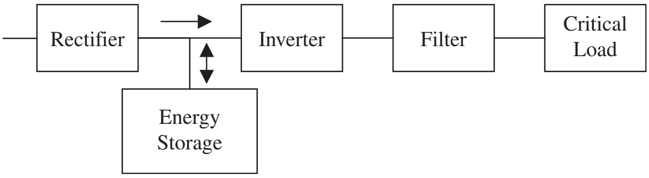


FIGURE 11.14 Block diagram of UPS.

In a UPS, a storage means, generally a battery bank, is used to shield critical loads from voltage disturbances, as shown in the block diagram of Figure 11.14.

Therefore, there is an intermediate dc-link. Normally, the power to the load is provided through the two converters, where the utility-side converter also keeps the batteries charged. In the event of power-line outages, energy stored in the batteries allows load power to be supplied continuously. The function of the load-side inverter is to produce, from dc source, ac voltages similar to that in ac-motor drives, except it is a special case where the output voltage has constant specified magnitude and frequency (e.g., 115 V rms, and 60 Hz). The load may be single-phase or three-phase. The voltage and current ratings of the UPS converters are dictated by the load that is being supplied.

11.4 UTILITY APPLICATIONS OF SWITCH-MODE POWER ELECTRONICS

Thyristor-based applications of power electronics in utility systems are well established in the form of HVDC transmission, excitation control of generators, and switched capacitors for static var control and so on. In addition to these applications based on thyristor converters discussed in Chapter 14, there are growing applications of switch-mode power electronics. These include voltage-link HVDC systems discussed in Chapter 14, and Static Compensators (STATCOM) for var control. Other applications include series-voltage injection for controlling the flow of power and for compensating voltage sags and swells beyond the limits specified by the CBEMA curve of Figure 11.13.

All the above applications of switch-mode power electronics are based on the fact that in a switched-mode converter, as shown in Figure 11.15 as a block diagram with the dc voltage at one side forming the voltage-port, a voltage of appropriate amplitude, frequency, and phase can be synthesized at the current-port. This converter can have single- or three-phase outputs, and the power flow can be bi-directional. The utility system is shown at the right with a voltage v_s.

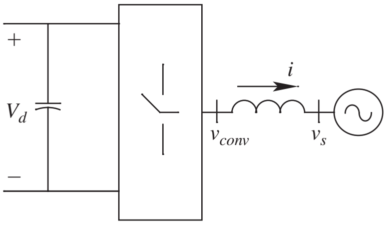
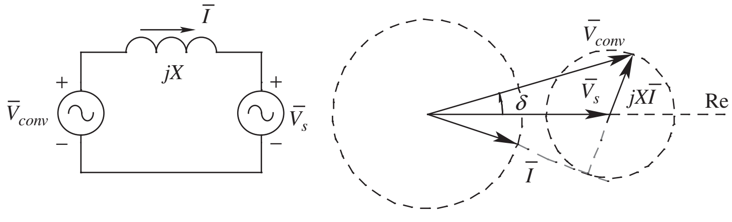


FIGURE 11.15 Interaction of the switch-mode converter with the ac utility system.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 11.16 Per-phase equivalent circuit and the phasor diagram.

The per-phase ac-side is shown in Figure 11.16a by means of the fundamental-frequency quantities, where $\bar{V}_{conv}$ is the voltage synthesized by the converter and $\bar{V}_S$ is the utility voltage. These two ac voltage sources of the same frequency are connected through a reactance X in series. The phasor diagram for the variables in Figure 11.16a is shown in Figure 11.16b.

The following discussion shows that the real power P flows "downhill" on the phase angles of the voltages, and not their magnitudes, whereas the reactive power Q flows based on magnitudes of the two voltages.

In the circuit of Figure 11.16a,

$$\bar{I} = \frac{\bar{V}_{conv} - \bar{V}_s}{jX} \tag{11.31}$$

At the utility end, the complex power can be written as,

$$S_s = P_s + jQ_s = V_s \bar{I}^* \tag{11.32}$$

Using the complex conjugate from Equation 11.31 into 11.32, and selecting the utility voltage as the reference phasor $\bar{V}_s = V_s \angle 0$ where $\bar{V}_{conv} = V_{conv} \angle \delta$,

$$P_s + jQ_s = V_s\left(\frac{V_{conv}\angle(-\delta) - V_s}{-jX}\right) = \frac{V_{conv}V_s \sin\delta}{X} + j\left(\frac{V_{conv}V_s\cos\delta - V_s^2}{X}\right) \tag{11.33}$$

$$\therefore \qquad P_s = \frac{V_{conv}V_s}{X}\sin\delta \tag{11.34}$$

which is the same as the sending end power P_{conv} assuming no transmission-line losses. And,

$$Q_s = \frac{V_{conv}V_s\cos\delta}{X} - \frac{V_s^2}{X} \tag{11.35}$$

If the power transfer from the converter to the utility system is zero, then, from Equation 11.34, $\sin\delta$ and the angle δ are equal to zero. Under this condition, from Equation 11.35,

$$Q_s = \frac{V_{conv}V_s}{X} - \frac{V_s^2}{X} = \frac{V_s}{X}(V_{conv} - V_s) \quad (\text{if } P_s = 0) \tag{11.36}$$

where, the reactive power is supplied by the converter, as if it were a capacitor, to the utility system.

Equations 11.34 and 11.35 together show that by controlling $\overline{V}_{conv}$, in amplitude and phase, it is possible to control both the real and the reactive powers, as shown by the circular trajectories of voltage and current phasors in Figure 11.16b. This is what's done in HVDC systems. Equation 11.36 shows that when the real power transfer is zero ($\delta = 0$), by controlling the amplitude V_{conv} in comparison to the utility-grid voltage magnitude, it is possible to control Q in magnitude and polarity, that is, supply vars to the utility grid as a shunt-connected capacitor would, or absorb it from the utility grid as a shunt-connected inductor would. This is what's done in static var compensators (STATCOM). These applications such as HVDC and STATCOM are further discussed in Chapter 14.

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, *Electric Drives: An Integrative Approach* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2011).
2. N. Mohan, *Advanced Electric Drives: Analysis, Modeling and Simulation Using Simulink* (Minneapolis: MNPERE, 2001 Edition), www.MNPERE.com.
3. N.G. Hingorani, and L. Gyugyi, *Understanding FACTS* (New York: IEEE Press, 2000).
4. N. Mohan, A. Jain, P. Jose and R. Ayyanar, "Teaching Utility Applications of Power Electronics in a First Course on Power Systems," IEEE Transactions on Power Systems, Volume 19, February 2004, Pages 40–47.
5. N. Mohan, *First Course on Power Systems: Fundamentals, Practices and Design* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2011).

PROBLEMS

Mechanical Systems

11.1. A constant torque of 5 Nm is applied to an unloaded motor at rest at time $t = 0$. The motor reaches a speed of 1800 rpm in 5 s. Assuming the damping to be negligible, calculate the motor inertia.

11.2. In an electric-motor drive, the combined motor-load inertia is $J_{eq} = 5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. The load torque is $T_L = 0.05$ Nm. Plot the electromagnetic torque required from the motor to bring the system linearly from rest to a speed of 100 rad/s in 5 s, and then to maintain that speed.

11.3. Calculate the power required in Problem 11.2.

DC Motors

11.4. A permanent-magnet dc motor has the following parameters: $R_a = 0.3\,\Omega$ and $k_E = k_T = 0.5$ in MKS units. For a torque of up to 10 Nm, plot its steady state torque-speed characteristics for the following values of V_a: 100 V, 75 V, and 50 V.

11.5. Consider the dc motor of Problem 11.4 whose moment-of-inertia $J_m = 0.02\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. Its armature inductance L_a can be neglected for slow changes. The motor is driving a load of inertia $J_L = 0.04\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. The steady state operating speed is 400 rad/s. Calculate and plot the terminal voltage $v_a(t)$ that is required to bring this motor to a halt as quickly as possible, without exceeding the armature current of 12 A.

Permanent-Magnet AC Motors

11.6. In a three-phase, 2-pole, PMAC motor, the torque constant $k_{T,phase} = 0.5\,\mathrm{Nm/A}$. Calculate the phase currents if the motor is to produce a counter-clockwise torque of 5 Nm.

11.7. In a 2-pole, three-phase PMAC motor drive, the torque constant $k_{T,phase}$ and the voltage constant $k_{E,1-phase}$ are 0.5 in MKS units. The synchronous inductance is 20 mH (neglect the winding resistance). This motor is supplying a torque of 3 Nm at a speed of 3,000 rpm in a balanced sinusoidal steady state. Calculate the per-phase voltage across the power-processing unit as it supplies controlled currents to this motor.

Induction Motors

11.8. Consider an induction machine that has 2 poles and is supplied by a rated voltage of 208 V (line-to-line, rms) at the frequency of 60 Hz. It is operating in steady state and is loaded to its rated torque. Neglect the stator leakage impedance and the rotor leakage flux. The per-phase magnetizing current is 4.0 A (rms). The current drawn per-phase is 10 A (rms) and is at an angle of 23.56 degrees (lagging). Calculate the per-phase current if the mechanical load decreases so that the slip speed is one-half that of the rated case.

11.9. In Problem 11.8, the rated speed (while the motor supplies its rated torque) is 3480 rpm. Calculate the slip speed ω_{slip}, and the slip frequency f_{slip} of the currents and voltages in the rotor circuit.

11.10. In Problem 11.9, the rated torque supplied by the motor is 8 Nm. Calculate the torque constant, which linearly relates the torque developed by the motor to the slip speed.

11.11. A three-phase, 60-Hz, 4-pole, 440-V (line-line, rms) induction-motor drive has a full-load (rated) speed of 1750 rpm. The rated torque is 40 Nm. Keeping the air gap flux-density peak constant at its rated value, (a) plot the torque-speed characteristics (the linear portion) for the following values of the frequency f: 60 Hz, 45 Hz, 30 Hz, and 15 Hz. (b) This motor is supplying a load whose torque demand increases linearly with speed, such that it equals the rated torque of the motor at the rated motor speed. Calculate the speeds of operation at the four values of frequency in part (a).

11.12. In the motor drive of Problem 11.11, the induction motor is such that while applied the rated voltages and loaded to the rated torque, it draws 10.39 A (rms) per-phase at a power factor of 0.866 (lagging). $R_s = 1.75\,\Omega$. Calculate the voltages corresponding to the four values of the frequency f to maintain $\hat{B}_{ms} = \hat{B}_{ms,rated}$.

12

SYNTHESIS OF DC AND LOW-FREQUENCY SINUSOIDAL AC VOLTAGES FOR MOTOR DRIVES, UPS AND POWER SYSTEMS APPLICATIONS

12.1 INTRODUCTION

The importance of power electronics applications for motor drives (ac and dc), UPS and in power systems was described in Chapter 11. In many of these applications, the voltage-link structure of Figure 12.1 is used where our emphasis will be to discuss how the load-side converter, with the dc voltage as input, synthesizes dc or low-frequency sinusoidal voltage outputs. Functionally, this converter operates as a linear amplifier, amplifying a control signal, dc in case of dc-motor drives, and ac in case of ac-motor drives, UPS and other utility-related applications. The power flow through this converter should be reversible.

These converters consist of bi-directional switching power-poles discussed in Chapter 3, two in case of dc-motor drives and single-phase ac applications, and three in case of ac-motor drives and three-phase applications. These are shown for dc and ac motor drives in Figures 12.2a and b respectively.

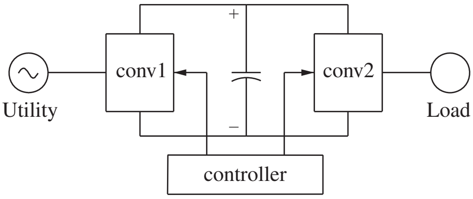


FIGURE 12.1 Voltage-link system.

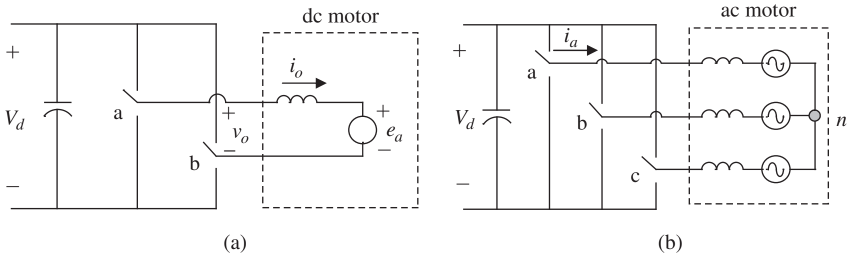


FIGURE 12.2 Converters for dc and ac motor drives.

12.2 BI-DIRECTIONAL SWITCHING POWER-POLE AS THE BUILDING-BLOCK

In Buck and Boost dc-dc converters discussed in Chapter 3, implementation of the switching power-pole by one transistor and one diode dictates the instantaneous current flow to be unidirectional. However, as shown in Figure 12.3a, by combining the switching power-pole implementations of Buck and Boost converters, where the two transistors are switched by complimentary signals, allows a continuous bi-directional power and current capability. In such a bi-directional switching power-pole, the positive inductor current i_L as shown in Figure 12.3b represents a Buck-mode of operation, where only the transistor and the diode associated with the Buck converter take part. The transistor conducts during $q = 1$, otherwise the diode conducts during $q = 0$. Similarly, as shown in Figure 12.3c, the negative inductor current represents a Boost-mode of operation, where only the transistor and the diode associated with the Boost converter take part. The transistor conducts during $q = 0$ ($q^- = 1$), otherwise the diode conducts during $q = 1$ ($q^- = 0$).

Figures 12.3b and 12.3c show that the combination of devices in Figure 12.3a renders it to be a switching power-pole that can carry i_L of either direction. This is shown as an equivalent switch in Figure 12.4a that is effectively in the "up" position when $q = 1$ as shown in Figure 12.4b, and in the "down" position when $q = 0$ as shown in Figure 12.4c, regardless of the direction of i_L.

The bi-directional switching power-pole of Figure 12.4a is repeated in Figure 12.5a for pole-a, with its switching signal identified as q_a. In response to the switching signal, it behaves similarly to the switching power-pole in Chapter 3: "up" when $q_a = 1$; otherwise

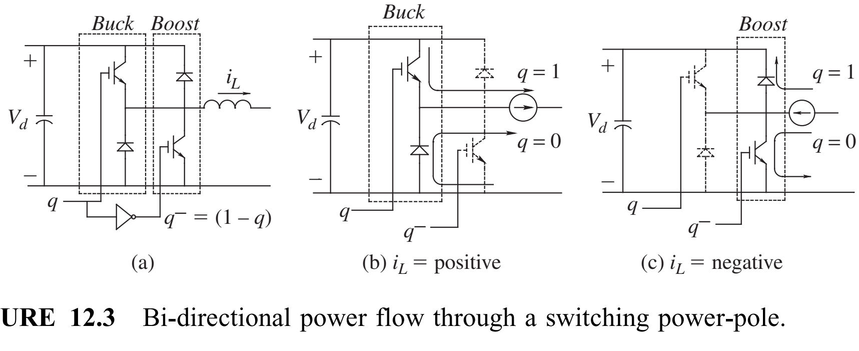
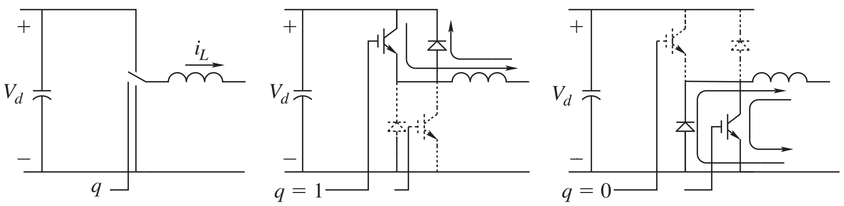
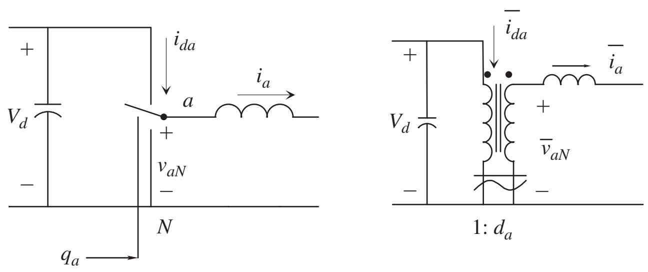


FIGURE 12.3 Bi-directional power flow through a switching power-pole.



(a) (b) $q = 1$ (c) $q = 0$

FIGURE 12.4 Bidirectional switching power-pole.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 12.5 Switching-cycle averaged representation of the bi-directional power-pole.

"down." Therefore, its switching-cycle averaged representation is also an ideal transformer, shown in Figure 12.5b, with a turns-ratio $1{:}d_a(t)$.

The switching-cycle averaged values of the variables at the voltage-port and the current-port in Figure 12.5b are related by $d_a(t)$ as follows:

$$\bar{v}_{aN} = d_a V_d \tag{12.1}$$

$$\bar{i}_{da} = d_a \bar{i}_a \tag{12.2}$$

We should note that, ideally, unlike switching power-poles with a single transistor discussed in Chapter 3, no discontinuous-conduction mode exists in a bi-directional switching-pole of Figure 12.5a.

12.2.1 Pulse-Width-Modulation (PWM) of the Bi-Directional Switching Power-Pole

The voltage of a switching power-pole at the current-port is always of a positive polarity. However, the output voltages of converters in Figure 12.2 for motor drives and other ac applications must be reversible in polarity. This is achieved by introducing a common-mode voltage in each power-pole as discussed below, and taking the differential output between the power-poles.

To obtain a desired switching-cycle averaged voltage $\bar{v}_{aN}$ in Figure 12.5, that includes the common-mode voltage, requires the following power-pole duty-ratio from Equation 12.1:

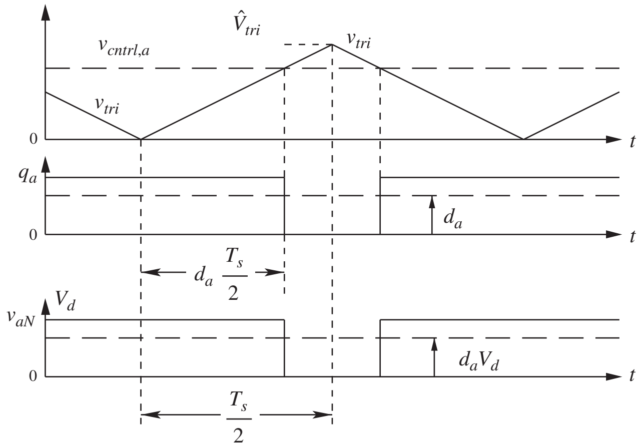


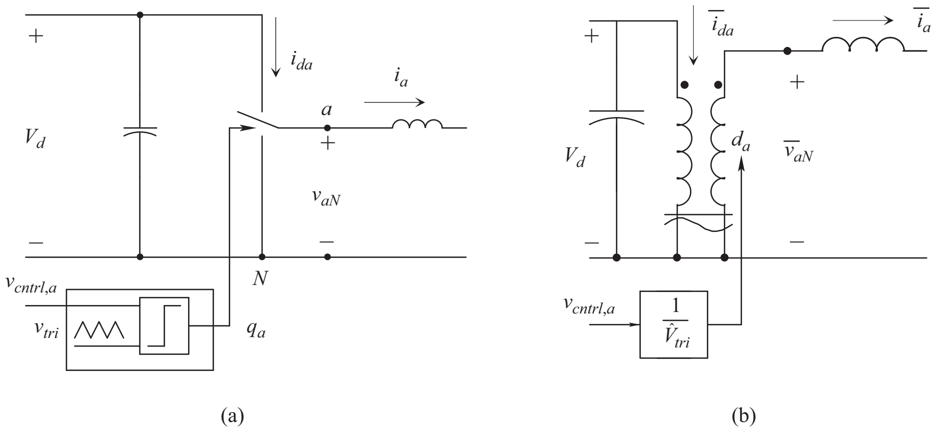
FIGURE 12.6 Waveforms for PWM in a switching power-pole.

$$d_a = \frac{\bar{v}_{aN}}{V_d} \tag{12.3}$$

where V_d is the dc-bus voltage. To obtain the switching signal q_a to deliver this duty-ratio, a control voltage $v_{cntrl,a}$ is compared with a triangular-shaped carrier waveform of the switching-frequency f_s and amplitude $\hat{V}_{tri}$, as shown in Figure 12.6. Because of symmetry, only $T_s/2$, one-half the switching time-period need be considered. The switching-signal $q_a = 1$ if $v_{cntrl,a} > v_{tri}$; otherwise 0. Therefore in Figure 12.6,

$$v_{cntrl,a} = d_a \hat{V}_{tri} \tag{12.4}$$

The switching-cycle averaged representation of the switching power-pole in Figure 12.7a is shown by a controllable turn-ratio ideal transformer in Figure 12.7b,



(a) (b)

FIGURE 12.7 Switching power-pole and its duty-ratio control.

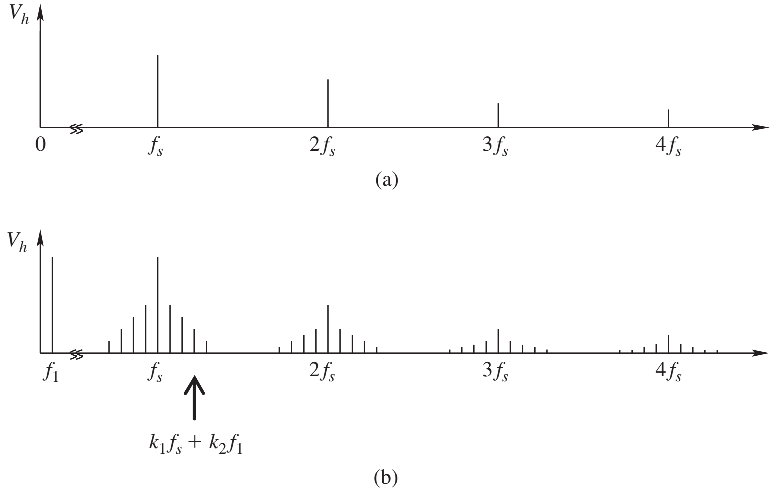


FIGURE 12.8 Harmonics in the output of a switching power-pole.

where the switching-cycle averaged representation of the duty-ratio control is in accordance with Equation 12.4.

The reason for selecting a triangular carrier-signal waveform, as opposed to a ramp signal in dc-dc converters of Chapter 3, is that it minimizes the harmonic content in the output voltage waveform for a given frequency with which the converter devices are switched. The Fourier spectrum of the switching waveform v_{aN} is shown in Figure 12.8, which depends on the nature of the control signal. If the control voltage is dc, the output voltage has harmonics at the multiples of the switching frequency, that is at f_s, $2f_s$, and so on, as shown in Figure 12.8a. If the control voltage varies at a low-frequency f_1, as in ac-motor drives and UPS, then the harmonics of significant magnitudes appear in the side bands of the switching frequency and its multiples, as shown in Figure 12.8b, where,

$$f_h = k_1 f_s + \underbrace{k_2 f_1}_{sidebands} \tag{12.5}$$

in which k_1 and k_2 are constants that can take on values 1, 2, 3, and so on. Some of these harmonics associated with each power-pole are cancelled from the converter output voltages, where two or three of such power-poles are used.

In the power-pole shown in Figure 12.7, the output voltage v_{aN} and its switching-cycle averaged $\bar{v}_{aN}$ are limited between 0 and V_d. To obtain an output voltage $\bar{v}_{an}$ (where "n" may be a fictitious node) that can become both positive and negative, a common-mode offset $\bar{v}_{com}$ is introduced in each power-pole so that the pole output voltage is,

$$\bar{v}_{aN} = \bar{v}_{com} + \bar{v}_{an} \tag{12.6}$$

where $\bar{v}_{com}$ allows $\bar{v}_{an}$ to become both positive and negative around the common-mode voltage $\bar{v}_{com}$. In the differential output when two or three power-poles are used, the common-mode voltage gets eliminated.

12.3 CONVERTERS FOR DC MOTOR DRIVES ($-V_d < \bar{v}_o < V_d$)

Converters for dc motor drives consist of two power-poles as shown in Figure 12.9a, where,

$$\bar{v}_o = \bar{v}_{aN} - \bar{v}_{bN} \tag{12.7}$$

and $\bar{v}_o$ can assume both positive and negative values. Since the output voltage is desired to be in a full-range, from $-V_d$ to $+V_d$, pole-a is assigned to produce $\bar{v}_o/2$ and pole-b is assigned to produce $-\bar{v}_o/2$ towards the output:

$$\bar{v}_{an} = \frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{v}_{bn} = -\frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \tag{12.8}$$

where "n" is a fictitious node as shown in Figure 12.9a, chosen to define the contribution of each pole towards $\bar{v}_o$.

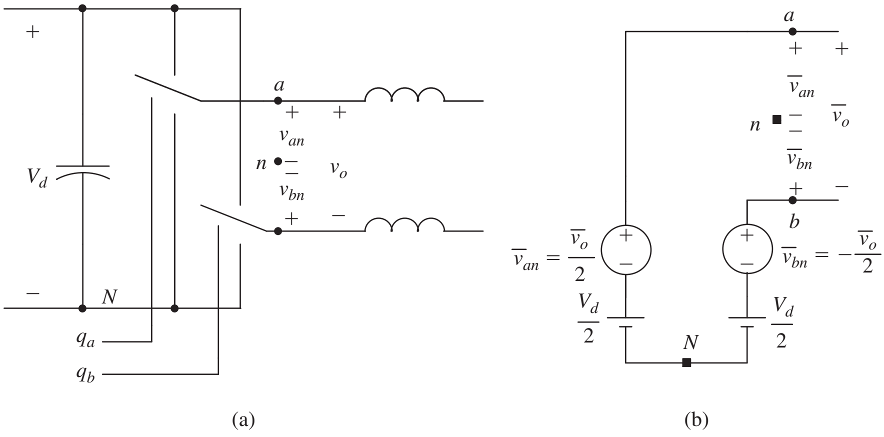
To achieve equal excursions in positive and negative values of the switching-cycle averaged output voltage, the switching-cycle averaged common-mode voltage in each pole is chosen to be one-half the dc-bus voltage,

$$\bar{v}_{com} = \frac{V_d}{2} \tag{12.9}$$

Therefore, from Equation 12.6,

$$\bar{v}_{aN} = \frac{V_d}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{v}_{bN} = \frac{V_d}{2} - \frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \tag{12.10}$$

The switching-cycle averaged output voltages of the power-poles and the converter are shown in Figure 12.9b. From Equations 12.3 and 12.10,



(a) (b)

FIGURE 12.9 Converter for dc-motor drive.

$$d_a = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{\bar{v}_o}{V_d} \quad \text{and} \quad d_b = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\bar{v}_o}{V_d} \tag{12.11}$$

and from Equation 12.11,

$$\bar{v}_o = (d_a - d_b)V_d \tag{12.12}$$

Example 12.1

In a dc-motor drive, the dc-bus voltage is $V_d = 350$ V. Determine the following: $\bar{v}_{com}$, $\bar{v}_{aN}$, and d_a for pole-a and similarly for pole-b, if the output voltage required is (a) $\bar{v}_0 = 300\,\text{V}$ and (b) $\bar{v}_0 = -300\,\text{V}$.

Solution From Equation 12.9, $\bar{v}_{com} = \frac{V_d}{2} = 175\,\text{V}$.

a. For $\bar{v}_0 = 300\,\text{V}$, from Equation 12.8, $\bar{v}_{an} = \bar{v}_o/2 = 150$ V and $\bar{v}_{bn} = -\bar{v}_o/2 = -150\,\text{V}$. From Equation 12.10, $\bar{v}_{aN} = 325$ V and $\bar{v}_{bN} = 25$ V. From Equation 12.11, $d_a \simeq 0.93$ and $d_b \simeq 0.07$.

b. For $\bar{v}_0 = -300$ V, $\bar{v}_{an} = \bar{v}_o/2 = -150$ V and $\bar{v}_{bn} = -\bar{v}_o/2 = 150$ V. Therefore from Equation 12.10, $\bar{v}_{aN} = 25$ V and $\bar{v}_{bN} = 325$ V. From Equation 12.11, $d_a \simeq 0.07$ and $d_b \simeq 0.93$.

The switching-cycle averaged representation of the two power-poles, along with the pulse-width-modulator, in a block-diagram form is shown in Figure 12.10.

In each power-pole of Figure 12.10, the switching-cycle averaged dc-side current is related to its output current by the pole duty-ratio,

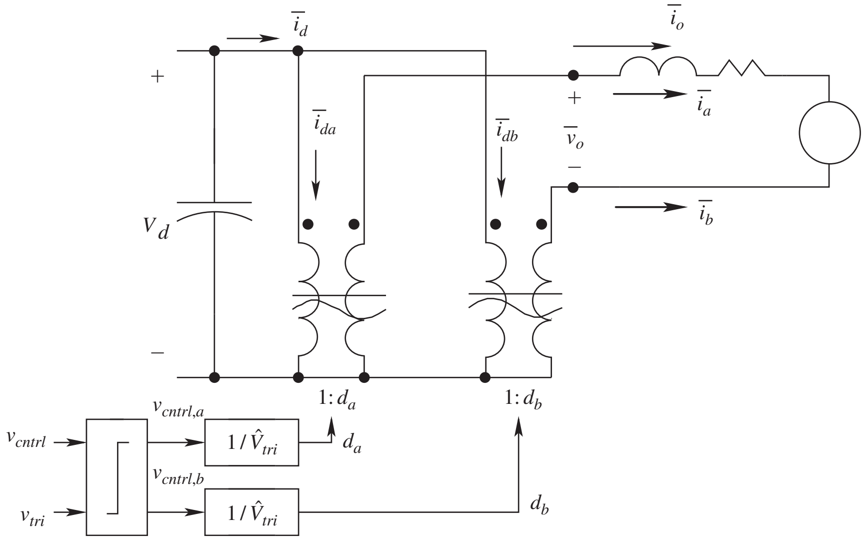


FIGURE 12.10 Switching-cycle averaged representation of the converter for dc drives.

$$\bar{i}_{da} = d_a\bar{i}_a \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{i}_{db} = d_b\bar{i}_b \tag{12.13}$$

By Kirchhoff's current law, the total switching-cycle averaged dc-side current is,

$$\bar{i}_d = \bar{i}_{da} + \bar{i}_{db} = d_a\bar{i}_a + d_b\bar{i}_b \tag{12.14}$$

Recognizing the directions with which the currents i_a and i_b are defined,

$$\bar{i}_a(t) = -\bar{i}_b(t) = \bar{i}_o(t) \tag{12.15}$$

Thus, substituting currents from Equation 12.14 into Equation 12.15,

$$\bar{i}_d = (d_a - d_b)\bar{i}_o \tag{12.16}$$

Example 12.2
In the dc-motor drive of Example 12.1, the output current into the motor is $\bar{i}_o = 15$ A. Calculate the power delivered from the dc-bus and show that it is equals to the power delivered to the motor (assuming the converter to be lossless), if $\bar{v}_0 = 300$ V.

Solution Using the values for d_a and d_b from part (a) of Example 12.1, and $\bar{i}_o = 15$ A, from Equation 12.16, $\bar{i}_d(t) = 12.9$ A and therefore the power delivered by the dc-bus is $P_d = 4.515$ kW. Power delivered by the converter to the motor is $P_o = \bar{v}_o\bar{i}_o = 4.5$ kW, which is equal to the input power (neglecting the round-off errors).

Using Equations 12.4 and 12.11, the control voltages for the two poles are as follows:

$$v_{cntrl,a} = \frac{\hat{V}_{tri}}{2} + \frac{\hat{V}_{tri}}{2}\left(\frac{\bar{v}_o}{V_d}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad v_{cntrl,b} = \frac{\hat{V}_{tri}}{2} - \frac{\hat{V}_{tri}}{2}\left(\frac{\bar{v}_o}{V_d}\right) \tag{12.17}$$

In Equation 12.17, defining the second term in the two control voltages above as one-half the control voltage, that is,

$$\frac{v_{cntrl}}{2} = \frac{\hat{V}_{tri}}{2}\left(\frac{\bar{v}_o}{V_d}\right) \tag{12.18}$$

Equation 12.18 simplifies as follows,

$$\bar{v}_o = \underbrace{\left(\frac{V_d}{\hat{V}_{tri}}\right)}_{k_{PWM}} v_{cntrl} \tag{12.19}$$

where $(V_d/\hat{V}_{tri})$ is the converter gain k_{PWM}, from the feedback control signal to the switching-cycle averaged voltage output, as shown in Figure 12.11 in a block-diagram form.

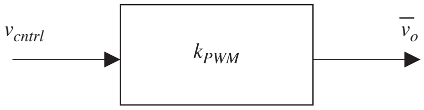


FIGURE 12.11 Gain of the converter for dc drives.

12.3.1 Switching Waveforms in a Converter for DC Motor Drives

We will look further into the switching details of the converter in Figure 12.9a. To produce a positive output voltage, the control voltages are as shown in Figure 12.12. Only one-half the time-period, $T_s/2$, needs to be considered due to symmetry.

The pole output voltages v_{aN} and v_{bN} have the same waveform as the switching signals except for their amplitude. The output voltage v_o waveform shows that the effective switching frequency at the output is twice the original. That is, within the time-period of the switching-frequency f_s with which the converter devices are switching, there are two complete cycles of repetition. Therefore, the harmonics in the output are at $(2f_s)$ and at its multiples. If the switching frequency is selected sufficiently large, the motor inductance may be enough to keep the ripple in the output current within acceptable range without the need for an external inductor in series.

Next, we will look at the currents associated with this converter, repeated in Figure 12.13. The pole currents $i_a = i_o$ and $i_b = -i_o$. The dc-side current $i_d = i_{da} + i_{db}$. The waveforms for these currents are shown by means of Example 12.3.

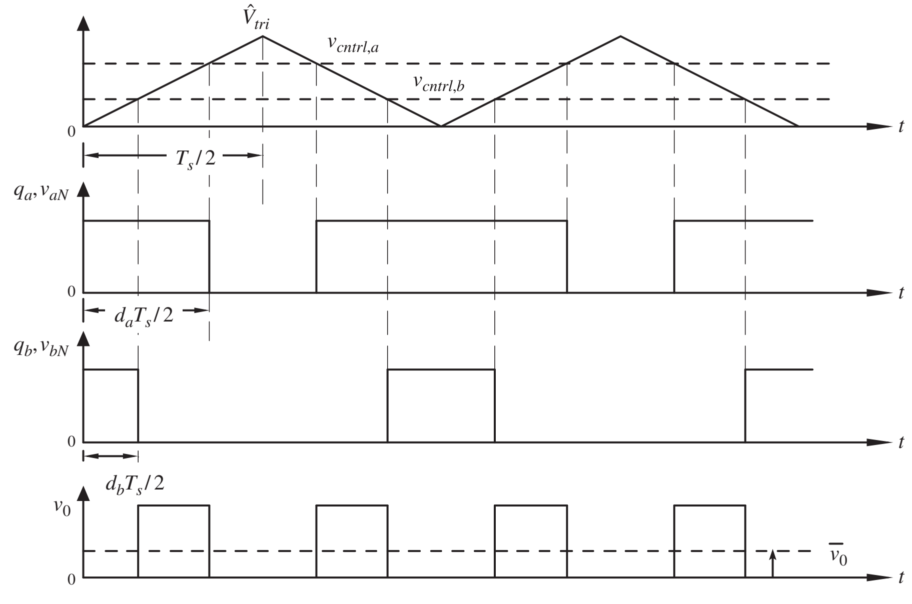


FIGURE 12.12 Switching voltage waveforms in a converter for dc drive.

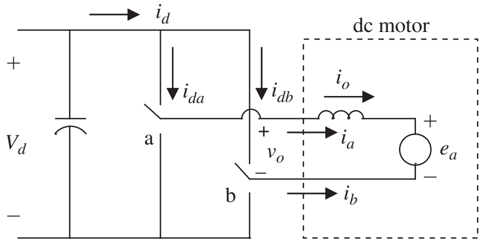


FIGURE 12.13 Currents defined in the converter for dc-motor drives.

Example 12.3

In the dc-motor drive of Figure 12.13, assume the operating conditions are as follows: $V_d = 350$ V, $e_a = 236$ V(dc) and $\bar{i}_o = 4$ A. The switching-frequency f_s is 20 kHz. Assume that the series resistance R_a associated with the motor is 0.5 Ω. Calculate the series inductance L_a necessary to keep the peak-peak ripple in the output current to be 1.0 A at this operating condition. Assume that $\hat{V}_{tri} = 1$ V. Plot v_o, $\bar{v}_o$, i_o and i_d.

Solution As seen from Figure 12.12, the output voltage v_o is a pulsating waveform that consists of a dc switching-cycle averaged $\bar{v}_o$ plus a ripple component $v_{o,ripple}$ which contains sub-components which are at very high frequencies (the multiples of $2f_s$):

$$v_o = \bar{v}_o + v_{o,ripple} \tag{12.20}$$

Therefore, resulting current i_o consists of a switching-cycle averaged dc component $\bar{i}_o$ and a ripple component $i_{o,ripple}$:

$$i_o = \bar{i}_o + i_{o,ripple} \tag{12.21}$$

For a given v_o, we can calculate the output current by means of superposition, by considering the circuit at dc and the ripple frequency (the multiples of $2f_s$), as shown in Figures 12.14a and 12.14b respectively. In the dc circuit, the series inductance has no effect and hence is omitted from Figure 12.14a. In the ripple-frequency circuit of Figure 12.14b, the back-emf e_a, that is dc, is suppressed along with the series resistance R_a which generally is negligible compared to the inductive reactance of L_a at very frequencies associated with the ripple.

From the circuit of Figure 12.14a,

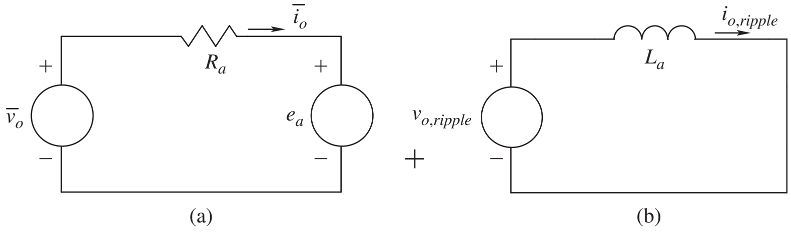


FIGURE 12.14 Superposition of dc and ripple-frequency variables.

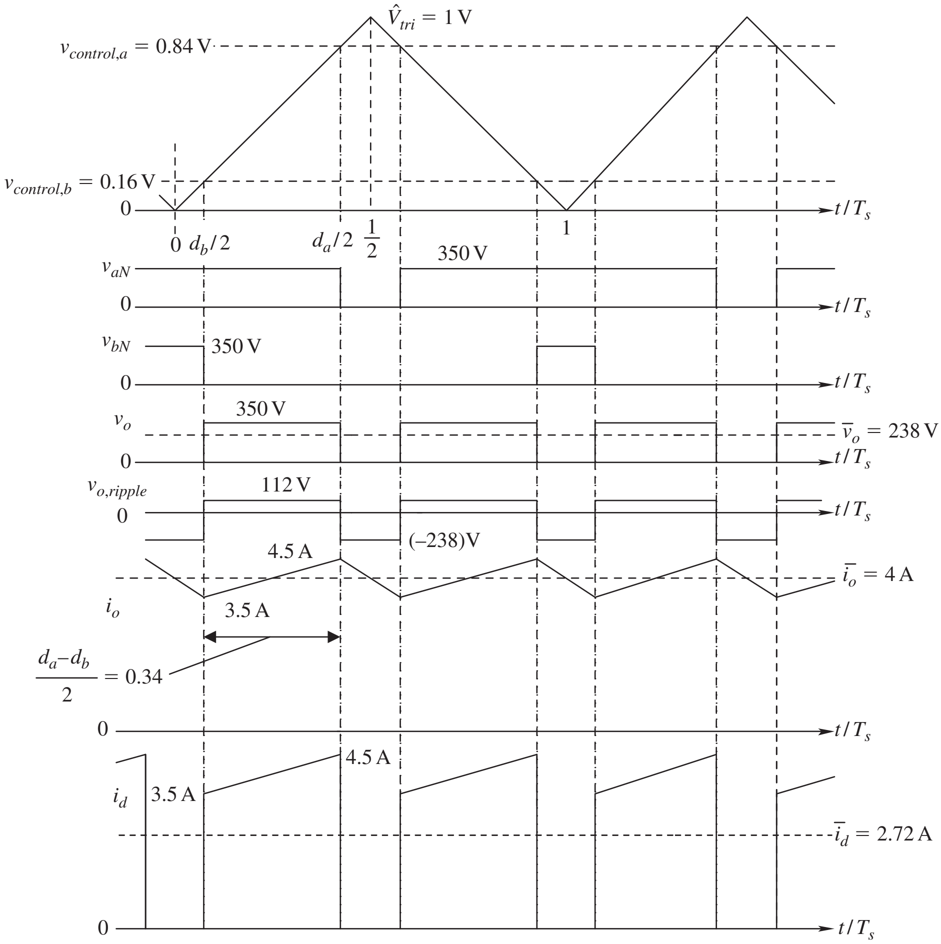

$\hat{V}_{tri} = 1\,\text{V}$
$v_{control,a} = 0.84\,\text{V}$
$v_{control,b} = 0.16\,\text{V}$
0
$0 \;\; d_b/2$
$d_a/2$
$\frac{1}{2}$
1
t/T_s
v_{aN}
350 V
v_{bN}
350 V
v_o
350 V
$\bar{v}_o = 238\,\text{V}$
$v_{o,ripple}$
112 V
(−238)V
4.5 A
$\bar{i}_o = 4\,\text{A}$
i_o
3.5 A
$\frac{d_a - d_b}{2} = 0.34$
i_d
3.5 A
4.5 A
$\bar{i}_d = 2.72\,\text{A}$

FIGURE 12.15 Switching current waveforms in Example 12.3.

$$\bar{v}_o = e_a + R_a \bar{i}_o = 238\ \text{V} \tag{12.22}$$

The switching waveforms are shown in Figure 12.15, which is based on Figure 12.12, where the details are shown for the first half-cycle. The output voltage v_o pulsates between 0 and $V_d = 350$ V, where from Equation 12.11, $d_a = 0.84$, and $d_b = 0.16$. At $f_s = 20$ kHz, $T_s = 50\ \mu$s. Using Equations 12.20 and 12.22, the ripple voltage waveform is also shown in Figure 12.15, where during $\frac{d_a - d_b}{2} T_s (= 17.0\ \mu\text{s})$, the ripple voltage in the circuit of Figure 12.14b is 112 V. Therefore, during this time-interval, the peak-to-peak ripple ΔI_{p-p} in the inductor current can be related to the ripple voltage as follows:

$$L_a \frac{\Delta I_{p-p}}{(d_a - d_b) T_s / 2} = 112\ \text{V} \tag{12.23}$$

Substituting the values in the equation above with $\Delta I_{p-p} = 1$ A, $L_a = 1.9$ mH. As shown in Figure 12.15, the output current increases linearly during $(d_a - d_b)T_s/2$, and its waveform is symmetric around the switching-cycle averaged value; that is, it crosses the switching-cycle averaged value at the midpoint of this interval. The ripple waveform in other intervals can be found by symmetry. The dc-side current i_d flows only during $(d_a - d_b)T_s/2$ interval; otherwise it is zero as shown in Figure 12.15. Averaging over $T_s/2$, the switching-cycle averaged dc-side current $\bar{i}_d = 2.72$ A.

12.4 SYNTHESIS OF LOW-FREQUENCY AC

The principle of synthesizing a dc voltage for dc-motor drives can be extended for synthesizing low-frequency ac voltages, so long as the frequency f_1 of the ac being synthesized is two or three orders of magnitude smaller than the switching frequency f_s. This is the case in most ac-motor drives and UPS applications where f_1 is at 60 Hz (or is of the order of 60 Hz) and the switching frequency is a few tens of kHz. The control voltage, which is compared with a triangular waveform voltage to generate switching signals, varies slowly at the frequency f_1 of the ac voltage being synthesized.

Therefore, with $f_1 << f_s$, during a switching-frequency time-period $T_s (= 1/f_s)$, the control voltage can be considered pseudo-dc, and the analysis and synthesis for the converter for dc-drives applies. Figure 12.16 shows how the switching power-pole output voltage can be synthesized so, on switching-cycle averaged, it varies as shown at the low frequency f_1, where at any instant "under the microscope" shows the switching signal waveform with the duty ratio that depends on the switching-cycle averaged voltage being synthesized. The limit on switching-cycle averaged power-pole voltage is between 0 and V_d, as in the case of converters for dc drives.

The switching-cycle averaged representation of the switching power-pole in Figure 12.5a is, as shown earlier in Figure 12.5b, by an ideal transformer with controllable turns-ratio. The harmonics in the output of the power pole in a general form were shown earlier by Figure 12.8b. In the following sections, two switching power-poles are used to synthesize single-phase ac voltage for single-phase UPS and for interfacing with a single-phase supply voltage, and three switching power-poles are used to synthesize three-phase ac for motor drives, UPS and utility-related applications.

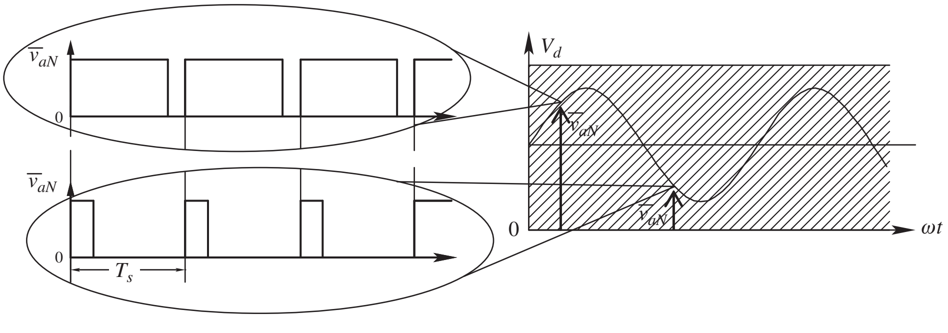


FIGURE 12.16 Waveforms of a switching power-pole to synthesize low-frequency ac.

12.5 SINGLE-PHASE INVERTERS

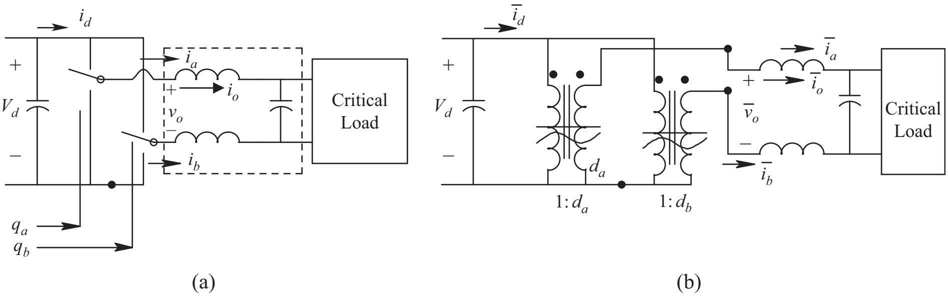
The load-side converter of 1-phase UPS, or for interfacing with the single-phase utility grid, is similar in power topology to that in dc-motor drives, as shown in Figure 12.17a. The switching-cycle averaged representation is shown in Figure 12.17b. It consists of two switching power-poles where, as shown, the inductance of the low-pass filter establishes the current-ports of the two power-poles.

The switching-cycle averaged voltages being synthesized are shown in Figure 12.18, which in this application are sinusoidal at the line-frequency f_1,

$$\bar{v}_o = \hat{V}_o \sin \omega_1 t \tag{12.24}$$

Similar to dc-motor drives, the common-mode voltage is,

$$\bar{v}_{com} = \frac{V_d}{2} \tag{12.25}$$



(a) (b)

FIGURE 12.17 Single-phase uninterruptible power supply.

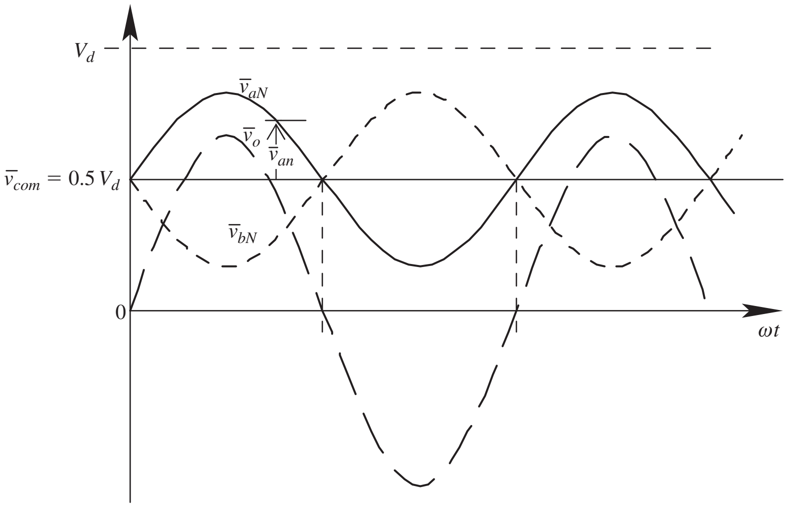


FIGURE 12.18 Switching-cycle averaged voltages in a single-phase UPS.

and, the pole output voltages with respect to a hypothetical neutral “n” are,

$$\bar{v}_{an} = \frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{v}_{bn} = -\frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \tag{12.26}$$

Therefore, as shown by Figure 12.18, the switching-cycle averaged voltages are as follows,

$$\bar{v}_{aN} = \frac{V_d}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{v}_{bN} = \frac{V_d}{2} - \frac{\bar{v}_o}{2} \tag{12.27}$$

On the dc-side, in order to calculate the switching-cycle averaged current drawn from the dc source, we will assume that the switching-cycle averaged ac-side current is sinusoidal and lagging behind the output ac voltage $\bar{v}_o(t) = \hat{V}_o \sin \omega_1 t$ by an angle ϕ_1, as shown in Figure 12.19:

$$\bar{i}_o(t) = \hat{I}_o \sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1) \tag{12.28}$$

Assuming the ripple in the output current to be negligible, the average output power equals the product of the switching-cycle averaged output voltage $\bar{v}_o$ and the switching-cycle averaged output current $\bar{i}_o$,

$$P_o = \bar{v}_o \bar{i}_o \tag{12.29}$$

Assuming the converter to be lossless, the switching-cycle averaged input current can be calculated by equating the input power to the average power,

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{i}_d &= \frac{\bar{v}_o \bar{i}_o}{V_d} = \frac{\hat{V}_0 \hat{I}_o}{V_d} \sin \omega_1 t \times \sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1) \\ &= \underbrace{0.5 \frac{\hat{V}_o}{V_d} \hat{I}_o \cos \phi_1}_{I_d} - \underbrace{0.5 \frac{\hat{V}_o}{V_d} \hat{I}_o \cos(2\omega_1 t - \phi_1)}_{i_{d2}(t)} \end{aligned} \tag{12.30}$$

which shows that the switching-cycle averaged current drawn from the dc-bus has a dc component I_d that is responsible for the average power transfer to the ac side of the converter, and a second harmonic component i_{d2} (at twice the frequency of the ac output),

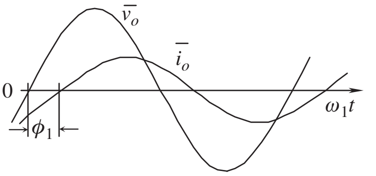


FIGURE 12.19 Output voltage and current.

which is undesirable. The dc-link storage in a 1-phase inverter must be sized to accommodate the flow of this large ac current at twice the output frequency, similar to that in *PFC*s discussed in Chapter 6. Of course, we should not forget that the above discussion is in terms of switching-cycle averaged representation of the switching power-poles. Therefore, the dc-link capacitor must also accommodate the flow of switching-frequency ripple in i_d discussed below. The pulsating current ripple in $i_d(t)$ can be bypassed from being supplied by the batteries by placing a high quality capacitor with a very low equivalent series inductance in close physical proximity to the converter switches.

12.5.1 Switching Waveforms Associated with a Single-Phase Inverter

The switching waveforms in a single-phase converter are shown by means of an example below.

Example 12.4

In a single-phase UPS of Figure 12.17a, the parameters and the operating conditions are as follows: $V_d = 200\,\text{V}, f_1 = 60$ Hz, $\bar{v}_o = 160 \sin \omega_1 t$ volts, and the switching frequency $f_s = 40$ kHz. At the positive peak of the voltage waveform to be synthesized, calculate and plot the switching waveforms for one cycle of the switching frequency.

Solution At the positive peak, the switching-cycle averaged voltage to be synthesized is $\bar{v}_o = 160$ V. Therefore, using the equations for the dc-drive converters, from Equation 12.11, $d_a = 0.9$ and $d_b = 0.1$, where $T_s = 25\,\mu$s. Assuming $\hat{V}_{tri} = 1$V, from Equation 12.4, $V_{cntrl,a} = 0.1$ V, and $V_{cntrl,b} = 0.9$ V. The resulting voltage waveforms are shown in Figure 12.20.

As shown in Figure 12.20, the output voltage waveform pulsates at the switching frequency, and a low-pass filter is necessary to remove the output voltage harmonics, which were discussed earlier in a generic manner for each switching power-pole and expressed by Equation 12.5.

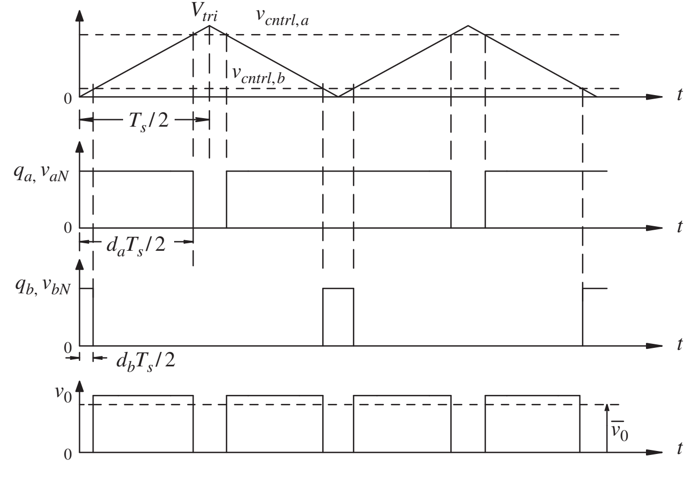


FIGURE 12.20 Waveforms in the UPS of Example 12.4.

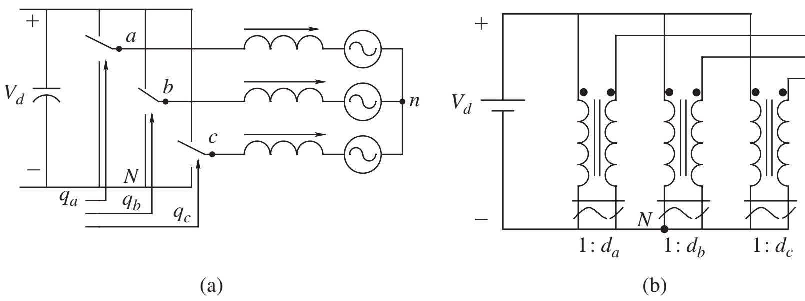

+
V_d
−
a
b
c
n
N
q_a
q_b
q_c
(a)
+
V_d
−
a
b
c
N
1: d_a
1: d_b
1: d_c
(b)

FIGURE 12.21 Three-phase converter.

12.6 THREE-PHASE INVERTERS

Converters for three-phase outputs consist of three power-poles as shown in Figure 12.21a. The application may be motor drives, three-phase UPS or in a three-phase utility system. The switching-cycle averaged representation is shown in Figure 12.21b.

In Figure 12.21, $\bar{v}_{an}$, $\bar{v}_{bn}$ and $\bar{v}_{cn}$ are the desired balanced three-phase switching-cycle-averaged voltages to be synthesized: $\bar{v}_{an} = \hat{V}_{ph}\sin(\omega_1 t)$, $\bar{v}_{bn} = \hat{V}_{ph}\sin(\omega_1 t - 120°)$ and $\bar{v}_{cn} = \hat{V}_{ph}\sin(\omega_1 t - 240°)$. In series with these, common-mode voltages are added such that,

$$\bar{v}_{aN} = \bar{v}_{com} + \bar{v}_{an} \qquad \bar{v}_{bN} = \bar{v}_{com} + \bar{v}_{bn} \qquad \bar{v}_{cN} = \bar{v}_{com} + \bar{v}_{cn} \tag{12.31}$$

These voltages are shown in Figure 12.22a. The common-mode voltages do not appear across the load; only $\bar{v}_{an}$, $\bar{v}_{bn}$, and $\bar{v}_{cn}$ appear across the load with respect to the load-neutral. This can be illustrated by applying the principle of superposition to the circuit of Figure 12.22a.

By "suppressing" $\bar{v}_{an}$, $\bar{v}_{bn}$ and $\bar{v}_{cn}$, only equal common-mode voltages are present in each phase, as shown in Figure 12.22b. If the current in one phase is i, then it will be the same in the other two phases. By Kirchhoff's current law at the load-neutral, $3i = 0$ and

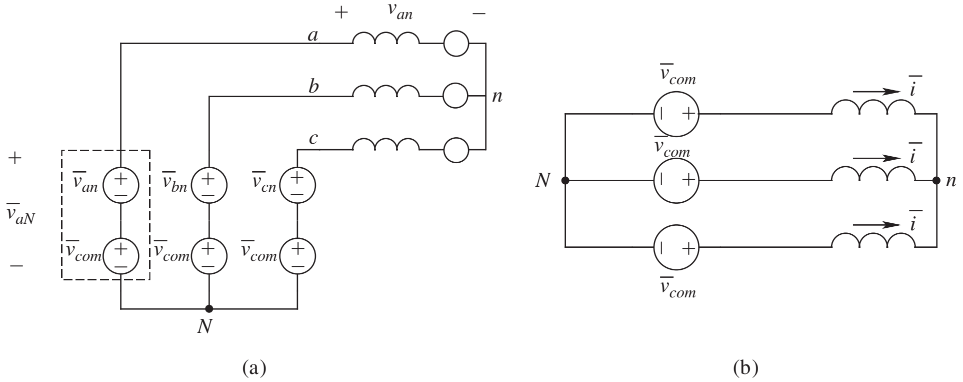

+ $\bar{v}_{an}$ −
a
b
c
n
+
$\bar{v}_{aN}$
−
$\bar{v}_{an}$
$\bar{v}_{bn}$
$\bar{v}_{cn}$
$\bar{v}_{com}$
$\bar{v}_{com}$
$\bar{v}_{com}$
N
(a)
$\bar{v}_{com}$
$\bar{v}_{com}$
$\bar{v}_{com}$
$\bar{i}$
$\bar{i}$
$\bar{i}$
N
n
(b)

FIGURE 12.22 Switching-cycle averaged output voltages in a three-phase converter.

hence $i = 0$, and, therefore, the common-mode voltages do not appear across the load phases.

To obtain the switching-cycle averaged currents drawn from the voltage-port of each switching power-pole, we will assume the currents drawn by the motor load in Figure 12.21b to be sinusoidal but lagging with respect to the switching-cycle averaged voltages in each phase by an angle ϕ_1, where $\bar{v}_{an}(t) = \hat{V}_{ph} \sin \omega_1 t$ and so on:

$$\begin{aligned} &\bar{i}_a(t) = \hat{I}\sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1), \quad \bar{i}_b(t) = \hat{I}\sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1 - 120^\circ), \\ &\bar{i}_c(t) = \hat{I}\sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1 - 240^\circ) \end{aligned} \tag{12.32}$$

Assuming that the ripple in the output currents is negligibly small, the average power output of the converter can be written as,

$$P_o = \bar{v}_{aN}\,\bar{i}_a + \bar{v}_{bN}\,\bar{i}_b + \bar{v}_{cN}\,\bar{i}_c \tag{12.33}$$

Equating the average output power to the power input from the dc-bus and assuming the converter to be lossless,

$$\bar{i}_d(t)V_d = \bar{v}_{aN}\,\bar{i}_a + \bar{v}_{bN}\,\bar{i}b + \bar{v}_{cN}\,\bar{i}_c \tag{12.34}$$

Making use of Equation 12.31 into Equation 12.34,

$$\bar{i}_d(t)V_d = \bar{v}_{com}(\bar{i}_a + \bar{i}_b + \bar{i}_c) + \bar{v}_{an}\,\bar{i}_a + \bar{v}_{bn}\,\bar{i}_b + \bar{v}_{cn}\,\bar{i}_c \tag{12.35}$$

By Kirchhoff's current law at the load-neutral, the sum of all three phase currents within brackets in Equation12.35 is zero,

$$\bar{i}_a + \bar{i}_b + \bar{i}_c = 0 \tag{12.36}$$

Therefore, from Equation 12.35,

$$\bar{i}_d(t) = \frac{1}{V_d}(\bar{v}_{an}\,\bar{i}_a + \bar{v}_{bn}\,\bar{i}_b + \bar{v}_{cn}\,\bar{i}_c) \tag{12.37}$$

In Equation 12.37, the sum of the products of phase voltages and currents is the three-phase power being supplied to the motor. Substituting for phase voltages and currents in Equation 12.37,

$$\bar{i}_d(t) = \frac{\hat{V}_{ph}\hat{I}}{V_d}\left\{ \begin{aligned} &\sin(\omega_1 t)\sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1) + \sin(\omega_1 t - 120^\circ)\sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1 - 120^\circ) \\ &+\sin(\omega_1 t - 240^\circ)\sin(\omega_1 t - \phi_1 - 240^\circ) \end{aligned} \right\} \tag{12.38}$$

that simplifies to a dc current, as it should, in a three-phase circuit:

$$\bar{i}_d(t) = I_d = \frac{3}{2}\frac{\hat{V}_{ph}\hat{I}}{V_d}\cos\phi_1 \tag{12.39}$$

In three-phase converters there are two methods of synthesizing sinusoidal output voltages, both of which we will investigate:

1. Sine-PWM
2. SV-PWM (Space Vector PWM)

12.6.1 Sine-PWM

In Sine-PWM (similar to converters for dc-motor drives and 1-phase UPS), the switching-cycle averaged output of power poles, $\bar{v}_{aN}$, $\bar{v}_{bN}$ and $\bar{v}_{cN}$, have a constant dc common-mode voltage $\bar{v}_{com} = \frac{V_d}{2}$, similar to that in dc-motor drives and single-phase UPS converters, around which $\bar{v}_{an}$, $\bar{v}_{bn}$, and $\bar{v}_{cn}$ can vary sinusoidally as shown in Figure 12.23:

$$\bar{v}_{aN} = \frac{V_d}{2} + \bar{v}_{an} \qquad \bar{v}_{bN} = \frac{V_d}{2} + \bar{v}_{bn} \qquad \bar{v}_{cN} = \frac{V_d}{2} + \bar{v}_{cn} \tag{12.40}$$

In Figure 12.23, using Equation 12.3, the plots of $\bar{v}_{aN}$, $\bar{v}_{bN}$, and $\bar{v}_{cN}$, each divided by V_d, are also the plots of d_a, d_b and d_c within the limits of 0 and 1:

$$d_a = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_{an}}{V_d} \qquad d_b = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_{bn}}{V_d} \qquad d_c = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_{cn}}{V_d} \tag{12.41}$$

These power-pole duty-ratios define the turns-ratio in the ideal transformer representation of Figure 12.21b. As can be seen from Figure 12.23, at the limit, $\bar{v}_{an}$ can become a maximum of $\frac{V_d}{2}$ and hence the maximum allowable value of the phase-voltage peak is,

$$(\hat{V}_{ph})_{\max} = \frac{V_d}{2} \tag{12.42}$$

Therefore, using the properties of three-phase circuits where the line-line voltage magnitude is $\sqrt{3}$ times the phase-voltage magnitude, the maximum amplitude of the line-line voltage in Sine-PWM is limited to,

$$(\hat{V}_{LL})_{\max} = \sqrt{3}(\hat{V}_{ph})_{\max} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} V_d \simeq 0.867\ V_d \tag{12.43}$$

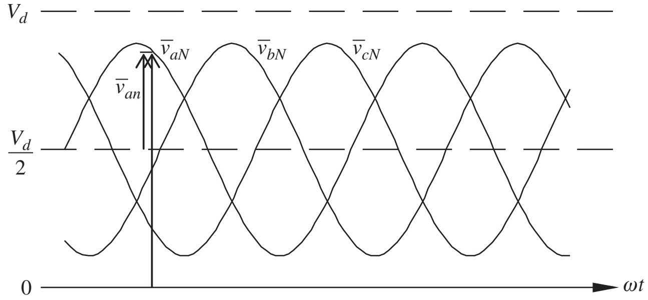


FIGURE 12.23 Switching-cycle averaged voltages due to Sine-PWM.

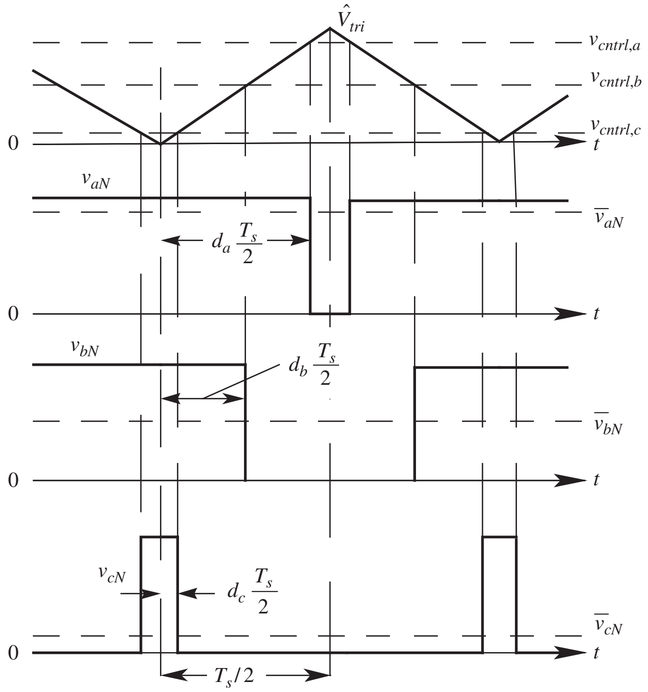


FIGURE 12.24 Switching waveforms in Example 12.5.

12.6.1.1 Switching Waveforms in a Three-Phase Inverter with Sine-PWM

In Sine-PWM, three sinusoidal control voltages equal the duty-ratios, given in Equation 12.41, multiplied by $\hat{V}_{tri}$. These are compared with a triangular waveform signal to generate the switching signals. These switching waveforms for Sine-PWM are shown by an example below.

Example 12.5

In a three-phase converter of Figure 12.21a, a Sine-PWM is used. The parameters and the operating conditions are as follows: $V_d = 350$ V, $f_1 = 60$ Hz, $\bar{v}_{an} = 160 \cos \omega_1 t$ volts etc, and the switching frequency $f_s = 25$ kHz. $\hat{V}_{tri} = 1$ V. At $\omega_1 t = 15°$, calculate and plot the switching waveforms for one cycle of the switching frequency.

Solution At $\omega_1 t = 15°$, $\bar{v}_{an} = 154.55$ V, $\bar{v}_{bn} = -41.41$ V and $\bar{v}_{cn} = -113.14$ V. Therefore, from Equation 12.40, $\bar{v}_{aN} = 329.55$ V, $\bar{v}_{bN} = 133.59$ V and $\bar{v}_{cN} = 61.86$ V. From Equation 12.41, the corresponding power-pole duty-ratios are $d_a = 0.942$, $d_b = 0.382$, and $d_c = 0.177$. For, $\hat{V}_{tri} = 1$ V, these duty-ratios also equal the control voltages in volts. The switching time-period $T_s = 50\ \mu$s. Based on this, the switching waveforms are shown in Figure 12.24.

12.6.2 Space Vector PWM (SV-PWM)

Use of space vectors has been recently introduced on a physical basis such that it can be used in teaching the first course dealing with 3-phase ac machines [1]. This approach has numerous benefits compared to conventional methods of understanding ac machines. However, in a first course on power electronics, students/readers may not be familiar with this discussion. Therefore, some details are given in Appendix 12A at the end of this chapter.

However, it should suffice to say that the voltage space vector is a compact way to represent all the three-phase voltages desired at any instant by a single variable. This switching-cycle-averaged space vector is synthesized using space-vector PWM (SV-PWM), which fully utilizes the available dc-bus voltage, and results in the ac output, which can be approximately 15% higher than that possible by using the Sine-PWM approach, both in a linear range where no lower-order harmonics appear. However, without resorting to the analysis given in Appendix 12A, it is possible to attain the benefits of SV-PWM (in fact, SV-PWM itself), without resorting to space vectors, as described below [2].

Sine-PWM is limited to $(\hat{V}_{LL})_{\max} \simeq 0.867\ V_d$, as given by Equation 12.43, because it synthesizes output voltages on a per-pole basis which does not take advantage of the three-phase properties. Physically, by considering line-line voltages, it is possible to get $(\hat{V}_{LL})_{\max} = V_d$ in SV-PWM. With the aim above, consider the desired three-phase output voltages to be synthesized, as shown in Figure 12.25.

The waveforms can be divided into six sectors, but initially we will concentrate on only sector 1, shown hatched in Figure 12.25 and magnified in Figure 12.26a, and later we will generalize the results to all sectors.

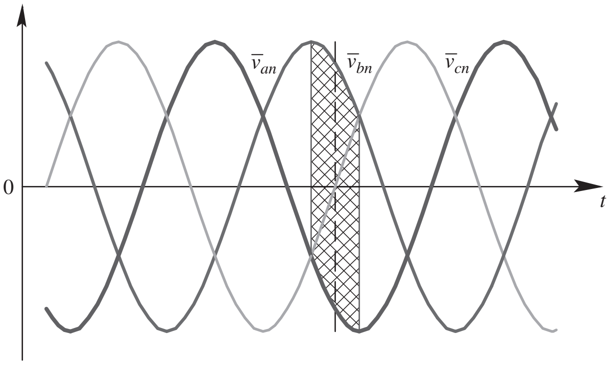
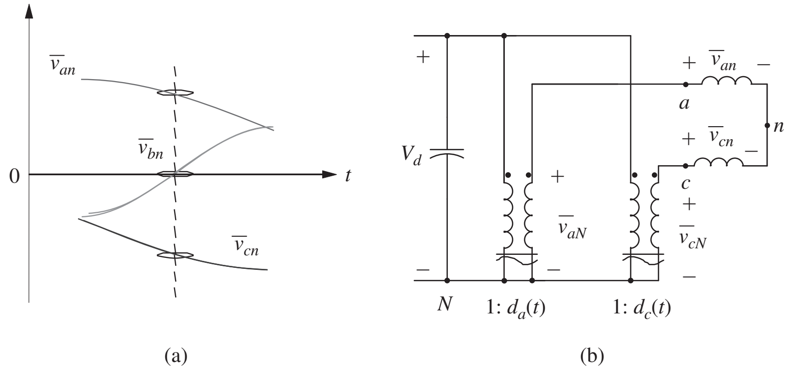


FIGURE 12.25 Three-phase voltages to be synthesized.



(a) (b)

FIGURE 12.26 Waveforms in sector 1 of Figure 12.25.

In sector 1 shown in Figure 12.26a, the voltage for phase-a is maximum, for phase-c is minimum, and for phase-b is in the middle. Therefore, only the poles for the maximum (phase-a) and the minimum (pole-c) are shown in Figure 12.26b. From Figure 12.26b,

$$\bar{v}_{LL} = (d_a - d_c)V_d \tag{12.44}$$

At the limit, it is possible that $\bar{v}_{LL} = V_d$, which is achievable only if $d_a = 1$ and $d_c = 0$, remembering that a duty-ratio is limited in a range between 0 and 1. Therefore, at any other instant, *one of the ways*, a lower value of the line-to-line voltage can be obtained by decreasing the phase-a duty-ratio d_a below 1 by an amount Δd, and by increasing the phase-c duty-ratio d_c above 0 by an equal amount Δd:

$$d_a = 1 - \Delta d \qquad \text{and} \quad d_c = 0 + \Delta d \tag{12.45}$$

Equations 12.44 and 12.45 show that the line-line voltage will be reduced below V_d by an amount equal to $(2\Delta d)V_d$. Therefore, from Equation 12.45,

$$d_a + d_c = 1 \tag{12.46}$$

Now considering the pole output voltages in Figure 12.26b which contain the common-mode voltages:

$$\bar{v}_{aN} = \bar{v}_{com} + \bar{v}_{an} = d_a V_d \tag{12.47}$$

$$\bar{v}_{cN} = \bar{v}_{com} + \bar{v}_{cn} = d_c V_d \tag{12.48}$$

Adding Equations 12.47 and 12.48, and using Equation 12.46, $2\bar{v}_{com} + (\bar{v}_{an} + \bar{v}_{cn}) = V_d$. Hence,

$$\bar{v}_{com} = \frac{V_d}{2} - \frac{\bar{v}_{an} + \bar{v}_{cn}}{2} \tag{12.49}$$

Equation 12.49 is valid only for sector 1. It can be generalized for all the sector, noting that in Equation 12.49 for sector 1, $\bar{v}_{an}$ is the maximum of the three voltages; similarly $\bar{v}_{cn}$ is the minimum of the three phase voltages. Therefore, the general expression that is valid in all sectors is,

$$\bar{v}_{com}(t) = \frac{V_d}{2} + \underbrace{\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\max(\bar{v}_{an}, \bar{v}_{bn}, \bar{v}_{cn}) + \min(\bar{v}_{an}, \bar{v}_{bn}, \bar{v}_{cn})\right)}_{\bar{v}_k(t)} \tag{12.50}$$

Equation 12.50 shows that the common-mode voltage in SV-PWM consists of $\frac{V_d}{2}$, as in Sine-PWM, plus an extra voltage term $\bar{v}_k(t)$, where,

$$\bar{v}_k(t) = -\frac{1}{2}\left(\max(\bar{v}_{an}, \bar{v}_{bn}, \bar{v}_{cn}) + \min(\bar{v}_{an}, \bar{v}_{bn}, \bar{v}_{cn})\right) \tag{12.51}$$

Therefore, the duty-ratios in an SV-PWM are given as follows:

$$d_a = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_k}{V_d} + \frac{\bar{v}_{an}}{V_d} \qquad d_b = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_k}{V_d} + \frac{\bar{v}_{bn}}{V_d} \qquad d_c = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\bar{v}_k}{V_d} + \frac{\bar{v}_{cn}}{V_d} \tag{12.52}$$

As in Sine-PWM, it is possible to achieve SV-PWM by using a high-frequency triangular-waveform carrier. Figure 12.27 shows only the phase-a control voltage in Sine-PWM and SV-PWM, both of which result in the same phase output voltages applied to the motor.

For a given dc-bus voltage, the comparison of $(\hat{V}_{LL})_{\max} = V_d$ for SV-PWM with that by Equation 12.43 for Sine-PWM shows that SV-PWM results in a higher limit on the available output voltage by a factor of $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$, or by approximately 15% higher, compared to Sine-PWM.

Example 12.6

Similar to that in Example 12.5, consider the three-phase converter of Figure 12.21a, where $V_d = 350$ V and $\bar{v}_{an} = 160 \cos \omega_1 t$ volts, and so forth as shown in Figure 12.23. Obtain the duty-ratios d_a etc using SV-PWM at $\omega_1 t = 15°$.

Solution The instant at which d_a needs to be calculated is in sector 1 of the waveforms shown in Figure 12.25 and magnified in Figure 12.26a. In sector 1, $\bar{v}_{an}$ is the maximum of the three voltages and $\bar{v}_{cn}$ is the minimum. From Example 12.5, at $\omega_1 t = 15°$, $\bar{v}_{an} = 154.55$ V, $\bar{v}_{bn} = -41.41$ V and $\bar{v}_{cn} = -113.14$ V.

Therefore using Equation 12.51, $\bar{v}_k = -20.7$ V. In Equation 12.52, $\bar{v}_k / V_d = -0.059$, which compared to the duty-ratios in Sine-PWM, yields the following duty-ratios using SV-PWM: $d_a = 0.883$, $d_b = 0.323$, and $d_c = 0.118$.

12.6.3 Over-Modulation and Square-Wave (Six-Step) Mode of Operation [3]

So far, in using Sine-PWM and SV-PWM, it is assumed that the control voltage peak is kept equal to or less than the triangular waveform peak $\hat{V}_{tri}$. This results in a linear range

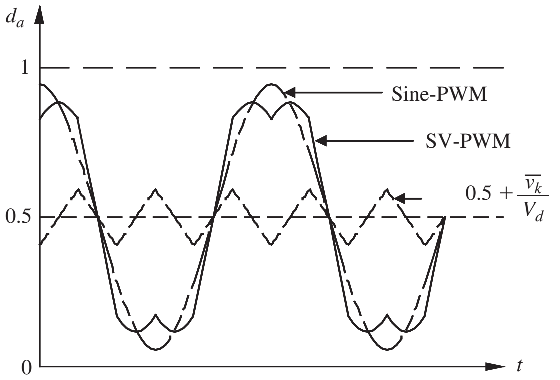


FIGURE 12.27 Duty-ratio d_a in Sine-PWM and SV-PWM for the same phase output.

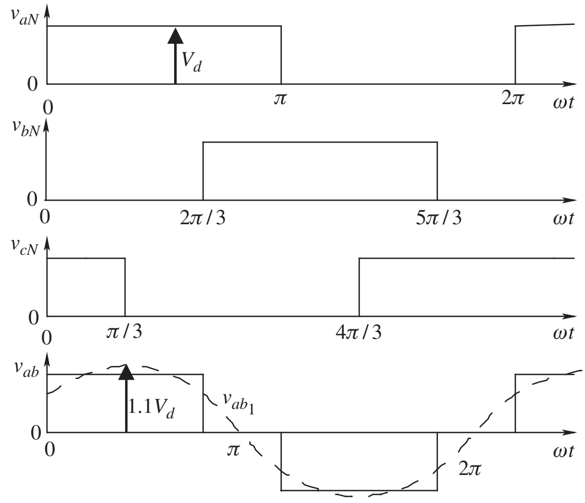


FIGURE 12.28 Square-wave (six-step) waveforms.

where the output phase voltages, ignoring the common-mode offset voltages that do not appear across the load, are linearly related to the control voltages. Therefore, in functionality, a PWM converter is similar to a linear amplifier in the linear modulation. In addition to this linearity, the harmonics in the switched output waveform are as shown in Figure 12.8b, at around the multiples of the switching frequency. That is, the low-order harmonics that are multiples of the low-frequency f_1 (the fundamental frequency) do not appear in the output.

However in applications such as in motor drives at higher than rated speed, it may be advantageous to get as high a voltage as possible at the fundamental frequency f_1, even if the output contains harmonics that are low-order multiples of f_1. This requires the control voltages to exceed the triangular-waveform peak by over-modulation. The output voltage switching waveform, as a consequence, contains low-order harmonics that can be obtained by Fourier analysis. At the limit, in each switching power-pole, the switch is in "up" position for one-half the time-period and "down" for the other-half, as shown in Figure 12.28.

The output waveforms of the three poles are displaced by $2\pi/3$ radians with respect to each other. The resulting output waveforms are square-wave, and such an operation is called square-wave or six-step mode of operation. For a given dc-bus voltage V_d, this mode of operation yields the highest possible output voltages at frequency f_1, where by Fourier analysis, at the fundamental frequency,

$$\hat{V}_{ph_1} = \frac{4}{\pi}\left(\frac{V_d}{2}\right) = 0.637V_d \qquad \text{and} \qquad \hat{V}_{LL_1} = \sqrt{3}\hat{V}_{ph_1} = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{\pi}V_d \simeq 1.1\ V_d \tag{12.53}$$

which shows that it is possible to get the fundamental-frequency line-line voltage peak greater than V_d, however at the expense of the low-order harmonic voltages,

$$\hat{V}_{LL_h} = \frac{\hat{V}_{LL_1}}{h} = \frac{1.1}{h}V_d \quad \text{where} \quad h = 6n \pm 1; \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{12.54}$$

12.7 MULTILEVEL INVERTERS

In high power and high voltage applications, it is desirable to operate with high values of voltages in order to keep the associated currents to manageable levels. This requires the dc-bus voltage V_d to be large that exceeds the voltage ratings of the transistors (of course, a safety margin has to be used) as shown in Figure 12.3a of a switching power-pole. One option in such a case is to use multiple transistors in series, in order to yield effectively each transistor in Figure 12.3a. This is done in practice; however, great care must be taken to ensure that all the transistors in series switch in unison so that they share voltages equally.

Another option that has been used sometimes is to have a three-level arrangement as shown in Figure 12.29 where a midpoint "o" is established by two series-connected equal capacitors as shown with equal dc voltages $V_d/2$ [4].

We will consider the switching power-pole for phase-a. By turning switches S_{a2}^{+} and S_{a2}^{-} on, with respect to the midpoint, the switching-pole output voltage $v_{ao} = 0$ regardless of the current direction. Turning S_{a1}^{+} and S_{a2}^{+} on results in $v_{ao} = V_d/2$. Similarly, turning S_{a1}^{-} and S_{a2}^{-} on results in $v_{ao} = -V_d/2$. There are two major advantages of the three-level inverter: (1) transistors in Figure 12.29 need to block only one-half the dc-bus voltage; that is $V_d/2$, without the need to connect two transistors in series and without the associated problem of ensuring equal voltage sharing mentioned earlier, and (2) three levels ($V_d/2$, 0, $-V_d/2$) result in less switching-frequency ripple in the output, for the same switching frequency, as compared to two-level inverters discussed earlier. One of the drawbacks of these inverters is the need to ensure that the mid-point remains at half the dc bus voltage.

Multilevel inverters with more than three levels have been reported in the literature with various advantages and challenges [5, 6].

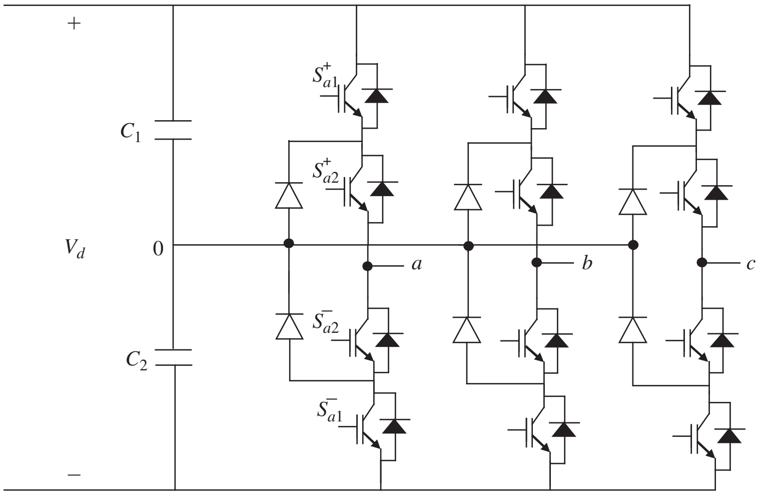


FIGURE 12.29 Three-level inverters.

12.8 CONVERTERS FOR BI-DIRECTIONAL POWER FLOW

In many applications, the power flow through the voltage-link structure of Figure 12.1 is bi-directional. For example, in motor drives, normally, power flows from the utility to the motor, and while slowing down, the energy stored in the inertia of machine-load combination can be recovered by operating the machine as a generator and feeding power back into the utility grid. This can be accomplished by using three-phase converters discussed in section 12.6 at both ends, as shown in Figure 12.30a, recognizing that the power flow through these converters is bi-directional.

In the normal mode, the converter at the utility-end operates as a rectifier and the converter at the machine-end as an inverter. The roles of these two are opposite when

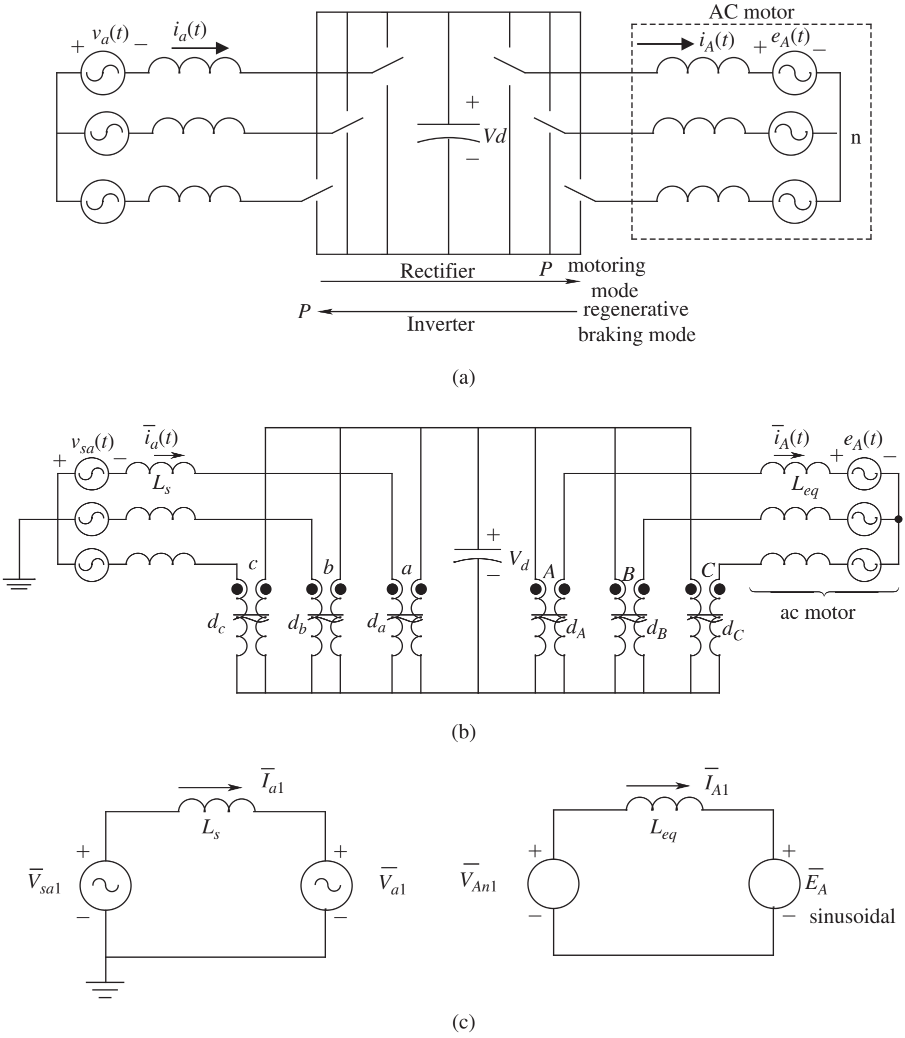

AC motor
+ $v_a(t)$ −
$i_a(t)$
$i_A(t)$
+ $e_A(t)$ −
+
Vd
−
n
Rectifier
P
motoring mode
P
Inverter
regenerative braking mode
(a)
+ $v_{sa}(t)$ −
$\bar{i}_a(t)$
L_s
c
b
a
d_c
d_b
d_a
+
V_d
−
A
B
C
d_A
d_B
d_C
$\bar{i}_A(t)$
+ $e_A(t)$ −
L_{eq}
n
ac motor
(b)
$\bar{I}_{a1}$
L_s
$\bar{V}_{sa1}$
$\bar{V}_{a1}$
+
−
$\bar{I}_{A1}$
L_{eq}
$\bar{V}_{An1}$
$\bar{E}_A$
sinusoidal
(c)

FIGURE 12.30 Voltage-link structure for bi-directional power flow.

the power flows in the reverse direction during energy recovery. A similar arrangement can be used in connecting two ac systems by means of a HVDC transmission line.

The switching-cycle averaged representation of these converters by means of ideal transformers is shown in Figure 12.30b. In this simplified representation, where losses are ignored, one side is represented by a source v_{sa}, and so forth in series with the internal system inductance L_s. The other side, for example an ac machine is represented by its steady state equivalent circuit, the machine equivalent inductance L_{eq} in series with the back-emf e_A, and so on. Under balanced three-phase operation at both ends, the role of each converter can be analyzed by means of the per-phase equivalent circuits shown in Figure 12.30c. In these per-phase equivalent circuits, the fundamental-frequency voltages produced at the ac-side by the two converters are v_{a1} and v_{An1}, and the ac-side currents at the two sides can be expressed in the phasor form as,

$$\bar{I}_{a1} = \frac{\bar{V}_{sa} - \bar{V}_{a1}}{j\omega_s L_s} \tag{12.55}$$

$$\bar{I}_{A1} = \frac{\bar{V}_{An1} - \bar{E}_A}{j\omega_1 L_{eq}} \tag{12.56}$$

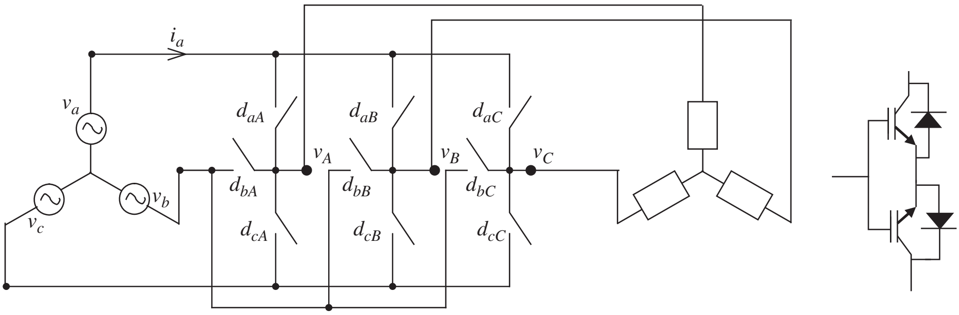
where, the phasors in Equation 12.55 represent voltages and current at the frequency ω_s of side-1 and the phasors in Equation 12.56 at the fundamental-frequency ω_1 synthesized at side-2.

In Figure 12.30a, for a given utility voltage, it is possible to control the current drawn from the side-1 by controlling the voltage synthesized by the side-1 converter in magnitude and phase. In these circuits, if the losses are ignored, the switching-cycle averaged power drawn from side-1 equals the power supplied to side-2. However, the reactive power at side-1 converter can be controlled, independently of the reactive power at the side-2 converter.

12.9 MATRIX CONVERTERS (DIRECT LINK SYSTEM) [7]

To review once again, power electronics systems are categorized as Voltage-Link systems described so far where a capacitor is used in parallel with two converters as an energy storage element, and Current-Link systems described in Chapters 13 and 14 in very high power applications where an inductor is used in series with the two converters for energy storage. There is another structure called the matrix converters, which provide a direct link between the input and the output, without any intermediate energy-storage element. There is a great deal of research interest at present in these converters because they avoid the intermediate energy storage element.

Such a system for a three-phase to three-phase conversion is shown in Figure 12.31a, where there is a bi-directional switch from each input port to each output port. Such a bi-directional switch must be capable of blocking voltages of either polarity, and conduct current in either direction. Such a bi-directional switch can be realized, for example, by two IGBTs and two diodes, as connected in Figure 12.31b. When the two transistors are gated on, the current can flow in either direction, effectively representing the closed position of the bi-directional switch. When both the transistors are gated off,



(a) (b)

FIGURE 12.31 Matrix converter.

current cannot flow in either direction, effectively representing the closed position of the bi-directional switch.

For explanation purposes, we will assume the left-side in Figure 12.31a to be a utility system and the right-side to be supplying a load, for example an ac machine. The utility-side (a, b, c) is made to behave like a voltage-port by connecting a three-phase capacitor bank across it. The load-side, due to the series inductance inherent in any load, behaves as a current-port. The matrix converter in Figure 12.31a is purposely drawn to look like a three-level converter, where the voltage at the output port A, for example, is synthesized by time-weighted averaging within a switching cycle of the input voltage of a, b and c. In the discussion to follow, for ease of writing, we will *not* use bars on top of the switching-cycle averaged variables; however, they are understood to be such.

Therefore the output port voltages, with respect to the input neutral, can be written as the sum of the sum of the input voltage multiplied by their respective duty-ratios shown in Figure 12.31a:

$$\begin{bmatrix} v_A \\ v_B \\ v_C \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_{aA} & d_{bA} & d_{cA} \\ d_{aB} & d_{bB} & d_{cB} \\ d_{aC} & d_{bC} & d_{cC} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v_a \\ v_b \\ v_c \end{bmatrix} \tag{12.57}$$

Similarly, the currents drawn from the input port depend on the sum of the three load current multiplied by their respective duty-ratios:

$$\begin{bmatrix} i_a \\ i_b \\ i_c \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_{aA} & d_{aB} & d_{aC} \\ d_{bA} & d_{bB} & d_{bC} \\ d_{cA} & d_{cB} & d_{cC} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_A \\ i_B \\ i_C \end{bmatrix} \tag{12.58}$$

The voltage and current relationships between the input and the output ports can be simultaneously represented on the switching-cycle averaged basis by ideal transformers as shown in Figure 12.32. In Figure 12.32, each output voltage is series connection of three secondary-winding voltages, consistent with Equation 12.57. Similarly in Figure 12.32, the current at each input port is the parallel combination of the three currents flowing into the primary windings, consistent with Equation 12.58.

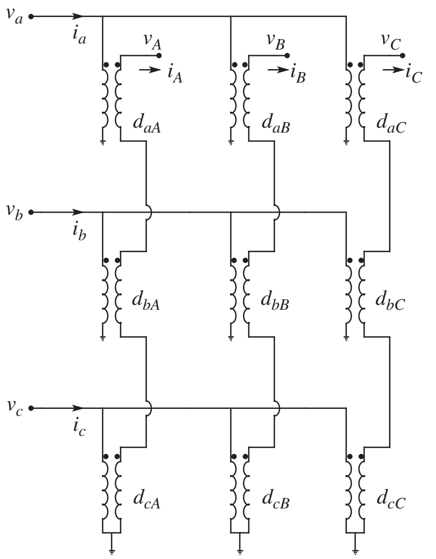


FIGURE 12.32 Matrix Converter switching-cycled averaged representation.

With respect to the input neural, the input voltages are given as,

$$v_a = \hat{V}_i \cos(\omega_i t) \quad v_b = \hat{V}_i \cos\left(\omega_i t - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \quad v_c = \hat{V}_i \cos\left(\omega_i t - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right) \tag{12.59}$$

12.9.1 Elimination of the Input Frequency from the Output

Since the output frequency is completely independent of the input frequency (it can be higher or lower than the input frequency), the first order of business is to eliminate the input frequency from the conversion. This can be illustrated for phase-A, for example, where the corresponding duty-ratios in Equation 12.57 are made to vary co-sinusoidally at the same frequency as the input frequency,

$$d_{aA} = k_A \cos(\omega_i t) \quad d_{bA} = k_A \cos\left(\omega_i t - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \quad d_{cA} = k_A \cos\left(\omega_i t - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right) \tag{12.60}$$

The duty-ratios in Equation 12.60 are in phase with their respective input voltages to yield a unity power factor of operation at the input. It is possible to introduce a phase-shift in the duty-ratios given in Equation 12.60 to obtain the input power factor to be lagging or leading.

Using the duty-ratios of Equation 12.60 for phase-A in Equation 12.57,

$$v_A = d_{aA} v_a + d_{bA} v_b + d_{cA} v_c = \frac{3}{2} \hat{V}_i k_A \tag{12.61}$$

where the amplitudes, k_A, of the duty-ratios contains the amplitude and the frequency information of the output to be synthesized, where for the three output phases,

$$k_A = k\cos\omega_o t \quad k_B = k\cos\left(\omega_o t - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \quad k_C = k\cos\left(\omega_o t - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right) \tag{12.62a}$$

and from the above two equations, for a given input voltage $\hat{V}_i$ and the desired output voltage $\hat{V}_o$,

$$k = \left(\frac{2}{3\hat{V}_i}\right)\hat{V}_o \tag{12.62b}$$

12.9.2 Introducing Common-Mode Offsets

The duty ratios, as defined by Equation 12.60, being co-sinusoidal functions of time, become negative. For example, $d_{aA} = \underbrace{(k\cos\omega_o t)}_{k_A}\cos(\omega_i t)$.

A negative duty-ratio cannot be realized physically. In fact each duty-ratio must be constrained between 0 and 1:

$$0 \le d \le 1 \tag{12.63}$$

To meet these limits, we will introduce offsets which are common in each output phase, and therefore get cancelled in the output. With these common-mode offsets, the duty-ratios of switches get modified as shown in Figure 12.33, where the absolute value of each duty-ratio is added to the respective duty-ratios in Equation 12.60, for example,

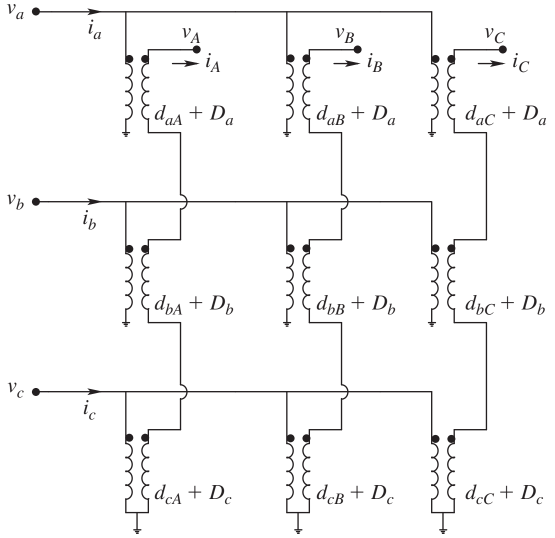


FIGURE 12.33 Common-mode offsets to ensure the realizable range of duty-ratios.

$$d_{aA} \rightarrow d_{aA} + |d_{aA}| \tag{12.64}$$

It is clear that the combined duty-ratios modified in Equation 12.64 cannot become negative and hence the lower limit of 0 in Equation 12.63 is satisfied. In order to meet the upper limit of 1 on the duty-ratio in Equation 12.64, the maximum amplitude of k_A etc is limited to 0.5:

$$k(\max) = 0.5 \tag{12.65}$$

and therefore, in the output phase-A,

$$\begin{aligned} d_{aA} &\rightarrow d_{aA} + \underbrace{|0.5 \cos \omega_i t|}_{D_a} \\ d_{bA} &\rightarrow d_{bA} + \underbrace{|0.5\cos(\omega_i t - 2\pi/3)|}_{D_b} \\ d_{cA} &\rightarrow d_{cA} + \underbrace{|0.5\cos(\omega_i t - 4\pi/3)|}_{D_c} \end{aligned} \tag{12.66}$$

where d_{aA} etc are as given by Equation 12.60.

Next, we will make use of the property in synthesizing three-phase outputs, as in SV-PWM discussed earlier to raise the limit on k from 0.5 to a higher value. The three duty-ratios associated with the input phase-a in Figure 12.33 are,

$$\begin{aligned} d_{aA} &\rightarrow \underbrace{k_A \cos \omega_i t}_{d_{aA}} + \underbrace{|0.5 \cos \omega_i t|}_{D_a} \\ d_{aB} &\rightarrow \underbrace{k_B \cos \omega_i t}_{d_{aB}} + \underbrace{|0.5 \cos \omega_i t|}_{D_a} \\ d_{aC} &\rightarrow \underbrace{k_C \cos \omega_i t}_{d_{aC}} + \underbrace{|0.5 \cos \omega_i t|}_{D_a} \end{aligned} \tag{12.67}$$

In the worst-case when D_a is at its peak and equals 0.5, as discussed in SV-PWM, a higher value of the output voltage can be obtained if,

$$\begin{aligned} d_{aA} &\rightarrow \left(k_A - \frac{\max(k_A, k_B, k_C) + \min(k_A, k_B, k_C)}{2}\right)\cos \omega_i t + \underbrace{|0.5 \cos \omega_i t|}_{D_a} \\ d_{aB} &\rightarrow \left(k_B - \frac{\max(k_A, k_B, k_C) + \min(k_A, k_B, k_C)}{2}\right)\cos \omega_i t + \underbrace{|0.5 \cos \omega_i t|}_{D_a} \end{aligned} \tag{12.68}$$

$$d_{aC} \rightarrow \left(k_C - \frac{\max(k_A, k_B, k_C) + \min(k_A, k_B, k_C)}{2}\right) \cos \omega_i t + \underbrace{|0.5 \cos \omega_i t|}_{D_a}$$

An identical change in duty-ratios associated with input phases b and c is made in Figure 12.33. Using Equation 12.68 for duty-ratios, the maximum value of k in Equation 12.62, similar to that in SV-PWM, is as follows,

$$k(\max) = 0.5 \times \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \simeq 0.57 \tag{12.69}$$

Using this maximum value of k from Equation 12.69 into Equation 12.61, the maximum output voltage amplitude is related to the input voltage amplitude as,

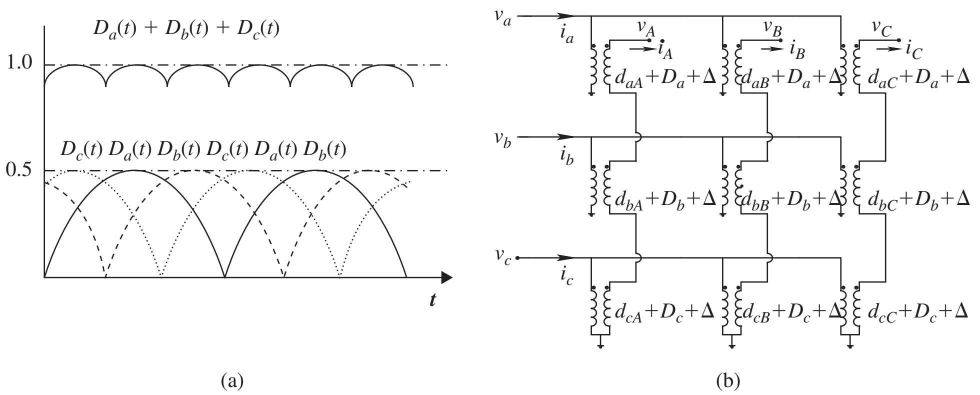
$$\hat{V}_o(\max) = \frac{3}{2}\left(0.5 \times \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\right)\hat{V}_i = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\hat{V}_i \simeq 0.867\hat{V}_i \tag{12.70}$$

which points to one of the drawbacks of the matrix converters, that is, the maximum output magnitude is limited to 0.867 times the input voltage magnitude.

Next, to make this converter realizable, note that each output current in Figure 12.33, for example i_A, must always have a path to flow, that is the sum of the duty-ratios associated with i_A must sum to 1 at all instants. The sum of these duty-ratios is,

$$(d_{aA} + D_a) + (d_{bA} + D_b) + (d_{cA} + D_c) = \underbrace{(d_{aA} + d_{bA} + d_{cA})}_{=0} + (D_a + D_b + D_c) \tag{12.71}$$

In Equation 12.71, the offsets do not sum to 1 at all times, as illustrated in Figure 12.34a, and therefore the difference between 1 and the sum of all three duty ratios is divided equally in three parts and Δ is added to each duty-ratio, as shown in Figure 12.34b, where,


$D_a(t) + D_b(t) + D_c(t)$
1.0
$D_c(t)$ $D_a(t)$ $D_b(t)$ $D_c(t)$ $D_a(t)$ $D_b(t)$
0.5
t
v_a
v_b
v_c
i_a
i_b
i_c
v_A
v_B
v_C
i_A
i_B
i_C
$d_{aA}+D_a+\Delta$
$d_{aB}+D_a+\Delta$
$d_{aC}+D_a+\Delta$
$d_{bA}+D_b+\Delta$
$d_{bB}+D_b+\Delta$
$d_{bC}+D_b+\Delta$
$d_{cA}+D_c+\Delta$
$d_{cB}+D_c+\Delta$
$d_{cC}+D_c+\Delta$

(a) (b)

FIGURE 12.34 Modification of common-mode offsets to provide current path.

$$\Delta = \frac{1 - (D_a + D_b + D_c)}{3} \tag{12.72}$$

12.9.3 Generation of Switching Signals

Once we will focusing on phase-A, since similar can be done for the other two output phases. The duty-ratios numerically equal the control voltages if we assume the switching-frequency triangular carrier signal in Figure 12.35 to be unity. In such a case, comparing d_{aA}, $(d_{aA} + d_{bA})$, and $(d_{aA} + d_{bA} + d_{cA})$ generates the switching functions q_{aA}, q_{bA}, and q_{cA} as shown in Figure 12.36.

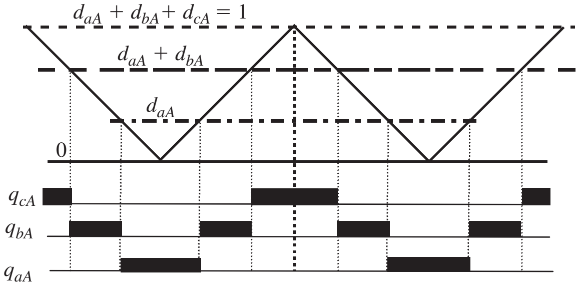


FIGURE 12.35 Generation of switching signals.

12.9.4 Calculating the Input Currents

Next we will calculate the input currents such as i_a, given that the output currents are lagging behind the output voltages by an angle ϕ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &i_A = \hat{I}_0 \cos(\omega_o t - \phi_0) \quad i_B = \hat{I}_0 \cos\left(\omega_o t - \frac{2\pi}{3} - \phi_0\right) \\ &i_C = \hat{I}_0 \cos\left(\omega_o t - \frac{4\pi}{3} - \phi_0\right) \end{aligned} \tag{12.73}$$

From Figure 12.35, since, by Kirchhoff's current law $i_A + i_B + i_C = 0$,

$$i_a = d_{aA} i_A + d_{aB} i_B + d_{aC} i_C \tag{12.74}$$

where d_{aA}, d_{aB}, and d_{aC} are given the quantities in brackets in Equation 12.68,

$$\begin{aligned} d_{aA} &= \left(k_A - \frac{\max(k_A, k_B, k_C) + \min(k_A, k_B, k_C)}{2}\right) \cos \omega_i t \\ d_{aB} &= \left(k_B - \frac{\max(k_A, k_B, k_C) + \min(k_A, k_B, k_C)}{2}\right) \cos \omega_i t \\ d_{aC} &= \left(k_C - \frac{\max(k_A, k_B, k_C) + \min(k_A, k_B, k_C)}{2}\right) \cos \omega_i t \end{aligned} \tag{12.75}$$

where,

$$k_A = k\cos\omega_o t \quad k_B = k\cos\left(\omega_o t - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \quad k_C = k\cos\left(\omega_o t - \frac{2\pi}{4}\right) \tag{12.76}$$

Substituting Equations 12.75 and 12.76 into Equation 12.74 and making use of $i_A + i_B + i_C = 0$,

$$i_a = \hat{I}_i \cos\omega_i t \tag{12.77}$$

where,

$$\hat{I}_i = \left(\frac{3}{2}k\right)\hat{I}_o \cos\phi_o \tag{12.78}$$

12.9.5 Input Power Factors other than Unity

The analysis above is shown for the input power factor of unity. For any other power factor, a similar analysis can be carried out. It shows another drawback of Matrix converters, that is the output voltage available goes down as the input power factor.

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, *Electric Drives: An Integrative Approach*, 2003 Edition (Minneapolis: MNPERE), www.MNPERE.com (soon to be published by John Wiley & Sons).
2. N. Mohan, P. Jose, T. Brekken, K. Mohapatra, "Explaining Synthesis of Three-Phase Sinusoidal Voltages Using SV-PWM in the First Power Electronics Course," conference record IEEE PEEW, June 2005, pp. 40–44.
3. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design*, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).
4. A. Nabae, I. Takahashi, and H. Akagi, "A New Neutral-Point-Clamped PWM Inverter,) *IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications* 17, no. 5 (September/October 1981): 518–523.
5. José Rodríguez, et al., "Multilevel Inverters: A Survey of Topologies, Controls, and Applications," *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics* 49, no. 4 (August 2002): 724–738.
6. V.T. Somasekhar, K. Gopakumar, M.R. Baiju, K.K. Mohapatra, L. Umanand, "A Multilevel Inverter System for an Induction Motor With Open-End Windings," *IEEE Transactions on Industrial Electronics* 52, no. 3, (June 2005): 824–836.
7. K. Mohapatra, P. Jose, A. Drolia, G. Aggarwal, S. Thuta, N. Mohan, "A Novel Carrier-Based PWM Scheme for Matrix Converters that is Easy to Implement," Conf. record IEEE 36th PESC, June 2005, pp. 2410–2414.

PROBLEMS

Switching Power-Pole

12.1. In a switch-mode converter pole-a, $V_d = 175$ V, $\hat{V}_{tri} = 5$ V, and $f_s = 20$ kHz, calculate the values of the control signal $v_{cntrl,a}$ and the pole duty-ratio d_a during which the switch is in its top position, for the following values of the average output voltage: $\bar{v}_{aN} = 125$ V and $\bar{v}_{aN} = 50$ V.

12.2. In a converter pole, including the ripple in the $i_a(t)$ waveform, show that the relationship between the currents on both sides of the switching-cycle-averaged power-pole is similar to that in an ideal transformer.

DC-Motor Drives

12.3. A switch-mode dc-dc converter uses a PWM-controller IC that has a triangular waveform signal at 25 kHz with $\hat{V}_{tri} = 1.5\,\text{V}$. If the input dc source voltage $V_d = 150$ V, calculate the gain k_{PWM} in Equation 12.19 of this switch-mode amplifier.

12.4. In a switch-mode dc-dc converter, $v_{cntrl}/\hat{V}_{tri} = 0.75$ with a switching frequency $f_s = 20$ kHz and $V_d = 150$ V. Calculate and plot the ripple in the output voltage $v_o(t)$.

12.5. A switch-mode dc-dc converter is operating at a switching frequency of 20 kHz, and $V_d = 150$ V. The average current being drawn by the dc motor is 8.0 A. In the equivalent circuit of the dc motor, $E_a = 100$ V, $R_a = 0.25\ \Omega$, and $L_a = 4$ mH. (a) Plot the output current and calculate the peak-to-peak ripple, and (b) plot the current on the dc-side of the converter.

12.6. In Problem 12.5, the motor goes into regenerative braking mode. The average current being supplied by the motor to the converter during braking is 7.0 A. Plot the voltage and current waveforms on both sides of this converter at that instant. Calculate the average power flow into the converter.

12.7. In Problem 12.5, calculate $\bar{i}_{da}$, $\bar{i}_{db}$, and $\bar{i}_d(= I_d)$.

12.8. Repeat Problem 12.5 if the motor is rotating in the reverse direction, with the same current draw and the same induced emf E_a value of the opposite polarity.

12.9. Repeat Problem 12.8 if the motor is braking while it has been rotating in the reverse direction. It supplies the same current and produces the same induced emf E_a value of the opposite polarity.

12.10. Repeat Problem 12.5 if a bi-polar voltage switching is used in the dc-dc converter. In such a switching scheme, the two bi-positional switches are operated in such a manner that when switch-*a* is in the top position, switch-*b* is in its bottom position, and vice versa. The switching signal for pole-*a* is derived by comparing the control voltage (as in Problem 12.5) with the triangular waveform.

Single-Phase Inverters

12.11. In a 1-phase UPS, $V_d = 350$ V, $\bar{v}_o(t) = 170\sin(2\pi \times 60t)$ V, and $\bar{i}_o(t) = 10\sin(2\pi \times 60t - 30^\circ)\,A$. Calculate and plot $d_a(t)$, $d_b(t)$, $\bar{v}_{aN}(t)$, $\bar{v}_{bN}(t)$, I_d, $i_{d2}(t)$, and $\bar{i}_d(t)$. Switching frequency $f_s = 20$ kHz.

12.12. In Problem 12.11, calculate $q_a(t)$ and $q_b(t)$ at $\omega t = 90^\circ$.

Three-Phase Inverters

12.13. Plot $d_a(t)$ if the output voltage of the converter pole-*a* is $\bar{v}_{aN}(t) = \frac{V_d}{2} + 0.85\,\frac{V_d}{2}\sin(\omega_1 t)$, where $\omega_1 = 2\pi \times 60$ rad/s.

12.14. In a three-phase dc-ac inverter, $V_d = 350$ V, $\hat{V}_{tri} = 1$ V, the maximum value of the control voltage reaches 0.8 V, and $f_1 = 45$ Hz. Calculate and plot (a) the duty-ratios $d_a(t)$, $d_b(t)$, $d_c(t)$, (b) the pole output voltages $\bar{v}_{aN}(t)$, $\bar{v}_{bN}(t)$, $\bar{v}_{cN}(t)$, and (c) the phase voltages $\bar{v}_{an}(t)$, $\bar{v}_{bn}(t)$, and $\bar{v}_{cn}(t)$.

12.15. In a balanced three-phase dc-ac converter, the phase-*a* average output voltage is $\bar{v}_{an}(t) = 112.5 \sin(\omega_1 t)$, where $V_d = 300$ V and $\omega_1 = 2\pi \times 45$ rad/s. The inductance L in each phase is 5 mH. The ac-motor internal voltage in phase A can be represented as $e_a(t) = 106.14 \sin(\omega_1 t - 6.6°)$ V. (a) Calculate and plot $d_a(t)$, $d_b(t)$, and $d_c(t)$, and (b) sketch $\bar{i}_a(t)$ and $\bar{i}_{da}(t)$.

12.16. In Problem 12.15, calculate and plot $\bar{i}_d(t)$, which is the average dc current drawn from the dc-side.

Simulation Problems

12.17. Simulate a single-phase inverter where $V_d = 300$ V, the output voltage v_0 is 150 V (rms) at the fundamental frequency, which is 45 Hz. The output current i_0 has an rms value of 10 A at a lagging power factor of 0.866. The switching frequency is $f_s = 1$ kHz. The output load can be simulated by a back-emf in series with a resistance of 2.0 Ω and an inductance of 10.0 mH.
(a) Obtain v_0 and i_0 waveforms.
(b) By Fourier analysis, obtain v_{01}, and plot v_{01} and i_0 waveforms.
(c) Obtain i_d waveform.
(d) By Fourier analysis, obtain I_d and i_{d2}, and plot them.
(e) Obtain the rms value of the high-frequency ripple current in i_d.

12.18. In the single-phase inverter of Problem 12.17, represent each of the two poles by their average model.
(a) Obtain $\bar{v}_0$ and $\bar{i}_0$ waveforms.
(b) Obtain $\bar{i}_d$ waveform.
(c) Obtain I_d and i_{d2}, and plot them.

12.19. Simulate a three-phase inverter where $V_d = 350$ V, the output voltage V_{LL} is 175 V (rms) at the fundamental frequency, which is 45 Hz. The output current has an rms value of 10 A at a lagging power factor of 0.866. The switching frequency is $f_s = 1$ kHz. The per-phase output load can be simulated by a back-emf in series with a resistance of 2.0 Ω and an inductance of 10.0 mH.
(a) Obtain the waveforms for v_{an} (with respect to load-neutral), i_a and i_d.
(b) Obtain v_{an1} by means of Fourier analysis of the v_{an} waveform.
(c) Using the results of part b, obtain the ripple component v_{ripple} waveform in the output voltage.

12.20. In the three-phase inverter of Problem 12.19, represent each of the three poles by their average model.
(a) Observe the waveforms for $\bar{v}_{an}$, $\bar{i}_a$ and $\bar{i}_d$.
(b) Append the output current waveforms of the switching model of Problem 12.19.

APPENDIX 12A Space Vector Pulse-Width-Modulation (SV-PWM)

The availability of digital signal processors in control of electric drives provides an opportunity to improve upon the sine-PWM by means of space vector pulse-width modulation (SV-PWM). The following discussion is taken from Reference 12A-1.

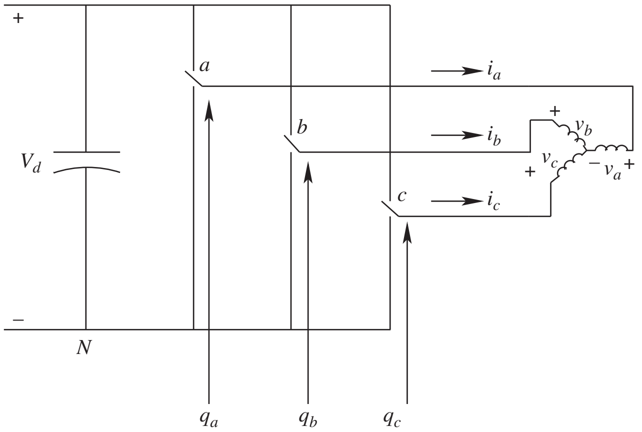


FIGURE 12A.1 Inverter with a three-phase output.

12A.1 DEFINITION OF SPACE VECTORS

Space vectors can be easily understood by considering a balanced three-phase load, for example an ac-machine, as shown in Figure 12A.1, where a-axis is taken as the reference axis, and the phase axes for the other two phases are $2\pi/3$ and $4\pi/3$ radians away in the counterclockwise direction.

The stator space voltage vector at any instant is defined, as follows, by multiplying the stator phase voltages at that instant by their respective axes orientation and summing them:

$$\vec{v}_s(t) = v_a(t)e^{j0} + v_b(t)e^{j2\pi/3} + v_c(t)e^{j4\pi/3} \tag{12A.1}$$

In terms of the inverter output voltages with respect to the negative dc bus "N" in Figure 12A.1, and hypothetically assuming the stator neutral as a reference ground,

$$v_a = v_{aN} + v_N; \quad v_b = v_{bN} + v_N; \quad v_c = v_{cN} + v_N; \tag{12A.2}$$

Substituting Equations 12A.2 into Equation 12A.1 and recognizing that,

$$e^{j0} + e^{j2\pi/3} + e^{j4\pi/3} = 0, \tag{12A.3}$$

the instantaneous stator voltage space vector can be written in terms of the inverter output voltages as,

$$\vec{v}_s(t) = v_{aN}e^{j0} + v_{bN}e^{j2\pi/3} + v_{cN}e^{j4\pi/3} \tag{12A.4}$$

A switch in an inverter pole of Figure 12A.1 is in the "up" position if the pole switching function $q = 1$, otherwise in the "down" position if $q = 0$. In terms of the switching functions, the instantaneous voltage space vector can be written as,

$$\vec{v}_s(t) = V_d(q_a e^{j0} + q_b e^{j2\pi/3} + q_c e^{j4\pi/3}) \tag{12A.5}$$

With three poles, eight switch-status combinations are possible. In Equation 12A.5, the instantaneous stator voltage vector $\vec{v}_s(t)$ can take on one of the following seven distinct instantaneous values where in a digital representation, phase "a" represents the least significant digit and phase "c" the most significant digit (for example, the resulting voltage vector due to the switch-status combination $\underbrace{011}_{(=3)}$ is represented as $\vec{v}_3$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\vec{v}_s(000) &= \vec{v}_0 = 0\\
\vec{v}_s(001) &= \vec{v}_1 = V_d e^{j0}\\
\vec{v}_s(010) &= \vec{v}_2 = V_d e^{j2\pi/3}\\
\vec{v}_s(011) &= \vec{v}_3 = V_d e^{j\pi/3}\\
\vec{v}_s(100) &= \vec{v}_4 = V_d e^{j4\pi/3}\\
\vec{v}_s(101) &= \vec{v}_5 = V_d e^{j5\pi/3}\\
\vec{v}_s(110) &= \vec{v}_6 = V_d e^{j\pi}\\
\vec{v}_s(111) &= \vec{v}_7 = 0
\end{aligned} \tag{12A.6}$$

In Equation 12A.6, $\vec{v}_0$ and $\vec{v}_7$ are the zero vectors because of their zero value. The resulting instantaneous stator voltage vectors, which we will call the "basic vectors", are plotted in Figure 12A.2. The basic vectors form six sectors as shown in Figure 12A.2.

It should be noted that the basic voltage vectors are the only "true" instantaneous voltages. However, the machine phase voltages that we are aiming to synthesize, for example in Equation 12A.1, are the switching-cycle averaged voltages and therefore, to be rigorous, they should be written as $\bar{v}_a(t)$ and so on. Therefore, the switching-cycle averaged space vector in Equation 12A.1 will have to be written as $\vec{\bar{v}}_s(t)$. This is not done in the analysis presented here simply to avoid complicating the symbols, but the intent should be clearly understood. That is, in Figure 12A.2, repeating again, the basic vectors are the truly instantaneous space vectors, which by time-weighted averaging

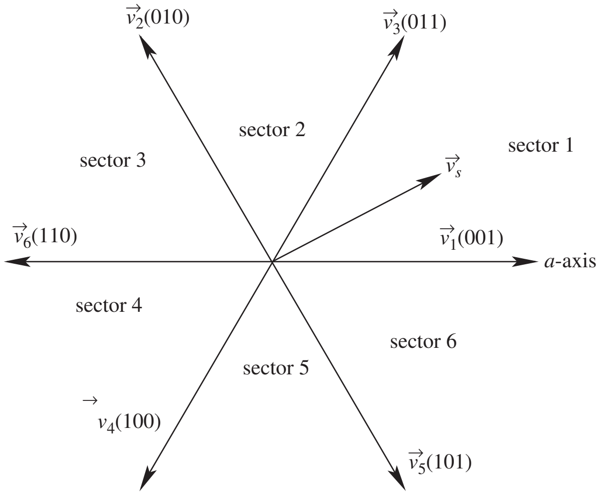


FIGURE 12A.2 Basic voltage vectors ($\vec{v}_0$ and $\vec{v}_7$ are not shown).

called SV-PWM and as discussed in the next section, allow us to synthesis the space vector $\vec{v}_s(t)$ of Figure 12A.2, which is switching-cycle averaged.

12A.2 SV-PWM

The objective of the PWM control of the inverter switches is to synthesize the desired reference stator voltage space vector in an optimum manner with the following objectives:

- A constant switching frequency f_s.
- Smallest instantaneous deviation from its reference value.
- Maximum utilization of the available dc-bus voltages.
- Lowest ripple in the motor current.
- Minimum switching loss in the inverter.

The above conditions are generally met if the average voltage vector is synthesized by means of the two instantaneous basic non-zero voltage vectors that form the sector (in which the average voltage vector to be synthesized lies) and both the zero voltage vectors, such that each transition causes change of only one switch status to minimize the inverter switching loss.

In the following analysis, we will focus on the average voltage vector in sector 1 with the aim of generalizing the discussion to all sectors. To synthesize an average voltage vector $\vec{v}_s(=\hat{V}_s e^{j\theta_s})$ over a time period T_s in Figure 12A.3, the adjoining basic vectors $\vec{v}_1$ and $\vec{v}_3$ are applied for intervals xT_s and yT_s respectively, and the zero vectors $\vec{v}_0$ and $\vec{v}_7$ are applied for a total duration of zT_s.

In terms of the basic voltage vectors, the average voltage vector can be expressed as,

$$\vec{v}_s = \frac{1}{T_s}[xT_s\vec{v}_1 + yT_s\vec{v}_3 + zT_s \cdot 0] \tag{12A.7}$$

or

$$\vec{v}_s = x\vec{v}_1 + y\vec{v}_3 \tag{12A.8}$$

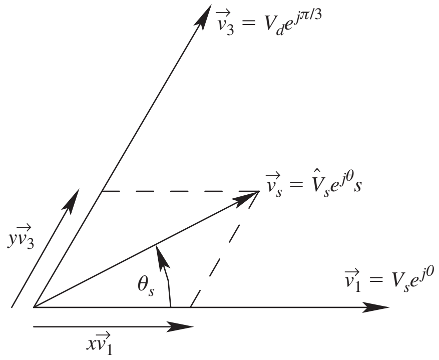

$\vec{v}_3 = V_d e^{j\pi/3}$
$\vec{v}_s = \hat{V}_s e^{j\theta_s}$
$y\vec{v}_3$
θ_s
$\vec{v}_1 = V_s e^{j0}$
$x\vec{v}_1$

FIGURE 12A.3 Voltage vector in sector 1.

where,

$$x + y + z = 1 \tag{12A.9}$$

In Equation 12A.8, expressing voltage vectors in terms of their amplitude and phase angles results in,

$$\hat{V}_s e^{j\theta_s} = xV_d e^{j0} + yV_d e^{j\pi/3} \tag{12A.10}$$

By equating real and imaginary terms on both sides of Equation 12A.10, we can solve for x and y (in terms the given values of $\hat{V}_s$, θ_s and V_d) to synthesize the desired average space vector in sector 1.

Having determined the durations for the adjoining basic vectors and the two zero vectors, the next task is to relate the above discussion to the actual poles (a, b, and c). Note in Figure 12A.2 that in any sector, the adjoining basic vectors differ in one position, for example in sector 1 with the basic vectors $\vec{v}_1(001)$ and $\vec{v}_3(011)$, only the pole "b" differs in the switch position. For sector 1, the switching pattern in Figure 12A.4 shows that pole-a is in "up" position during the sum of xT_s, yT_s, and z_7T_s intervals, and hence for the longest interval of the three poles. Next in the length of duration in the "up" position is pole-b for the sum of yT_s, and z_7T_s intervals. The smallest in the length of duration is pole-c for only z_7T_s interval. Each transition requires a change in switch state in only one of the poles, as shown in Figure 12A.4. Similar switching patterns for the three poles can be generated for any other sector.

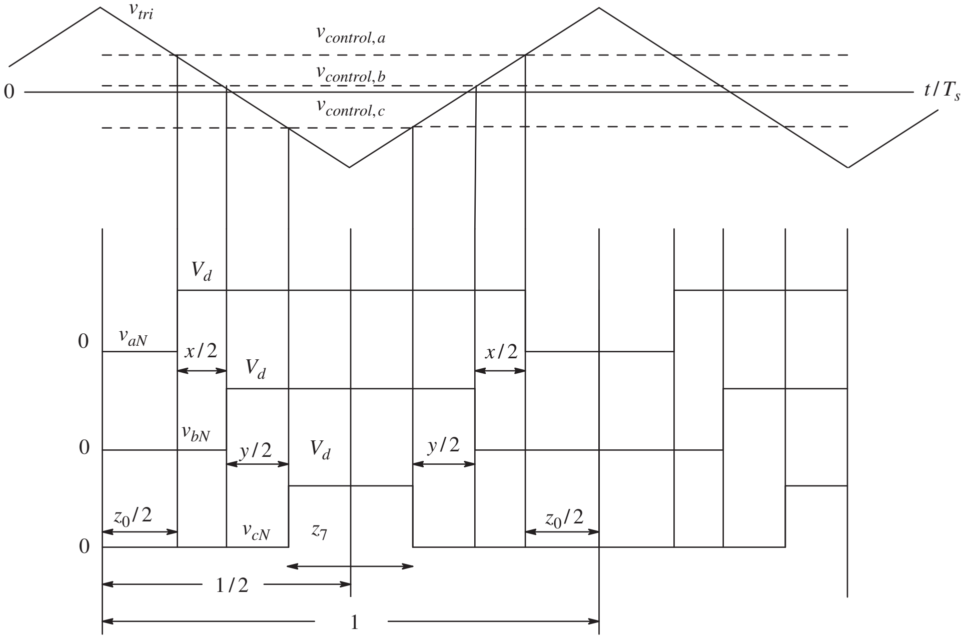


FIGURE 12A.4 Waveforms in sector 1 ($z = z_0 + z_7$).

12A.3 LIMIT ON THE AMPLITUDE $\hat{V}_s$ OF THE STATOR VOLTAGE SPACE VECTOR $\vec{v}_s$

First we will establish the absolute limit on the amplitude $\hat{V}_s$ of the average stator voltage space vector at various angles. The limit on the amplitude equals V_d (the dc-bus voltage) if the average voltage vector lies along a non-zero basic voltage vector. In between the basic vectors, the limit on the average voltage vector amplitude is that its tip can lie on the straight lines shown in Figure 12A.5 forming a hexagon.

However, the maximum amplitude of the output voltage $\vec{v}_s$ should be limited to the circle within the hexagon in Figure 12A.5 to prevent distortion in the resulting currents. This can be easily concluded from the fact that in a balanced sinusoidal steady state, the voltage vector $\vec{v}_s$ rotates at the synchronous speed $\omega_{syn}(= 2\pi f)$, with its constant amplitude, where f is the frequency of the phase voltages. At its maximum amplitude,

$$\vec{v}_{s,\max}(t) = \hat{V}_{s,\max} e^{j\omega_{syn}t} \tag{12A.11}$$

Therefore, the maximum value that $\hat{V}_s$ can attain is,

$$\hat{V}_{s,\max} = V_d \cos\left(\frac{60^\circ}{2}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} V_d \tag{12A.12}$$

In a balanced steady state, the peak of the phase voltages is 2/3 times the amplitude of the space vector. Therefore, from Equation 12A.12, the corresponding limits on the phase voltage and the line-line voltages are as follows:

$$\hat{V}_{phase,\max} = \frac{2}{3}\hat{V}_{s,\max} = \frac{V_d}{\sqrt{3}} \tag{12A.13}$$

and,

$$V_{LL,\max}(\text{rms}) = \sqrt{3}\frac{\hat{V}_{phase,\max}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{V_d}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707\, V_d(\text{SV-PWM}) \tag{12A.14}$$

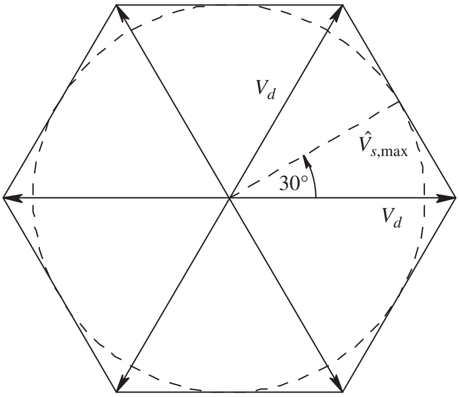


FIGURE 12A.5 Limit on amplitude $\hat{V}_s$.

The Sine-PWM in the linear range, as discussed before, results in a maximum voltage,

$$V_{LL,\max}(\text{rms}) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{2}} V_d = 0.612\ V_d \ \ (\text{Sine-PWM}) \tag{12A.15}$$

Comparison of Equations 12A.14 and 12A.15 shows that the SV-PWM discussed in this chapter better utilizes the dc bus voltage and results in a higher limit on the available output voltage by a factor of $(2/\sqrt{3})$, or by approximately 15% higher, compared to the Sine-PWM.

REFERENCES

12A.1. N. Mohan, *Advanced Electric Drives: Analysis, Control and Modeling using Simulink*, 2011 (New York: John Wiley & Sons).

12A.2. H. W. van der Broek et al, “Analysis and Realization of a Pulse Width Modulator based on Voltage Space Vectors,” IEEE Industry Applications Society Proceedings (1986), 244−251.

12A.3. J. Holtz, “Pulse Width Modulation for Electric Power Converters,” Chapter 4 in B. K. Bose, *Power Electronics and Variable Frequency Drives*, (Piscataway, NJ: IEEE Press, 1997).

PROBLEMS

12A.1. In a converter $V_d = 700$ V. To synthesize an average stator voltage-vector $\vec{v}_s^a = 563.38\,e^{j0.44}$ V, calculate x, y and z.

12A.2. Given that $\vec{v}_s^a = 563.38\,e^{j0.44}$ V, calculate the phase-voltage components.

13

THYRISTOR CONVERTERS

13.1 INTRODUCTION

Historically, thyristor converters were used to perform tasks that are now performed by switch-mode converters discussed in previous chapters. Thyristor converters are now typically used in utility applications at very high power levels. In this chapter, we will examine the operating principles of thyristor-based converters.

13.2 THYRISTORS (SCRs)

Thyristors are a device that can be considered as a controlled diode. Like diodes, they are available in very large voltage and current ratings, making them attractive for use in applications at very high power levels.

Thyristors, shown by their symbol in Figure 13.1a are sometimes referred to by their trade name of Silicon Controlled Rectifiers (SCRs). These are 4-layer (p-n-p-n) devices as shown in Figure 13.1b. When a reverse ($v_{AK} < 0$) voltage is applied, the flow of current is blocked by the junctions pn1 and pn3. When a forward ($v_{AK} > 0$) polarity voltage is applied and the gate terminal is open, the flow of current is blocked by the junction pn2, and the thyristor is considered to be in a forward-blocking state. In this forward-blocking state, applying a small positive voltage to the gate with respect to the cathode for a short interval supplies a pulse of gate current i_G that latches the thyristor in its on state, and subsequently the gate-current pulse can be removed.

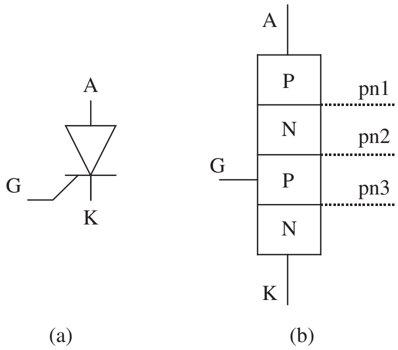
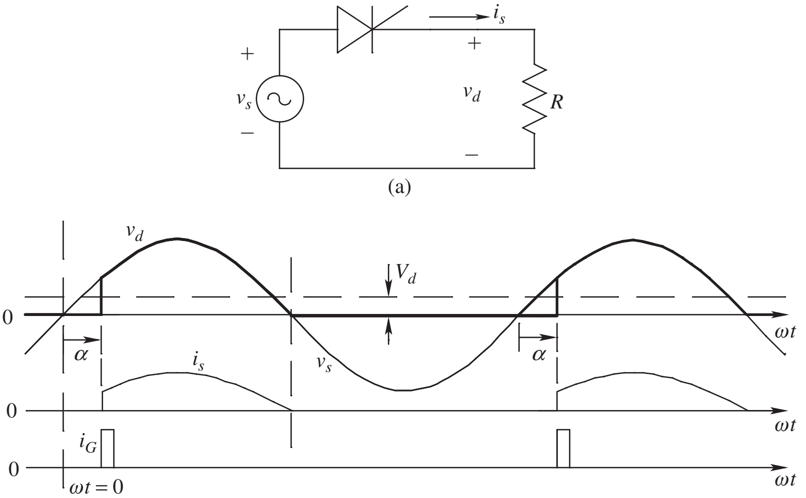


FIGURE 13.1 Thyristors.

13.2.1 Primitive Thyristor Rectifier Circuits

The behavior of thyristors is illustrated by means of a simple circuit with a resistive load in Figure 13.2a. At $\omega t = 0$, the positive-half-cycle of the input voltage begins, beyond which a forward voltage appears across the thyristor (anode A is positive with respect to cathode K), and if the thyristor were a diode, a current would begin to flow in this circuit. This instant we will refer as *the instant of natural conduction*. With the thyristor in a forward-blocking state, the start of conduction can be controlled (delayed) with respect to the instant of natural conduction, which is $\omega t = 0$ in this circuit, by a delay angle α at which instant the gate-current pulse is applied. Once in the conducting state, the thyristor behaves like a diode with a very small voltage drop of the order of 1 to 2 volts across it (we will idealize it as zero), and the load voltage v_d equals v_s in Figure 13.2b, where v_d is indicated by the darker waveform. The current equals v_d/R as shown in Figure 13.2b.



(a)

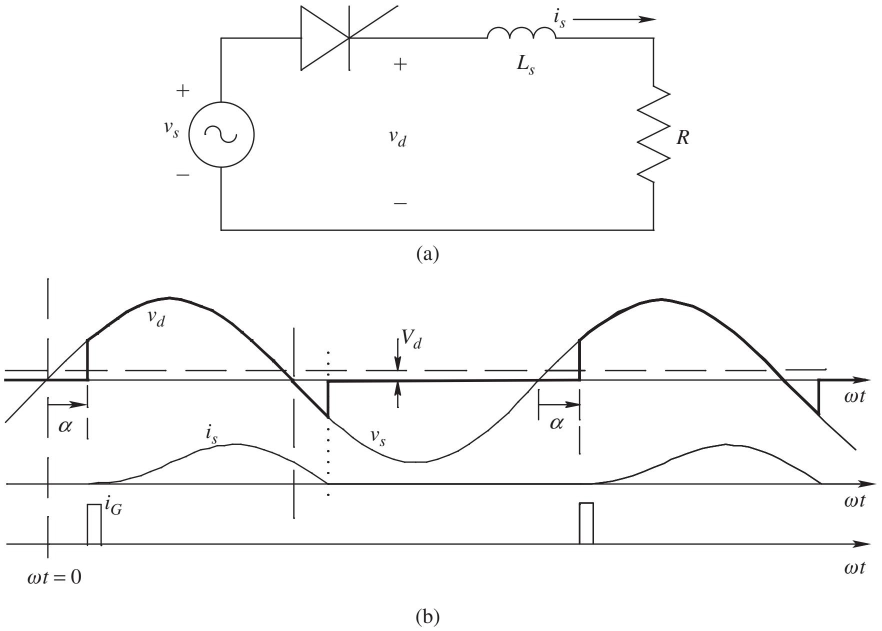
(b)

FIGURE 13.2 A simple thyristor circuit with a resistive load.

The current declines to zero at $\omega t = \pi$, and since it cannot reverse through the thyristor, it stays zero during the negative half-cycle of the voltage waveform, as shown in Figure 13.2b. The current through the thyristor stays zero until the gate pulse is applied in the next cycle of the voltage waveform. The average value V_d of the load voltage is indicated by the dotted line in Figure 13.2b. This average value can be calculated analytically from the v_d waveform in Figure 13.2b as,

$$V_d = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\alpha}^{\pi} \hat{V}_s \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{\hat{V}_s}{2\pi}(1 + \cos \alpha) \qquad (13.1)$$

where $\hat{V}_s$ is the peak of the input ac voltage. From Equation 13.1, it is clear that we can control the average load voltage by controlling the delay angle α; this was not possible in the diode-rectifier circuits of Chapter 5.



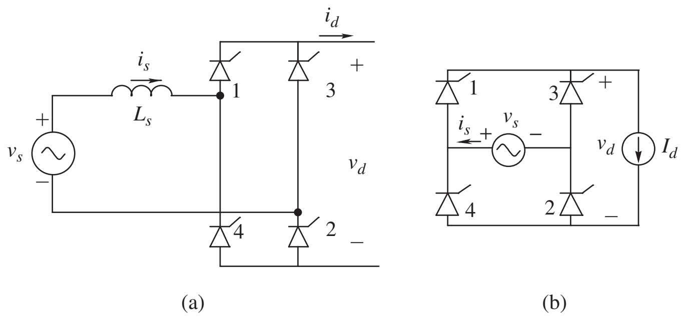
i_s
L_s
+
v_s
−
+
v_d
−
R
(a)
v_d
V_d
0
α
i_s
v_s
α
ωt
0
ωt
i_G
0
$\omega t = 0$
ωt
(b)

FIGURE 13.3 Thyristor circuit with a resistive load and a series inductance.

To consider the influence of inductance in series, consider the primitive circuit of Figure 13.3a. The associated waveforms in Figure 13.3b show that due to the inductor, the current builds up slowly and comes to zero sometime in the negative half-cycle of the input voltage. The current through the thyristor cannot reverse and remains zero for the remainder of the input voltage cycle. This principle can be extended to practical circuits discussed below.

13.3 SINGLE-PHASE, PHASE-CONTROLLED THYRISTOR CONVERTERS

Figure 13.4a shows a commonly used Full-Bridge phase-controlled converter for controlled rectification of the single-phase utility voltage. To understand the operating



i_d
i_s
L_s
+
v_s
−
1
3
+
v_d
4
2
−
(a)
1
3
+
i_s
+
v_s
−
v_d
I_d
4
2
−
(b)

FIGURE 13.4 Full-Bridge, single-phase thyristor converter.

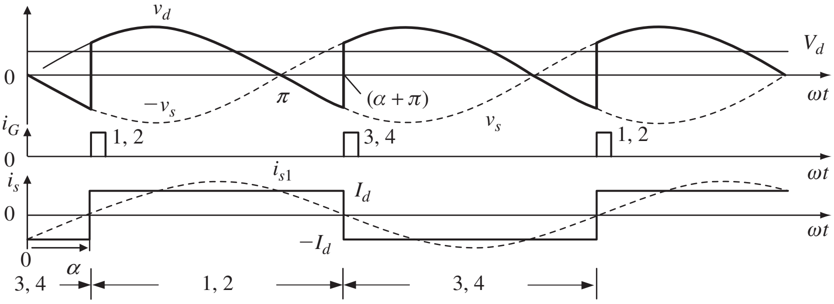


FIGURE 13.5 Single-phase thyristor converter waveforms.

principle, it is redrawn in Figure 13.4b, where the ac-side inductance L_s is ignored and the dc-side load is represented as drawing a constant current I_d. The waveforms are shown in Figure 13.5.

Thyristors (1, 2) and (3, 4) are treated as two pairs, where each thyristor pair is supplied gate pulses delayed by an angle α with respect to the instant of natural conduction at $\omega t = 0°$ for thyristors (1, 2) and at $\omega t = 180°$ for 3 and 4, as shown in Figure 13.5.

In the positive half-cycle of the input voltage, thyristors 1 and 2 are forward-blocking until they are gated at $\omega t = \alpha$ when they immediately begin to conduct I_d (because L_s is assumed to be zero), and thyristors 3 and 4 become reverse-blocking. In this state,

$$v_d(t) = v_s(t) \quad \text{and} \quad i_s(t) = I_d \qquad \alpha < \omega t \leq \alpha + \pi \tag{13.2}$$

These relationships hold true until $\alpha + \pi$ in the negative half-cycle of the input voltage, when thyristors 3 and 4 are gated and begin conducting I_d. In this state,

$$v_d(t) = -v_s(t) \quad \text{and} \quad i_s(t) = -I_d \qquad \alpha + \pi < \omega t \leq \alpha + 2\pi \tag{13.3}$$

which holds true for one half-cycle, until the next half-cycle begins with the gating of thyristors 1 and 2.

The average value V_d of the voltage across the dc-side of the converter can be obtained by averaging the $v_d(t)$ waveform in Figure 13.5 over only one half-cycle (by symmetry) during $\alpha < \omega t \leq \alpha + \pi$:

$$V_d = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+\pi} \hat{V}_s \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{2}{\pi} \hat{V}_s \cos \alpha \tag{13.4}$$

On the ac-side, the input current i_s waveform is shifted by an angle α with respect to the input voltage as shown in Figure 13.5, and the fundamental-frequency component $i_{s1}(t)$ has a peak value of,

$$\hat{I}_{s1} = \frac{4}{\pi} I_d \tag{13.5}$$

In terms of voltage and current peak values, the power drawn from the ac-side is,

$$P = \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s \hat{I}_{s1} \cos\alpha \tag{13.6}$$

Assuming no power loss in the thyristor converter, the input power equals the power to the dc-side of the converter. Using Equations 13.4 and 13.5, we can reconfirm the following relationship:

$$P = \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s \hat{I}_{s1} \cos\alpha = V_d I_d \tag{13.7}$$

In this converter, the current is unidirectional, but the dc-side voltage can be controlled and can be of either polarity. Therefore, the power flow can be controlled by the delay angle α; increasing it toward 90° reduces the average dc-side voltage V_d while simultaneously shifting the input current $i_s(t)$ waveform farther away with respect to the input voltage waveform. The dc voltage as a function of α is plotted in Figure 13.6a and the corresponding power direction is shown in Figure 13.6b. The waveforms in Figure 13.5 show that for the delay angle α in a range of 0° to 90°, V_d has a positive value as also plotted in Figures 13.6a and b, and the converter operates as a rectifier, with power flowing from the ac-side to the dc-side.

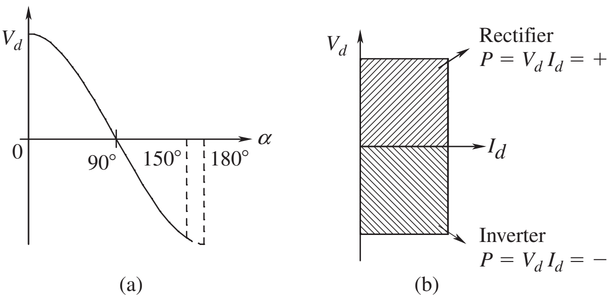


FIGURE 13.6 Effect of the delay angle α.

Delaying the gating pulse such that α is greater than 90° in Figure 13.5 makes V_d negative (also confirmed by Equation 13.4), and the converter operates as an inverter as illustrated in Example 13.1.

Example 13.1
Draw the waveforms for the full-bridge thyristor converter of Figure 13.4b if it's operating in an inverter mode with the delay angle α equal to 150°.

Solution Since α now equals 150°, in comparison to Figure 13.5 the i_s waveform is shifted by 150° with respect to v_s waveform as shown in Figure 13.7.

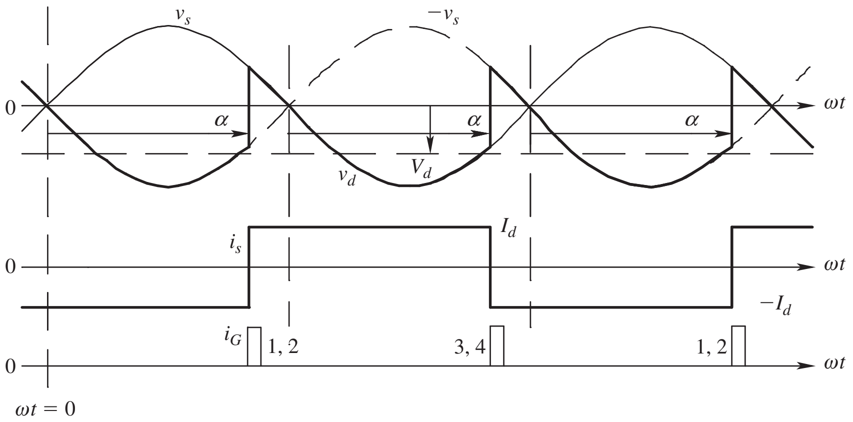


FIGURE 13.7 Single-phase thyristor converter in an inverter mode with $\alpha = 150°$.

In the inverter mode, as shown in Figure 13.6b, power flows from the dc-side to the ac-side. In practical circuits with inductance in series on the ac side, the upper limit on α in the inverter mode is less than 180°, for example 160°, as shown in Figure 13.6a, to avoid a phenomenon known as the commutation failure, where the current fails to commutate fully from the conducting thyristor pair to the next pair, prior to the instant beyond which the conducting pair keeps on conducting for another half-cycle. This commutation-failure phenomenon is described in greater detail in [1].

13.3.1 Current Harmonics and Reactive Power Requirement

As can be seen from the ac-side current waveform i_s in Figure 13.5, the current is rectangular, and the fundamental-frequency waveform is drawn dotted whose amplitude $\hat{I}_{s1}$ is given in Equation 13.5. From Fourier analysis, the harmonics h of i_s can be expressed in terms of the fundamental frequency component as,

$$\hat{I}_{sh} = \frac{\hat{I}_{s1}}{h} \quad \text{(where } h \text{ takes on odd values } 3, 5, 7, \text{ etc.)} \tag{13.8}$$

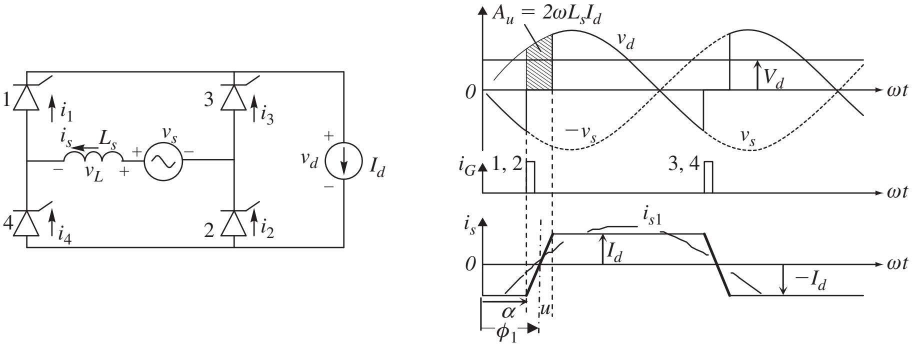
As can be observed from Figure 13.5, i_{s1} is displaced with respect to v_s by the delay angle α. Therefore, the reactive power drawn by the converter is,

$$Q = \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s \hat{I}s1 \sin\alpha \tag{13.9}$$

13.3.2 Effect of L_s on Current Commutation

Previously, our assumption was that the ac-side inductance L_s equals zero. Now consider the circuit of Figure 13.8a. Now, the input current takes a finite amount of time to reverse its direction through the ac-side inductance as the current "commutates" from one thyristor pair to the next.

From basic principles, we know that changing the current through the inductor L_s in the circuit of Figure 13.8a requires a finite amount of volt-seconds. The dc-side is still



(a) (b)

FIGURE 13.8 Effect of L_s on Current Commutation.

represented by a dc current I_d. The waveforms are shown in Figure 13.8b, where thyristors 3 and 4 are conducting prior to $\omega t = \alpha$, and $i_s = -I_d$.

At $\omega t = \alpha$, thyristors 1 and 2, which have been forward blocking, are gated, and hence they immediately begin to conduct. However, the current through them doesn't jump instantaneously as in the case of $L_s = 0$ where i_s instantaneously changed from $(-I_d)$ to $(+I_d)$. With a finite L_s, during a short interval called the commutation interval u, all thyristors conduct, thus resulting in $v_d = 0$ and applying v_s across L_s. To correspond to Figure 13.8b where waveforms are plotted with respect to ωt, we will calculate the commutation voltage-integral in volt-radians rather than in volt-seconds. The volt-radians needed to change the inductor current from $(-I_d)$ to $(+I_d)$ can be calculated by integrating the inductor voltage $v_L (= L_s \cdot di_s/dt)$ from α to $(\alpha + u)$, as follows:

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+u} v_L \, d(\omega t) = L_s \int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+u} \frac{di_s}{dt} \, d(\omega t) = \omega L_s \int_{-I_d}^{I_d} \frac{di_s}{\cancel{dt}} \cancel{dt} = \omega L_s \int_{-I_d}^{I_d} di_s = 2\omega L_s I_d \tag{13.10}$$

The above volt-radians are "lost" from the integral of the dc-side voltage waveform in Figure 13.8b every half-cycle, as shown by the shaded area A_u in Figure 13.8b. Therefore, dividing the volt-radians in Equation 13.10 by the π radians each half-cycle, the voltage drop in the dc-side voltage is,

$$\Delta V_d = \frac{2}{\pi} \omega L_s I_d \tag{13.11}$$

This voltage is lost from the dc-side average voltage in the presence of L_s. Therefore, the average voltage is smaller than that in Equation 13.4:

$$V_d = \frac{2}{\pi} \hat{V}_s \cos \alpha - \frac{2}{\pi} \omega L_s I_d \tag{13.12}$$

We should note that the voltage drop in the presence of L_s doesn't mean a power loss in L_s; it simply means a reduction in the voltage available on the dc-side.

Example 13.2

In a single-phase thyristor converter of Figure 13.8a including L_s, (a) derive the expression for the commutation angle u, and (b) calculate it if $V_s(\text{rms}) = 120\,\text{V}$, $L_s = 5\,\text{mH}$, $I_d = 10$ A, and $\alpha = 30°$. Frequency $f = 60$ Hz.

Solution

a. From Figure 13.8a, in Equation 13.10 during the commutation interval, $v_L = v_s$. Therefore, substituting v_s for v_L in Equation 13.10, (a)

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+u} \hat{V}_s \sin \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \hat{V}_s[\cos \alpha - \cos(\alpha + u)] = 2\omega L_s I_d$$

or,

$$\cos(\alpha + u) = \cos \alpha - \frac{2\omega L_s I_d}{\hat{V}_s} \tag{13.13}$$

b. Substituting the given values in Equation 13.13, where $\hat{V}_s = \sqrt{2}\, V_s(\text{rms})$, the commutation angle $u = 19.92°$.

Assuming a linear increase/decrease in thyristor currents in Figure 13.8, the fundamental frequency component i_{s1} shown dotted in Figure 13.8b lags the voltage v_s by an angle ϕ_1:

$$\phi_1 \simeq \alpha + \frac{u}{2} \tag{13.14}$$

where the approximately-equal sign is due to the assumption of linear increase/decrease in thyristor currents. Therefore, the reactive power drawn by the converter is,

$$Q \simeq \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_s \hat{I}_{s1} \sin\left(\alpha + \frac{u}{2}\right) \tag{13.15}$$

13.4 THREE-PHASE, FULL-BRIDGE THYRISTOR CONVERTERS

Three-phase Full-Bridge converters use six thyristors, as shown in Figure 13.9a. A simplified converter for initial analysis is shown in Figure 13.9b, where the ac-side inductance L_s is assumed zero, thyristors are divided into a top group and a bottom group, similar to the three-phase diode rectifiers, and the dc-side is represented by a current source I_d.

The converter waveforms, where the delay angle α (measured with respect to the instant at which phase voltage waveforms cross each other) is zero, are similar to that in diode rectifiers discussed in Chapter 5 (see Figures 5.11 and 5.12). The average

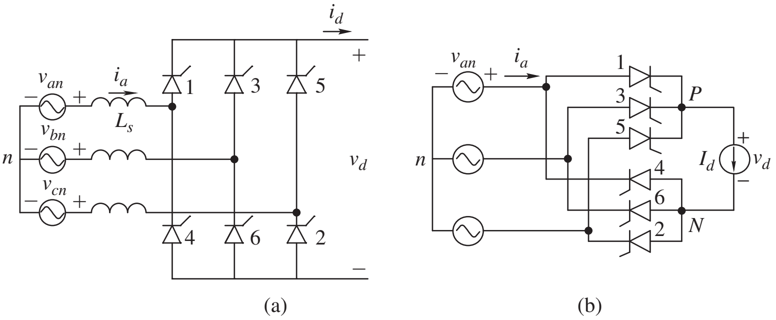


FIGURE 13.9 Three-phase Full-Bridge thyristor converter.

dc voltage is as calculated in Equation 5.33, where $\hat{V}_{LL}$ is the peak value of the ac input voltage:

$$V_{do} = \frac{1}{\pi/3} \int_{-\pi/6}^{\pi/6} \hat{V}_{LL} \cos \omega t \cdot d(\omega t) = \frac{3}{\pi} \hat{V}_{LL} \tag{13.16}$$

Delaying the gate pulses to the thyristors by an angle α measured with respect to their instants of natural conductions, the waveforms are shown in Figure 13.10, where $L_s = 0$.

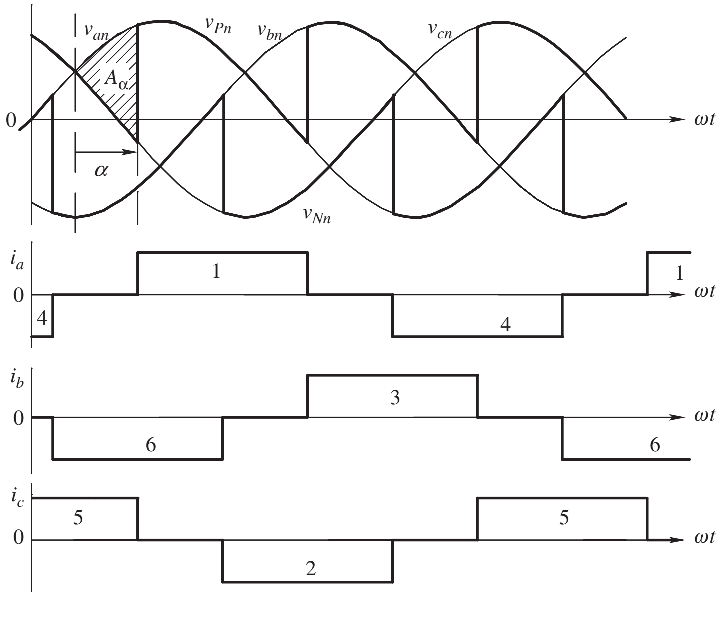


FIGURE 13.10 Waveforms with $L_s = 0$.

In the dc-side output voltage waveforms, the area A_α corresponds to "volt-radians loss" due to delaying the gate pulses by α every $\pi/3$ radian. Assuming the time-origin as shown in Figure 13.10 at the instant at which v_{an} and v_{cn} waveforms cross, the line-line voltage v_{ac} waveform can be expressed as $\hat{V}_{LL}\sin\omega t$. Therefore from Figure 13.10, the drop ΔV_α in the average dc-side voltage can be calculated as,

$$\Delta V_\alpha = \frac{1}{\pi/3}\underbrace{\int_0^\alpha \hat{V}_{LL}\sin\omega t\cdot d(\omega t)}_{A_\alpha} = \frac{3}{\pi}\hat{V}_{LL}(1-\cos\alpha) \tag{13.17a}$$

Using Equations 13.16 and 13.17a, with a finite delay angle α, the dc-side voltage is,

$$V_{d\alpha} = \frac{3}{\pi}\hat{V}_{LL}\cos\alpha = V_{do}\cos\alpha \tag{13.17b}$$

The phase currents in Figure 13.9a can be expressed as,

$$i_a = i_1 - i_4 \qquad i_b = i_3 - i_6 \qquad i_c = i_5 - i_2 \tag{13.18}$$

where i_1, i_2, and so on are the currents in the forward direction through the thyristors. Currents through all three phases are shown in Figure 13.10. These waveforms show that each thyristor conducts for 120° during a fundamental-frequency cycle, and the effect of the delay angle α is to shift current waveforms by this angle to the right, causing them to lag their input voltages by this angle.

Similar to single-phase converters, three-phase thyristor converters go into the inverter mode with the delay angle α exceeding 90°. In the inverter mode, the upper limit on α is less than 180° to avoid commutation failure, just like in single-phase converters. Further details on three-phase thyristor converters can be found in Reference [1].

Example 13.3

Three-phase thyristor converter of Figure 13.9b is operating in its inverter mode with $\alpha = 150°$. Draw waveforms similar to Figure 13.10 for this operating condition.

Solution These waveforms for $\alpha = 150°$ in the inverter mode are shown in Figure 13.11.

13.4.1 Current Harmonics and Reactive Power Requirement

As can be seen from the ac-side current i_a, for example, in Figure 13.10, the current has a rectangular waveform, and the fundamental-frequency component, from Fourier analysis, has an amplitude $\hat{I}_{a1}$:

$$\hat{I}_{a1} = \frac{\sqrt{12}}{\pi}I_d \tag{13.19}$$

The harmonics h of i_a can be expressed in terms of the fundamental frequency component as,

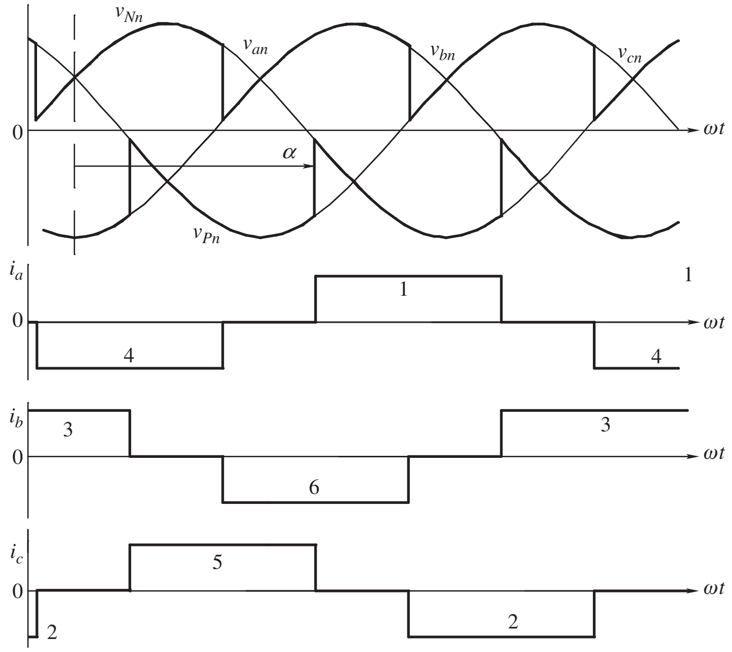


FIGURE 13.11 Waveforms in the inverter mode.

$$\hat{I}_{ah} = \frac{\hat{I}_{a1}}{h} \text{ (where } h = 6n \pm 1 \text{ and } n = 1,\ 2,\ 3, \text{etc.)} \tag{13.20}$$

In Figure 13.10, i_{a1} is displaced with respect to v_{an} by the delay angle α. Therefore, the reactive power drawn by the three-phase converter is,

$$Q = \frac{3}{2} \hat{V}_a \hat{I}_{a1} \sin \alpha \tag{13.21}$$

13.4.2 Effect of L_s

Unlike in the previous section, due to the presence of L_s, it takes a finite commutation interval u for the current to commutate from one thyristor to the next, for example from thyristor 5 connected to phase-c to the thyristor 1 connected to phase-a. The sub-circuit under discussion during the commutation interval is shown in Figure 13.12a.

During the commutation interval u, from α to $\alpha + u$, both the thyristors are conducting as the current I_d tries to commutate from 5 to 1, and as derived in Example 13.4, the voltage v_{Pn} is the average of the two phase voltages:

$$v_{Pn} = \frac{v_{an} + v_{cn}}{2} \quad \alpha < \omega t < \alpha + u \tag{13.22}$$

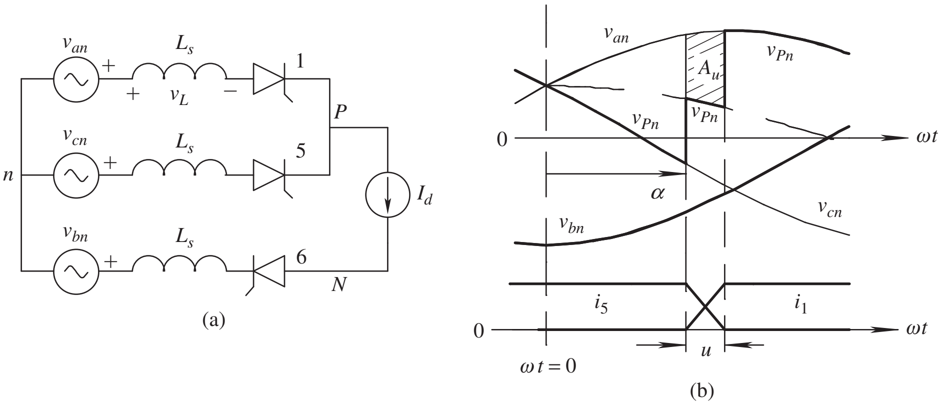


FIGURE 13.12 Commutation of current from thyristor 5 to thyristor 1.

which is shown in Figure 13.12b. As a consequence, the resulting voltage waveforms are shown in Figure 13.13, where such a commutation takes place every 60°. Considering Figure 13.12a during the commutation interval, v_{Pn} is reduced due to the voltage drop across the inductance in series with the thyristor 1 to which the current is commutating from 0 to $(+I_d)$. Using the procedure in Equation 13.10 for single-phase converters, the area A_u (in volt-radians) in Figure 13.13 can be calculated as,

$$A_u = \int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+u} v_L d(\omega t) = \omega L_s \int_{0}^{I_d} di_s = \omega L_s I_d \tag{13.23}$$

Since such a commutation takes place every $\pi/3$ radians, the average dc output voltage is reduced by the area A_u divided by $\pi/3$ radians. Making use of Equation 13.23, the drop in the average dc-side voltage is,

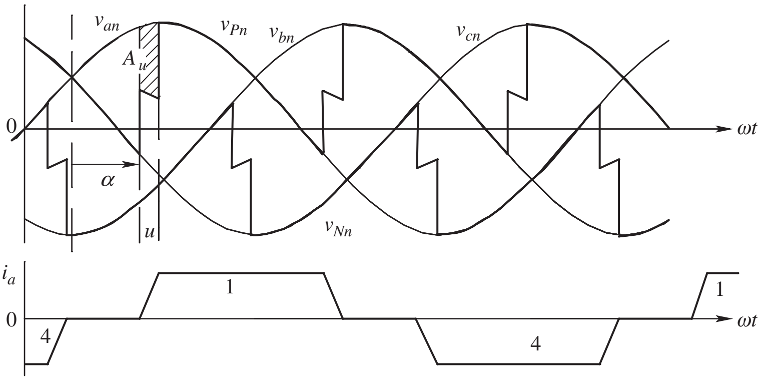


FIGURE 13.13 Waveforms with L_s.

$$\Delta V_u = \frac{A_u}{\pi/3} = \frac{3}{\pi}\omega L_s I_d \tag{13.24}$$

Therefore, the dc-side output voltage can be written as,

$$V_d = V_{do} - \Delta V_\alpha - \Delta V_u \tag{13.25}$$

Substituting results from Equations 13.16, 13.17, and 13.24 into Equation 13.25,

$$V_d = \frac{3}{\pi}\hat{V}_{LL}\cos\alpha - \frac{3}{\pi}\omega L_s I_d \tag{13.26}$$

Example 13.4

In a three-phase thyristor converter of Figure 13.9a including L_s, (a) derive the expression for the commutation angle u, and (b) calculate it if $V_{LL}(\text{rms}) = 460\,\text{V}$, $L_s = 5$ mH, $I_d = 20$ A, and $\alpha = 30°$.

Solution

a. In the sub-circuit of Figure 13.12a when both the thyristors are conducting, applying Kirchhoff's current law at point $P(a)$.

$$i_a + i_c = I_d \tag{13.27}$$

Assuming I_d to be constant, taking the time derivatives of both sides of Equation 13.20 results in,

$$\frac{di_a}{dt} + \frac{di_c}{dt} = 0 \tag{13.28}$$

or,

$$\frac{di_a}{dt} = -\frac{di_c}{dt} \tag{13.29}$$

Therefore in Figure 13.12a,

$$v_{Pn} = v_{an} - L_s\frac{di_a}{dt} \tag{13.30}$$

Also,

$$v_{Pn} = v_{cn} - L_s\frac{di_c}{dt} \tag{13.31}$$

Adding Equations 13.30 and 13.31, and making use of Equation 13.29,

$$v_{Pn} = \frac{v_{an} + v_{cn}}{2} \qquad \alpha < \omega t < \alpha + u \tag{13.32}$$

Substituting the expression for v_{Pn} from Equation 13.32 into Equation 13.30,

$$v_L = L_s \frac{di_a}{dt} = v_{an} - v_{Pn} = \frac{1}{2}(v_{an} - v_{cn}) \tag{13.33}$$

In Equation 13.33, $(v_{an} - v_{cn})$ is the line-line voltage, and assuming the time-origin in Figure 13.13 at the intersection of the phase-a and phase-c voltages, the voltage drop v_L in Equation 13.33 can be written as,

$$v_L = L_s \frac{di_a}{dt} = \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_{LL} \sin \omega t \qquad \alpha < \omega t < \alpha + u \tag{13.34}$$

Using Equation 13.34 into Equation 13.23,

$$A_u = \int\limits_{\alpha}^{\alpha+u} \frac{1}{2}\hat{V}_{LL} \sin \omega t \, d(\omega t) = \omega L_s I_d \tag{13.35}$$

and therefore,

$$\cos(\alpha + u) = \cos \alpha - \frac{2\omega L_s I_d}{\hat{V}_{LL}} \tag{13.36}$$

from which the commutation interval u can be calculated.

b. Substituting the given values in Equation 13.36, the commutation interval u is 11.4°.

Similar to single-phase converters, assuming a linear increase/decrease in thyristor currents in Figure 13.12b, the fundamental frequency component i_{a1} in Figure 13.13 lags the voltage v_s by,

$$\phi_1 \simeq \alpha + \frac{u}{2} \tag{13.37}$$

where the approximately-equal sign is due to assuming a linear increase/decrease in thyristor currents.

13.5 CURRENT-LINK SYSTEMS

Thyristors are available in very large current and voltage ratings of several kAs and several kVs that can be connected in series. In addition, thyristor converters can block voltages of both polarities but conduct current only in the forward direction. This capability has led to the interface realized by thyristor-converters with a dc-current link in the middle, as shown in Figure 13.14.

Unlike in voltage-link systems, the transfer of power in current-link systems can be reversed in direction by reversing the voltage polarity of the dc-link. This structure is

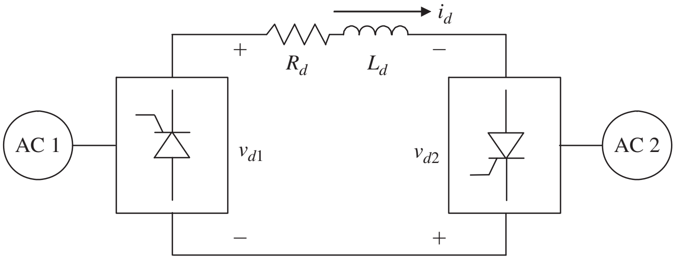


FIGURE 13.14 Block diagram of current-link systems.

used at very high power levels, in excess of thousand MWs, for example in High Voltage DC Transmission (HVDC) systems.

Thyristors in these two converters shown in Figure 13.14 are connected to allow the flow of current in the dc-link by thyristors in converter 1 pointing up, and the thyristors in converter 2 connected to point downward. In Figure 13.14, subscripts 1 and 2 refer to systems 1 and 2 and R_d is the resistance of the dc-link that includes the dc transmission line. Assuming each converter a six-pulse thyristor converter as discussed previously,

$$V_{d1} = \frac{3}{\pi}\hat{V}_{LL1}\cos\alpha_1 - \frac{3}{\pi}\omega L_{s1} I_d \tag{13.38}$$

$$V_{d2} = \frac{3}{\pi}\hat{V}_{LL2}\cos\alpha_2 - \frac{3}{\pi}\omega L_{s2} I_d \tag{13.39}$$

By controlling the delay angles α_1 and α_2 in a range of 0° to 180° (practically, this value is limited to approximately 160°), the average voltage and the average current in the system of Figure 13.14 can be controlled, where current flow through the dc-link can be expressed as,

$$I_d = \frac{V_{d1} + V_{d2}}{R_d} \tag{13.40}$$

Since the dc-link resistance R_d is generally very small, V_{d1} and V_{d2} are very close in magnitude and opposite in value. For example, for the power flow from system 1 to system 2, V_{d2} is made negative by controlling α_2 such that converter 2 operates as an inverter and establishes the voltage of the dc-link. Converter 1 is operated as a rectifier, with a positive value of V_{d1}, at a delay angle α_1 such that it controls the current in the dc-link. The converse is true for these two converters if the power is to flow from system 2 to system 1.

The above discussion of current-link systems shows the operating principle behind HVDC transmission systems discussed in the next chapter, where using transformers, six-pulse thyristor converters are connected in series on the dc-side and in parallel on the ac-side to yield higher effective pulse number.

REFERENCE

1. N. Mohan, T.M. Undeland, and W.P. Robbins, *Power Electronics: Converters, Applications and Design*, 3rd Edition (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003).

PROBLEMS

Single-Phase Thyristor Converters

In a single-phase thyristor converter, $V_s = 120\,\mathrm{V(rms)}$ at 60 Hz, and $L_s = 3\,\mathrm{mH}$. The delay angle $\alpha = 45°$. This converter is supplying 1 kW of power. The dc-side current i_d can be assumed purely dc.

13.1. Calculate the commutation angle u.
13.2. Draw the waveforms for the converter variables v_s, i_s and v_d.
13.3. Assuming that the currents through the thyristors increase/decrease linearly during commutations, calculate the reactive power drawn by the converter.

Three-Phase Thyristor Converters

In a three-phase thyristor converter, $V_{LL} = 460\,\mathrm{V(rms)}$ at 60 Hz, and $L_s = 5\,\mathrm{mH}$. The delay angle $\alpha = 45°$. This converter is supplying 5 kW of power. The dc-side current i_d can be assumed purely dc.

13.4. Calculate the commutation angle u.
13.5. Draw the waveforms for the converter variables: phase voltages, phase currents, v_{Pn}, v_{Nn} and v_d.
13.6. Assuming that the currents through the thyristors increase/decrease linearly during commutations, calculate the reactive power drawn by the converter.
13.7. In a three-phase thyristor converter, assume the commutation angle to be zero. Also assume a given ac-side voltage V_{LL}(rms) and that the dc-side current I_d is kept constant in magnitude. Plot the reactive power Q drawn by the converter, in terms of I_d, V_{LL}(rms), as a function of the delay angle α. Explain why it is desirable to operate the converter close to $\alpha = 0$ in the rectifier-mode and close to $\alpha = 180°$ in the inverter-mode.

Current-Link System

13.8. In the block diagram of Figure 13.14, for both three-phase converters, $V_{d0} = 480\,\mathrm{kV}$. The dc-side current is $I_d = 1.1\,\mathrm{kA}$. Converter 2 operating as an inverter establishes the dc-link voltage such that $V_{d2} = -425\,\mathrm{kV}$. $R_d = 10.0\,\Omega$. The drop in dc voltage due to commutation overlap in each converter is 10 kV. In dc steady state, calculate the following angles: α_1, α_2, u_1 and u_2.
13.9. In Problem 13.8, calculate the reactive power drawn by each converter. Assume that the currents through the thyristors increase/decrease linearly during commutations.

Simulation Problems

13.10. In a single-phase thyristor converter, the input voltage is $V_s = 120\,\mathrm{V}$ (rms) at 60-Hz frequency. The ac-side inductance is 1.2 mH and on the dc-side the load has an inductance of 20 mH in series with a resistance of 5 Ω.
   (a) Obtain v_s, v_d and i_d waveforms.
   (b) Obtain v_s and i_s waveforms.

(c) From the plots, obtain the commutation interval u.

(d) By means of Fourier analysis of i_s, calculate its harmonic components as a ratio of I_{s1}.

(e) Calculate I_s, %THD in the input current, the input displacement power factor and the input power factor.

14

UTILITY APPLICATIONS OF POWER ELECTRONICS

14.1 INTRODUCTION

In previous chapters, various power electronic systems are described to use electricity efficiently and to harness energy from renewable sources. In this chapter, all these applications, and new ones, are compiled in the context of utility applications. Such power electronics applications in utility systems are growing very rapidly, which promise to change the landscape of future power systems in terms of generation, operation, and control. The goal of this chapter is to briefly present an overview of these applications to prepare students for new challenges in the deregulated utility environment and to motivate them to take further courses in this field, where a separate advanced-level graduate course is designed, for example at the University of Minnesota, to discuss these topics in detail [1, 2].

In discussing these applications, we will observe that the power electronic converters are the same or modifications of those that we have already discussed in earlier chapters. Therefore, within the scope of this book, it will suffice to discuss these applications in terms of the block diagrams of various converters. These utility applications of power electronics can be categorized as follows:

- Distributed Generation (DG)
  - Renewable Resources (Wind, Photovoltaic, etc.)
  - Fuel Cells and Micro-Turbines
  - Storage-Batteries, Super-conducting Magnetic Storage, Flywheels
- Power Electronic Loads—Adjustable Speed Drives
- Power Quality Solutions
  - Dual Feeders
  - Uninterruptible Power Supplies
  - Dynamic Voltage Restorers
- Transmission and Distribution (T&D): HVDC and FACTS [3]
  - High Voltage DC (HVDC) and HVDC-Light
  - Flexible AC Transmission (FACTS)

- Shunt Compensation
- Series Compensation
- Static Phase Angle Control and Unified Power Flow Controllers

14.2 POWER SEMICONDUCTOR DEVICES AND THEIR CAPABILITIES

Figure 14.1a shows the commonly used symbols of power devices. The power handling capabilities and switching speeds of these devices are indicated in Figure 14.1b. All these devices allow current flow only in their forward direction (the intrinsic anti-parallel diode of MOSFETs can be explained separately). Transistors (intrinsically or by design) can block only the forward polarity voltage, whereas thyristors can block both forward and reverse polarity voltages. Diodes are uncontrolled devices, which conduct current in the forward direction and block a reverse voltage. At very high power levels, integrated-gate controlled thyristors (IGCTs), which have evolved from the gate-turn-off thyristors, are used. Thyristors are semi-controlled devices that can switch-on at the desired instant in their forward-blocking state, but cannot be switched off from their gate and hence rely on the circuit in which they are connected to switch them off. However, thyristors are available in very large voltage and current ratings.

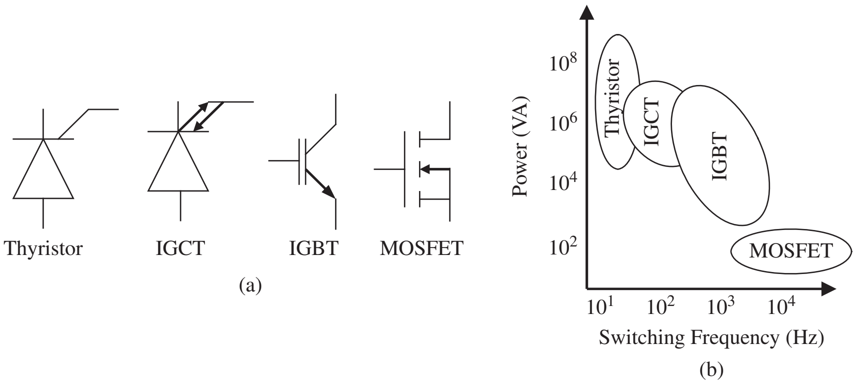


FIGURE 14.1 Power semiconductor devices.

These devices are available in a large range of voltage and current ratings for use in a variety of applications. Moreover, they can be connected in series and in parallel to extend this range further. As an example, IGBTs, which are commonly used in a very large range of utility-related applications, are available as a single module from a manufacturer with a rating of 600 A/6,500 V.

14.3 CATEGORIZING POWER ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS

In a very broad sense, the role of power electronics in these power system applications can be categorized as follows:

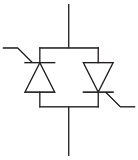


FIGURE 14.2 Back-to-back thyristors to act as a solid-state switch.

14.3.1 Solid-State Switches

By connecting two thyristors in anti-parallel (back-to-back) as shown in Figure 14.2, it is possible to realize a solid-state switch that can conduct current in both directions, and turn-on or turn-off in an ac circuit with a delay of no more than one-half the line-frequency cycle. Such switches are needed for applications such as dual feeders, shunt-compensation for injecting reactive power at a bus for voltage control, and series-compensation of transmission lines.

14.3.2 Converters as an Interface

Power electronic converters provide the needed interface between the electrical source, often the utility, and the load, as shown in Figure 14.3. The electrical source and the electrical load can, and often do, differ in frequency, voltage amplitudes, and the number of phases. The power electronics interface allows the transfer of power from the source to the load in the most energy-efficient manner, in which it is possible for the source and load to reverse roles. These interfaces can be classified as below.

14.3.2.1 Voltage-Link Systems

The semiconductor devices such as transistors of various types and diodes can only block forward-polarity voltages. These devices with only unipolar voltage-blocking capability have led to the structure with two converters, where the dc ports of these two converters are connected to each other with a parallel capacitor forming a dc-link in Figure 14.4, across

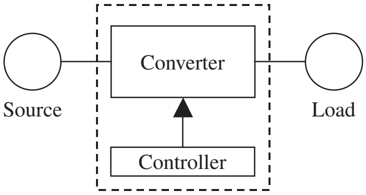


FIGURE 14.3 Power electronics interface.

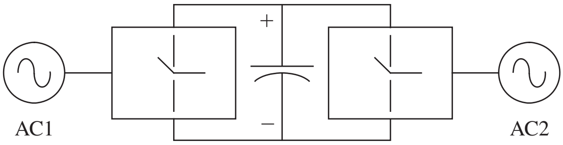


FIGURE 14.4 Block diagram of the voltage-link systems.

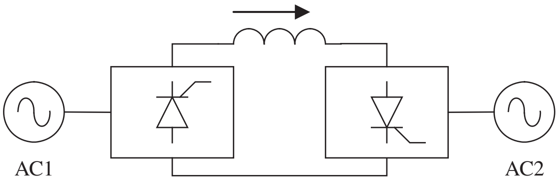


FIGURE 14.5 Block diagram of the current-link systems.

which the voltage polarity does not reverse, thus allowing unipolar voltage-handling transistors to be used within these converters. The transfer of power can be reversed in direction by reversing the direction of currents associated with the dc-link system.

Voltage-link converters consist of switching power-poles as the building blocks, which can synthesize the desired output by means of Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) and have bi-directional power flow capability. Such switching power-poles can be modeled by means of an ideal transformer with a controllable turns-ratio, as discussed in Chapter 12.

14.3.2.2 Current-Link Systems

Thyristors can block voltages of both polarities but conduct current only in the forward direction. This capability has led to the interface realized by thyristor-converters with a dc-current link in the middle, as shown in Figure 14.5. The transfer of power can be reversed in direction by reversing the voltage polarity of the dc-link, but the currents in the link remain in the same direction. This structure is used at very high power levels, at tens of hundreds of MWs, for example in High Voltage DC Transmission (HVDC).

In the following sections, various utility applications and the role of power electronics in them are examined further.

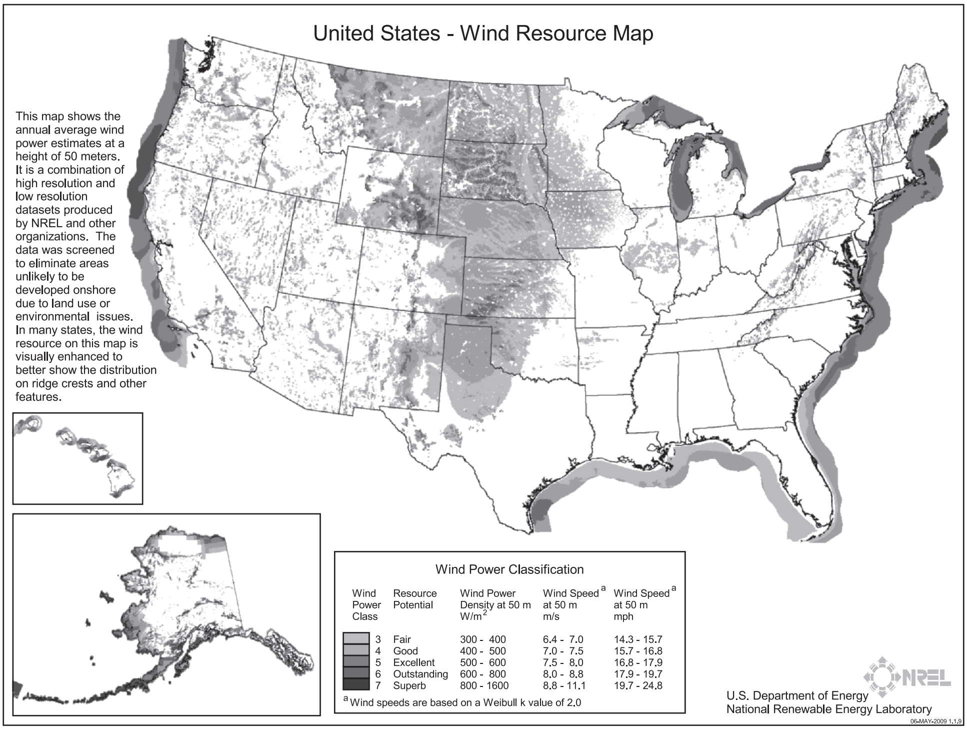
14.4 DISTRIBUTED GENERATION (DG) APPLICATIONS

Distributed generation promises to change the landscape of how power systems of the future will be operated and controlled. These generators may have decentralized (local) control, in addition to a central supervisory control. There is a move away from large central power plants towards distributed generation due to environmental and economic reasons. Renewable resources such as wind and photovoltaic systems are growing in their popularity. There are proposals to place highly efficient small-scale power plants, based on fuel cells and micro-turbines, near load centers to simultaneously avoid transmission congestion and line losses. Many distributed generation systems are discussed below.

14.4.1 Wind-Electric Systems

Wind energy is an indirect manifestation of solar energy, caused by uneven heating of the earth's surface by the sun. Out of all renewable energies, wind has come a long way and still this potential is just beginning to be realized. Figure 14.6 shows the wind potential by states in the United States, where there are several areas with good to excellent wind conditions.

Commonly used schemes for power generation in windmills require a gearing mechanism because the wind turbine rotates at very slow speeds, whereas the generator operates at a high speed close to the synchronous speed, which at the 60-Hz line


United States - Wind Resource Map
U.S. Department of Energy
National Renewable Energy Laboratory
06-MAY-2009 1.1.9

This map shows the annual average wind power estimates at a height of 50 meters. It is a combination of high resolution and low resolution datasets produced by NREL and other organizations. The data was screened to eliminate areas unlikely to be developed onshore due to land use or environmental issues. In many states, the wind resource on this map is visually enhanced to better show the distribution on ridge crests and other features.

Wind Power Classification

Wind Power Class	Resource Potential	Wind Power Density at 50 m W/m^2	Wind Speed[a] at 50 m m/s	Wind Speed[a] at 50 m mph
3	Fair	300 - 400	6.4 - 7.0	14.3 - 15.7
4	Good	400 - 500	7.0 - 7.5	15.7 - 16.8
5	Excellent	500 - 600	7.5 - 8.0	16.8 - 17.9
6	Outstanding	600 - 800	8.0 - 8.8	17.9 - 19.7
7	Superb	800 - 1600	8.8 - 11.1	19.7 - 24.8

[a] Wind speeds are based on a Weibull k value of 2.0

FIGURE 14.6 Wind-resource map of the United States.
Source: NREL.

frequency would be 1800 rpm for a 4-pole and 900 rpm for an 8-pole machine. Therefore, the nacelle contains a gearing mechanism that boosts up the turbine speed to drive the generator at a higher speed; need for a gearing mechanism is one of the inherent drawbacks of such schemes. There are proposals to use direct-drive (without gears) permanent magnet machines in very large sizes; however, in practice, most windmills use gearing. This sub-section describes various types of wind-generation schemes.

Induction Generators, Directly Connected to the Grid. As shown in Figure 14.7a, this is the simplest scheme, where a wind-turbine driven squirrel-cage induction generator is directly connected to the grid through a back-to-back connected thyristor-pair for soft-start. Therefore, it is least expensive and uses a rugged squirrel-cage rotor induction machine.

For the induction machine to operate in its generator mode, the rotor speed must be greater than the synchronous speed. The drawback of this scheme is that since the induction machine always operates very close to the synchronous speed, this scheme is not optimum at low and high wind speeds compared to variable speed schemes described below. Another disadvantage of this scheme is that a squirrel-cage induction machine always operates at a lagging power factor (that is, it draws reactive power from the grid as an inductive-load would). Therefore, a separate source, for example shunt-connected capacitors, is often needed to supply the reactive power to overcome the lagging power factor operation of the induction machine.

Doubly-Fed, Wound-Rotor Induction Generators. The scheme in Figure 14.7b utilizes a wound-rotor induction machine where the stator is directly connected to the utility supply and the rotor is injected desired currents through a power-electronics interface. Typically, four-fifths of the power flows directly from the stator to the grid, and only one-fifth of the power flows through the power electronics in the rotor circuit. The drawback of this scheme is that it uses a wound-rotor induction machine where the currents to the three-phase wound rotor are supplied through slip-rings and brushes, which require maintenance. In spite of the fact that power electronics is expensive, and since it is rated only one-fifth of the system rating, the overall cost is not much higher than the previous scheme. However, there are several distinct advantages over the previous scheme, as described below.

The scheme using a doubly-fed wound-rotor induction machine can typically operate in a range ±30% around the synchronous speed and hence it is able to capture more power at lower and higher wind speeds compared to the previous scheme because it can operate at above, as well as below, the synchronous speed. It can also supply reactive power, whereas in the previous scheme, the squirrel-cage induction machine only absorbs reactive power. Therefore, the scheme using a doubly-fed wound-rotor induction machine is quite popular in windmills being installed in the United States.

Power Electronics Connected Generator. In the third scheme shown in Figure 14.7c, a squirrel-cage induction generator or a permanent-magnet generator is connected to the

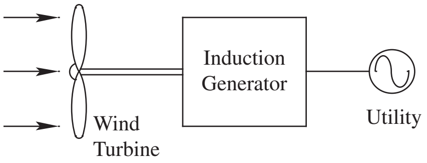

Induction
Generator
Utility
Wind
Turbine

FIGURE 14.7a Induction generator directly connected to the grid.

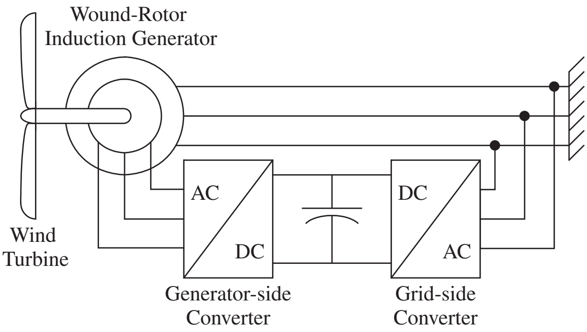

Wound-Rotor
Induction Generator
AC
DC
DC
AC
Wind
Turbine
Generator-side
Converter
Grid-side
Converter

FIGURE 14.7b Doubly-fed, wound-rotor induction generator.

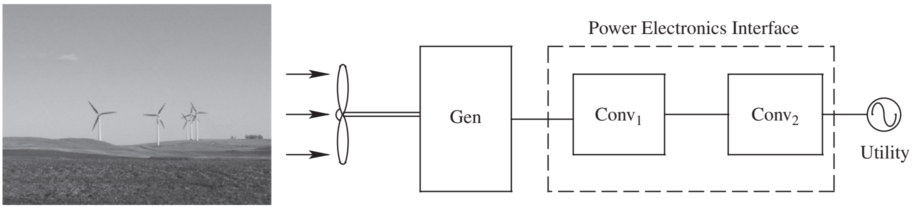

Power Electronics Interface
Gen
Conv$_1$
Conv$_2$
Utility

FIGURE 14.7c Power electronics connected generator.

grid through a power electronics interface. This interface consists of two converters. The converter at the generator-end supplies the reactive power excitation needed if it is an induction generator. Its frequency of operation is controlled to be optimum for the prevailing wind speed. The converter at the line-end is capable of absorbing or supplying reactive power in a continuous manner. This is the most flexible arrangement using a rugged squirrel-cage machine or a high-efficiency permanent-magnet generator, which can operate in a very wide wind-speed range and is the likely contender for the future arrangements as the cost of the power electronics interface, which must handle the entire power output of the system, is continuing to go down.

14.4.2 Photovoltaic (PV) Systems

Photovoltaic systems are the ultimate in distributed generation and have even a greater potential than the wind-electric systems. In PV systems, the PV arrays (typically four of them connected in series) provide a voltage of 52-V to 90-V DC, which the power electronic system, such as that shown in Figure 14.8, converts to 120 V/60 Hz sinusoidal voltage suitable for interfacing with the single-phase utility. Such PV modules can be connected in parallel for higher output capacity. Larger arrays are interfaced with a three-phase utility grid.

Figure 14.9 shows a 127 kW rooftop PV system, one of the largest roof-integrated Federal systems in the United States.

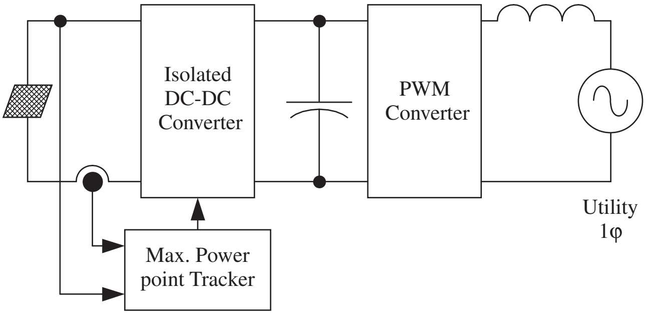


FIGURE 14.8 Photovoltaic systems.

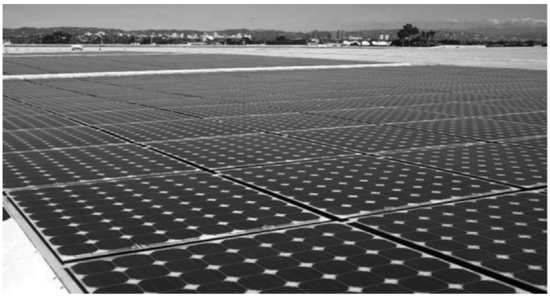


FIGURE 14.9 A rooftop PV system.
Source: www.NREL.gov.

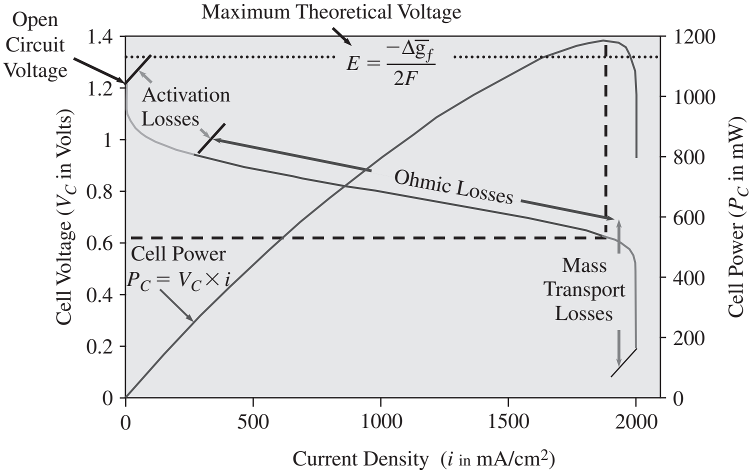


FIGURE 14.10 Fuel cell *v-i* relationship and cell power.
Source: www.NETL.DOE.gov.

14.4.3 Fuel Cell Systems

Lately, there has been a great deal of interest in, and effort being devoted to fuel cell systems. The reason has to do with their efficiency, which can be as high as 60%. The input to the fuel cell can be hydrogen, natural gas, or gasoline, and the output is a dc voltage as shown in Figure 14.10 [4]. The need for power electronics converters to interface with the utility is the same in the fuel-cell systems as that for the photovoltaic systems.

14.4.4 Micro-Turbines

These use highly efficient aircraft engines, for example to produce peak power when it is needed, with the natural gas as the input fuel. To improve efficiency, the turbine speed should be allowed to vary based on loading. This will cause the frequency of the generated output to vary, requiring a power-electronic interface as that in adjustable-speed drives.

14.4.5 Energy Storage Systems

Although not a primary source of energy, storage plants offer the benefit of load-leveling and peak-shaving in power systems, because of the diurnal nature of electricity usage. Energy is stored, usually at night when the load demand is low, and supplied back during the peak-load periods.

It is possible to store energy in lead-acid batteries (other exotic high-temperature batteries are being developed), in Super-conducting Magnetic Energy Storage (SMES) coils and in the inertia of flywheels. All these systems need power electronic interface, where the interface for the flywheel storage is shown in Figure 14.11.

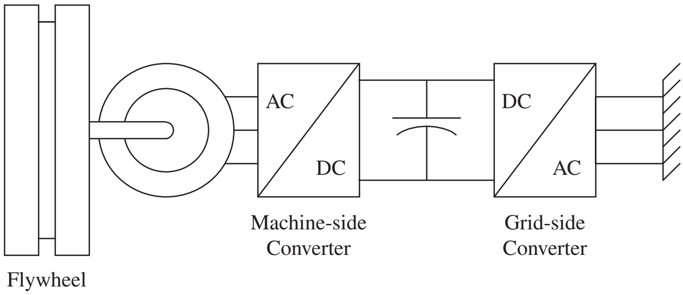


FIGURE 14.11 Flywheel storage system.

14.5 POWER ELECTRONIC LOADS

As discussed in Chapter 1, power electronics is playing a significant role in energy conservation, for example, as users discover the benefits of reduced energy consumption and better process control by operating electric drives at adjustable speeds. An adjustable-speed drive (ASD) is shown in Figure 14.12 in a block diagram form.

Power electronic loads of this type often use an interface with the utility that results in distorted line currents. These currents result in distorted voltage waveforms, affecting the neighboring loads. However, it is possible to design the utility interface (often called the power-factor-corrected front-end) that allows sinusoidal currents to be drawn from the grid. With the proliferation of power electronic loads, standards are being enforced that limit the amount of distortion in currents drawn.

14.6 POWER QUALITY SOLUTIONS

Poor quality of power can imply any of the following: distorted voltage waveforms, unbalances, swells and sags in voltage and power outages, and so on. This problem is exacerbated in a deregulated environment where utilities are forced to operate at marginal profits, resulting in inadequate maintenance of equipment. In this section, we will also see that power electronics can solve many of the power quality problems.

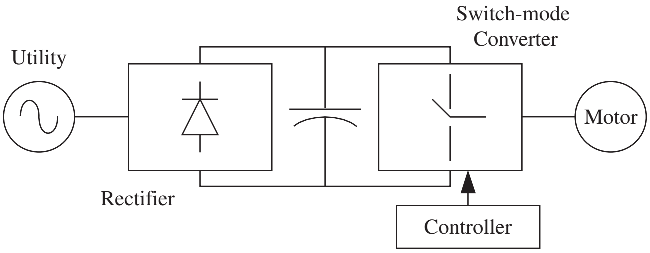


FIGURE 14.12 Adjustable-speed drive.

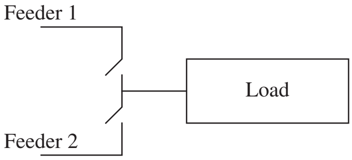


FIGURE 14.13 Dual-feeders.

14.6.1 Dual Feeders

The continuity of service can be enhanced by dual power feeders to the load, where one acts as a backup to the other that is supplying the load as shown in Figure 14.13.

Using back-to-back connected thyristors, acting as a solid-state switch, it is possible to switch the load quickly, without interruption, from the main feeder to the backup feeder and back.

14.6.2 Uninterruptible Power Supplies

Power outages, even for a few cycles, can be very disruptive to critical loads. To provide immunity from such outages, power-electronics-based uninterruptible power supplies (UPS) shown in Figure 14.14 can be used, where the energy storage can be by means of batteries, SMES (superconducting magnetic energy storage), flywheels or ultracapacitors.

14.6.3 Dynamic Voltage Restorers

Dynamic Voltage Restorers (DVR), shown in Figure 14.15, can compensate for voltage sags or swells by injecting a voltage v_{inj} in series with that supplied by the utility.

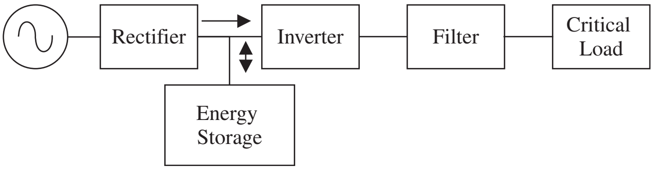


FIGURE 14.14 Uninterruptible power supplies.

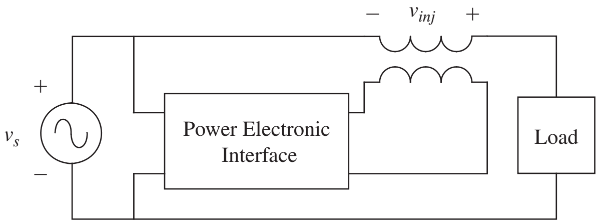


FIGURE 14.15 Dynamic voltage restorers.

14.7 TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION (T&D) APPLICATIONS

In the past, utilities operated as monopolies, where users had little or no option in selecting whom they can purchase power from. The recent trend, which seems irreversible in spite of recent setbacks, is to deregulate where utilities must compete to sell power on an open market and the customers have a choice of selecting their power provider. In such an environment, utilities that were vertically integrated are now forced to split into generation companies that produce power, and transmission-line operators that maintain the transmission and distribution network for a fee.

In this deregulated environment, it is highly desirable to have the capability to dictate the flow of power on designated power lines, avoiding overloading of transmission lines and excessive power losses in them. In this section, we will look at some such options.

14.7.1 High Voltage DC (HVDC) Transmission

Direct current (DC) transmission represents the ultimate in flexibility, isolating two interconnected ac systems from the requirement of operating in synchronism or even at the same frequency. High voltage DC (HVDC) transmission systems using thyristor-based current-link converters have now been in operation for several decades. Lately, systems, at somewhat lower voltages, using IGBT-based voltage-link converters have been installed. Both of these types of systems are discussed below.

14.7.1.1 Thyristor-Based Current-Link HVDC Transmission Systems

Figure 14.16 shows the block diagram of a HVDC transmission system, where power is transmitted over dc lines at high voltages in excess of 500 kV. First, the voltages in ac system 1 at the sending end are stepped up by means of a transformer. These voltages are rectified into dc by means of a thyristor-based converter, where the ac line voltages provide the commutation of current within the converter, such that ac currents drawn from system 1 turn into dc current on the other side of the converter. These currents are transmitted over the dc line where additional series inductance is added to ensure that the dc current is smooth, free of ripple as much as possible. At the receiving end, there are thyristor-based converters, which convert the dc current into ac currents and injects them into the ac system 2, through a step-down transformer. The roles of the sending and the receiving ends can be reversed by reversing the voltage polarity in the dc system.

For example, a current-link HVDC transmission system in the western part of the United States, transmits 3,100 MW at ±500 kV over a distance of 1,361 km. At very high

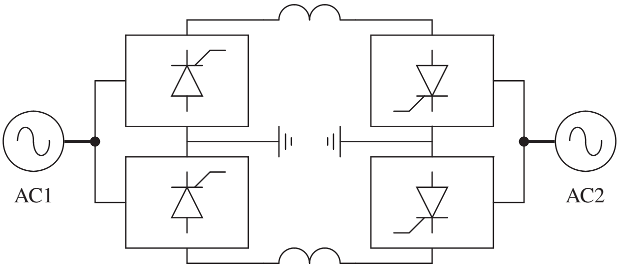


FIGURE 14.16 HVDC voltage-Link system block diagram (transformers are not shown).

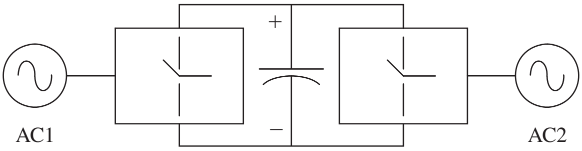


FIGURE 14.17 Block diagram HVDC transmission using a voltage-link system.

power levels in excess of 1,000 MW, use of thyristors, at least for now, represents the only reasonable choice.

14.7.1.2 HVDC Transmission System using Voltage-Link IGBT-based Converters

At lower power levels compared to those carried by thyristor-based HVDC transmission lines, the alternative is to use a voltage-link-system whose block diagram is as shown in Figure 14.17. In such a system, the direction of power flow is reversed by changing the direction of current in the dc line. As an example, a voltage-link system in the eastern part of the United States operates at ±150 kV and is rated at 330 MW.

14.7.2 Flexible AC Transmission Systems (FACTS) [3]

DC transmission systems discussed earlier are an excellent choice where a large amount of power needs to be transmitted over long distances, or if the system stability is a serious issue. In existing ac transmission networks, limitations on constructing new power lines and their cost have led to other ways to increase power transmission capability without sacrificing the stability margin. These techniques may also help in directing the power flow to designated lines.

Power flow on a transmission line connecting two ac systems in Figure 14.18 is given as,

$$P = \frac{E_1 E_2}{X} \sin \delta \tag{14.1}$$

where E_1 and E_2 are the magnitudes of voltages at the two ends of the transmission line, X is the line reactance and δ is the angle between the two bus voltages.

Equation 14.1 shows that the power flow on a transmission line depends on three quantities: (1) the voltage magnitude E, (2) the line reactance X, and (3) the power angle δ. Various devices that are based on rapidly controlling one or more of the above three quantities are discussed in the following sections:

14.7.2.1 Shunt-Connected Devices to Control the Bus Voltage Magnitude *E*

The reactive power compensation is very important and may even be necessary at high loadings to avoid voltage collapse. Shunt-connected devices, as shown in Figure 14.19, can draw or supply reactive power from a bus, thus controlling the bus voltage, albeit in a limited range, based on the internal system reactance.

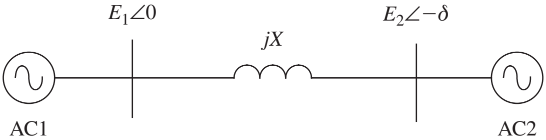


FIGURE 14.18 Power flow on a transmission line.

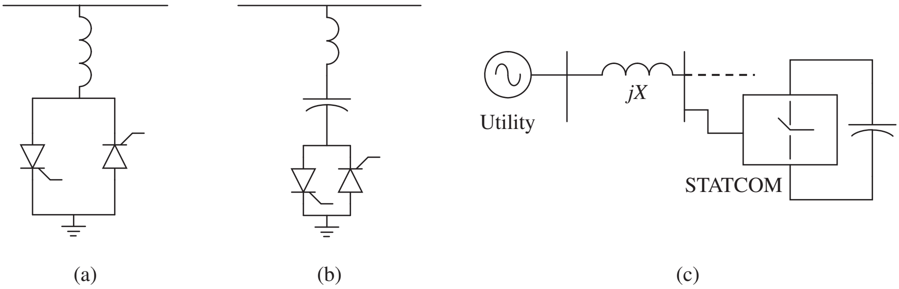


FIGURE 14.19 Shunt-connected devices for voltage control.

Various forms of such devices are being used in different combinations. These include Thyristor-Controlled Reactors (TCR) shown in Figure 14.19a, and Thyristor-Switched Capacitors (TSC) shown in Figure 14.19b for Static Var Compensation (SVC). The advanced Static Var Compensator (STATCOM) shown in Figure 14.19c can draw or supply reactive power.

Shunt-compensation devices have the following limitations for controlling the flow of active power:

1. A large amount of reactive power compensation, depending on the system internal reactance, may be required to change the voltage magnitude. Of course, the voltage can only be changed in a limited range (utilities try to maintain bus voltages at their nominal values), which has a limited effect on the power transfer given by Equation 14.1.
2. Most transmission systems consist of parallel paths or loops. Therefore, changing the voltage magnitude at a given bus changes the loading of all the lines connected to that bus, and there is no way to dictate the desired change of power flow on a given line.

14.7.2.2 Series-Connected Devices to Control the Effective Series Reactance X

These devices, connected in series with a transmission line, partially neutralize (or add to) the transmission line reactance. Therefore, they change the effective value of X in Equation 14.1, thus allowing the active power flow P to be controlled. Various forms of such devices have been used. These include the Thyristor-Controlled Series Capacitor (TCSC), also known as Thyristor-Controlled Series Compensator, shown in Figure 14.20. It should be noted that just as STATCOM with higher performance capabilities is a solid-state equivalent of an SVC, similarly there is a solid-state equivalent of TCSC called SSSC (Static Synchronous Series Compensator), which injects a controlled voltage, in series with the transmission line, that either lags or leads the line current.

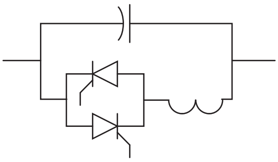


FIGURE 14.20 Thyristor-Controlled Series Compensator (TCSC).

14.7.2.3 Static Phase Angle Control and Unified Power Flow Controller (UPFC)

Based on Equation 14.1, a device connected at a bus in a substation, as shown in Figure 14.21a, can influence power flow in three ways by:

1. Controlling the voltage magnitude E,
2. Changing the line reactance X, and/or
3. Changing the power angle δ.

Such a device called the Unified Power Flow Controller (UPFC) can affect power flow in any combination of the ways listed above. The block diagram of a UPFC is shown in Figure 14.21a at one side of the transmission line. It consists of two voltage-source switch-mode converters. The first converter injects a voltage $\bar{E}_3$ in series with the phase voltage such that,

$$\bar{E}_1 + \bar{E}_3 = \bar{E}_2 \tag{14.2}$$

Therefore, by controlling the magnitude and the phase of the injected voltage $\bar{E}_3$ within the circle shown in Figure 14.21b, the magnitude and the phase of the bus voltage $\bar{E}_2$ can be controlled. If a component of the injected voltage $\bar{E}_3$ is made to be 90 degrees out-of-phase, for example leading with respect to the current phasor $\bar{I}$, then the transmission line reactance X is partially compensated.

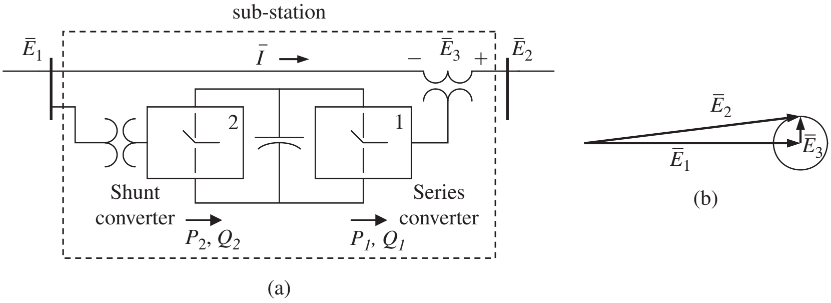
The second converter in a UPFC is needed for the following reason: since converter 1 injects a series voltage $\bar{E}_3$, it delivers real power P_1, and the reactive power Q_1 to the transmission line (where P_1 and Q_1 can be either positive or negative):

$$P_1 = 3\ \mathrm{Re}\ (\bar{E}_3\bar{I}^*) \tag{14.3}$$

$$Q_1 = 3\ \mathrm{Im}\ (\bar{E}_3\bar{I}^*) \tag{14.4}$$

Since there is no steady state energy storage capability within UPFC, the power P_2 into converter 2 must equal P_1 if the losses are ignored:

$$P_2 = P_1 \tag{14.5}$$



(a) (b)

FIGURE 14.21 Unified Power Flow Controller (UPFC).

However, the reactive power Q_2 bears no relation to Q_1, and can be independently controlled within the voltage and current ratings of the converter 2:

$$Q_2 \neq Q_1 \tag{14.6}$$

By controlling Q_2 to control the magnitude of the bus voltage $\bar{E}_1$, UPFC provides the same functionality as that of an advanced static var compensator STATCOM. A UPFC combines several other functions: Static Var Compensator, Phase-Shifting Transformer and Controlled Series Compensation.

REFERENCES

1. N. Mohan, A. Jain, P. Jose and R. Ayyanar, "Teaching Utility Applications of Power Electronics in a First Course on Power Systems," *IEEE Transactions on Power Systems* 19 (February 2004): 40−47.
2. N. Mohan, *First Course on Power Systems* (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2011).
3. N. G. Hingorani, and L. Gyugyi, *Understanding FACTS* (New York, IEEE Press, 2000).
4. D. Collins, "DOE FE Distributed Generation (DG) Fuel Cells Program," IEEE Applied Power Electronics Conference, March 6−10, 2005, Austin, TX.

PROBLEMS

14.1. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.7b and 14.7c for wind-electric systems.

14.2. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.8 for a photovoltaic system.

14.3. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.11 for a flywheel storage system.

14.4. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.12 for an adjustable-speed drive.

14.5. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.14 for a UPS.

14.6. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.15 for a DVR.

14.7. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.16 for a current-link HVDC transmission system.

14.8. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.17 for a voltage-link HVDC transmission system.

14.9. Show the details and the average representation of converter in Figure 14.19c for a STATCOM.

14.10. Show the details and the average representation of converters in Figure 14.21a for a UPFC system.

INDEX

A

ac motor drives, converters for, 190
adjustable speed drives (ASD), 3, 255
Ampere's law, 137
ampere-turns, 130–131
applications of power electronics, 2–4
  utility applications, 7–8
application-specific ICs (ASICs), 29
area-product method, 156–159
  core area-product A_p, 158
    design procedure based on, 158–159
  core cross-sectional area A_{core}, 157–158
  core window area A_{window}, 156–157
ASD, *See* adjustable speed drives (ASD)
ASICs, *See* application-specific ICs (ASICs)
average-current-mode control, 87

B

bi-directional power flow
  converters for, 213–214
  voltage-link structure for, 213
bi-directional switching power-pole, 61–62, 190–193
  as building-block, 190–193
  PWM of, 191–193
Bipolar-Junction Transistors (BJTs), 22
bi-positional switch in buck converter, 15
Bode plots of transfer functions
  with poles and zeros, 94–97
    double pole in a transfer function, 96–97
    right-hand-plane (RHP) zero in transfer function, 95–96
Boost converter switching analysis
  Buck converter versus, 45
  in DCM in steady state, 64–66
  in dc steady state, 45–50
  operation, 47
  voltage transfer ratio, 50
  waveforms, 47
Boost dc-dc converter, 3
'brushless dc' drives, 176
Buck-Boost converter analysis, 143
  in DC steady state, 50–56
    input/output voltage ratio, 51, 54
    operation, 51
    transistor switching function, 51
    waveforms, 51
Buck converter, 145
  bi-positional switch in, 15
    transistor and diode forming, 15
  switching analysis
    in DCM in steady state, 64
    in dc steady state, 43–45
    synchronous-rectified buck converter, 57–58
  switching power-pole in, 14
bus voltage magnitude, 258–259

C

CBEMA, *See* Computer Business Equipment Manufacturers Association (CBEMA)
CCM, *See* continuous conduction mode (CCM)
coil inductance, 131
common-mode offsets, 217–220
compact fluorescent lamps
  converters for, 163–170
  inverters for, 169–170
Computer Business Equipment Manufacturers Association (CBEMA), 184
conduction loss, MOSFETs, 28

- continuous conduction mode (CCM), 42, 117
  - average representation in, 66–67
  - critical condition at the border of, 63
  - dynamic average representation of converters, 59–61
  - power stage of DC-DC converters in, linearizing, 79–82
- converters for bi-directional power flow, 213–214
- core area-product A_p, 158
- core cross-sectional area A_{core}, 157–158
- core window area A_{window}, 156–157
- crossover frequency f_c of $G_L(s)$, 76
- Ćuk converters, 55–56
- current commutation, L_s effect on, 235–237
- current controller $G_i(s)$ of PFC, designing, 121–122
- current-link structure, 10
- current-link systems, 243–244, 250

D

- dc motor drives
  - converters for, 190, 194–200
    - $(-V_d < \tilde{v}_0 <)$, 194–200
    - currents defined in, 198
    - switching waveforms in, 197–200
- DCM, *See* discontinuous conduction mode (DCM)
- delay angle α, 234
- diode rectifiers
  - diode-rectifier bridge ‘front-ends’, 107–113
    - DC-bus capacitor to achieve a low-ripple, 109–110
    - DC-bus capacitor, effect of, 112–113
    - full-bridge diode rectifier, 108
    - single-phase diode-rectifier bridge, 107–110
    - three-phase diode-rectifier bridge, 110–113
  - utility input rectification using, 98–115, *See also under* Utility input rectification
- diodes, *See also* power diodes
  - i-v characteristic, 24
  - justifying as ideal, 30
  - symbol, 24
- direct-link structure, 11
- discontinuous conduction mode (DCM), 42, 62–67
  - average representation in, 66–67
  - Boost converters in, 64–66
  - Buck-Boost converter in, 66
  - Buck converters in, 64
  - critical condition at the border of, 63
  - feedback controller design in, 91–92
- displacement power factor (DPF), 103–105
- distributed generation (DG) applications, 250–255
  - energy storage systems, 254–255
  - fuel cell systems, 254
  - micro-turbines, 254
  - photovoltaic (PV) systems, 253–254
  - power electronic loads, 255
  - wind-electric systems, 250–253
    - doubly-fed, wound-rotor induction generators, 251
    - induction generators, directly connected to grid, 251
    - power electronics connected generator, 252
- double pole in transfer function, 96–97
- DPF, *See* displacement power factor (DPF)
- dual-feeders, 256
- dynamic voltage restorers (DVR), 256

E

- electric motor drives, 172–184, *See also* induction machines
  - DC motors, 173–176
  - equivalent circuit, 175
  - permanent-magnet AC (PMAC) machines, 176
  - requirements imposed by DC machines on PPU, 176
  - requirements imposed by induction machines on the PPU, 184
  - requirements imposed by PMAC machines on the PPU, 179–180

electric vehicles (EVs), 5–6
electric welding, 4
electrical isolation, need for, 142
electric-motor driven systems, 4–5
energy and environment, 4–8, *See also under* sustainable electric energy
energy storage
  due to magnetic fields, 132–133
  storage systems, 254–255
equivalent circuits of transformers, 137–139
  actual, 138
  ideal, 138
equivalent series inductance (ESL), 44
equivalent series resistance (ESR), 43–44
Evs, *See* electric vehicles (EVs)

F
FACTS, *See* flexible AC transmission systems (FACTS)
Faraday's law, 133–134, 137
fast-recovery diodes, 24
feedback controller design, 116–129
  in DCM, 91–92
  in switchmode dc power supplies, 74–97
    average-current-mode control, 87
    feedback controller design in voltage-mode control, 83–86
    linear control theory, 75–77
    linearization of transfer function blocks, 77–82
    loop transfer function $G_L(s)$, 76
    peak-current mode control, 86–91
    phase and gain margins, 76–77
  in voltage-mode control, 83–86
feedforward of input voltage, in PFC circuits, 125
flexible AC transmission systems (FACTS), 258–261
flexible production, power electronics in, 3–4
flux, 130–131
flyback converters, 142–145
forward converters, 145–148
  core flux, 146
  operation, 146
  transformer for, 161
  two-switch forward converters, 147–148
  waveforms in, 147
Fourier analysis, obtaining harmonic components by, 101–103
'front-end' of power electronic systems, 107
fuel cell systems, 254
Full-bridge converters, 148–152
  phase-shift modulated (PSM), 149
  pulse-width modulated (PWM), 149
  sub-circuits, 150
Full-bridge diode rectifier, 108
  with inductive load, 109
  with resistive load, 108

G
gate driver integrated circuits (ICs) with built-in fault protection, 29–30
Gate-Turn-Off thyristors (GTOs), 22

H
half-bridge converters, 152
hard-switching in switching power-poles, 163–164
harmonic guidelines, in utility input rectification, 105–107
heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC), 4
HEVs, *See* hybrid electric vehicles (HEVs)
high efficiency, need for, 8–9
high-frequency inductors, design of, 155–161
  area-product method, 156–159
  inductor construction, 156
  pot core mounted on plug-in board, 160
  thermal considerations, 161
  transformer construction, 156
high power density, need for, 8–9
high voltage DC transmission (HVDC) systems, 98, 257–258
HVAC, *See* heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC)
hybrid electric vehicles (HEVs), 6

I
IGBTs, *See* insulated-gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs)

IGCTs, *See* integrated-gate controlled thyristors (IGCTs)
inductance (L), 131–133
  coil inductance, 131
induction generators, 251
induction heating, 4
  converters for, 163–170
  inverters for, 169–170
induction machines, 180–184
  slip frequency, 181
  slip speed, 181
inductor
  construction, 156
  design example of, 159–160
information technology, power electronics in, 2–3
inner average-current-control loop of PFC, designing, 120–122
input voltage, feedforward, in PFC circuits, 125
inrush currents, avoiding, 113–114
insulated-gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs), 23–24
  cost of, 24
  i-v characteristics, 23
  symbol, 23
integrated circuits (ICs), gate driver, 29–30
integrated-gate controlled thyristors (IGCTs), 22, 248
intelligent-power modules (IPMs), 24
interface, power electronics
  between source and load, 2
  for CFL, 6
  converters as, 249–250
  for electric welding, 4
  for induction heating, 4
  structure of, 9–11
    block diagram, 10
    current-link structure, 10
    matrix converters (direct-link structure) [13], 11
    voltage-link structure, 9–15, *See also individual entry*
interleaved converters, 58
IPMs, *See* intelligent-power modules (IPMs)

L
leakage inductance, 134–136
lighting, 5
linear control theory, 75–77
linearization of transfer function blocks, 77–82
  computer simulation in, 81–82
  power stage of DC-DC converters in CCM, 79–82
  pulse-width modulator, 77–79
line-frequency diodes, 24
loop transfer function $G_L(s)$, 76
  crossover frequency of, 76
low-frequency AC, synthesis of, 200

M
magnetic circuit concepts, 130–140
  ampere-turns, 130–131
  energy storage due to magnetic fields, 132–133
  flux, 130–131
  inductance (L), 131–133
  leakage inductance, 134–136
  magnetizing inductance, 134–136
  mutual inductances, 136
  transformers, 136–139
magnetic design, basics of, 155
matrix converters, 11, 214–221
  common-mode offsets, 217–220
  input currents, calculating, 220–221
  input frequency elimination from output, 216–217
  switching signals generation, 220
MCTs, *See* MOS-controlled thyristors (MCTs)
Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field-Effect Transistors (MOSFETs), 22–23
  cost of, 24
  gate driver ICs with built-in fault protection, 29–30
  in a switching power-pole, 25
  i-v characteristics, 22
  power losses within, calculating, 28
    conduction losses, 28
    switching losses, 28–29
  symbol, 22

  transfer characteristics, 22, 27
  turn-off characteristic, 27–28
  turn-on characteristic, 26–27
micro-turbines, 254
MOS-controlled thyristors (MCTs), 22
MOSFETs, *See* Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field-Effect Transistors (MOSFETs)
motor-driven systems, 4–5
multilevel inverters, 212
mutual inductances, 136

O

Ohm's law, 134
outer voltage-control loop of PFC, designing, 122–124
over-modulation, 210–211

P

peak current density J_{max}, 155
peak-current mode control, 86–91
peak flux density B_{max}, 155
permanent-magnet AC (PMAC) machines, 176
  two-pole PMAC machine, 177
phase-controlled thyristors, 232–237
phase-shift modulated (PSM) control, 149
phase-shift modulated (PSM) dc-dc converters, 168–169
photovoltaic (PV) systems, 7, 253–254
PMAC, *See* permanent-magnet AC (PMAC)
point-of-common-coupling (PCC), 106
pot core mounted on plug-in board, 160
power diodes, 21–22
  fast-recovery diodes, 24
  line-frequency diodes, 24
  Schottky diodes, 24
  selection characteristics, 21
    current rating, 21
    on-state voltage, 22
    switching speeds, 21
    voltage rating, 21
  selection of, 24–25
  SiC-based Schottky diodes, 24
power electronic loads, 255
power factor (PF), 103–105
power quality solutions, 255–256
power semiconductor devices, 248
power transistors, 21–22
  selection characteristics, 21
    on-state voltage, 22
    switching speeds, 21
    urrent rating, 21
    voltage rating, 21
power-factor-correction (PFC) circuits, 116–129, *See also* single-phase PFCs
  control methods for, 125–127
  control of PFCs, 119–120
  current controller $G_i(s)$, designing, 121–122
  feedforward of input voltage, 125
  inner average-current-control loop, designing, 120–122
  outer voltage-control loop, designing, 122–124
  simulation results, 125
power-integrated modules (PIMs), 24
power-poles, 25–30
  power losses in, 25–30
  switching characteristics in, 25–30
primitive thyristor rectifier circuits, 231–232
PSM, *See* phase-shift modulated (PSM)
PSpice-based computer simulations, 42
Pspicet™, 81–82
  for Buck-Boost converter, 89
  for Buck converter, 82
pulsed-width-modulation (PWM), 13–14, 58, 149–152
  of bi-directional switching power-pole, 191–193
  DC-DC converters regulation by, 58–59
  IC waveforms, 33
  interval $(1/2-D)T_s$ with all transistors off, 150
  interval DT_s with transistors T_1, T_2 in their on state, 149–150
  linearizing, 77–79
  of the switching power-pole, 13
push-pull converters, 152

R

regulated low-voltage dc power supplies, 2
renewable energy, 6–7

right-hand-plane (RHP) zero in transfer function, 95–96
robotics, power electronics in, 3–4
role of power electronics, 2–4

S
Schottky diodes, 24
SCR, *See* short-circuit-ratio (SCR)
self-synchronous motor drives, 178
semiconductor devices, 248
SEPIC Converters (Single-Ended Primary Inductor Converters), 54–55
series-connected devices, 259
short-circuit current, 106
short-circuit-ratio (SCR), 106
shunt-connected devices, 258–259
SiC-based Schottky diodes, 24
silicon controlled rectifiers (SCRs), *See* Thyristors
sine-PWM, 206–207
Single-Ended Primary Inductor Converters (SEPIC Converters), 54–55
single-phase diode-rectifier bridge, 107–110
single-phase inverters, 201–204
  switching-cycle averaged voltages in, 201
  switching waveforms associated with, 203–204
single-phase PFCs, 116–119
  current-control loop, design, 124
  current division in output stage, 118
  operating principle, 116–119
  voltage-control loop, design, 124–125
single-phase thyristors, 232–237
  current commutation, L_s effect on, 235–237
  current harmonics, 235
  full-bridge, 232
  reactive power requirement, 235
  waveforms, 233
SITs, *See* Static Induction Transistors (SITs)
slip frequency, 181
slip speed, 181
SMES, *See* super-conducting magnetic energy storage (SMES)
soft-switching, 163–170
  in dc-dc converters, 163–170
  in switching power-poles, 165–169
solid-state switches, 249
space vector pulse-width-modulation (SV-PWM), 206–210, 223–229
  definition of space vectors, 224–226
  limit on amplitude V_s, 228
square-wave waveforms, 210–211
squirrel-cage rotor, 180
SSSC, *See* static synchronous series compensator (SSSC)
Static Induction Transistors (SITs), 22
static phase angle control, 260–261
static synchronous series compensator (SSSC), 259
super-conducting magnetic energy storage (SMES), 254
sustainable electric energy, power electronics in, 4–8
  electric-motor driven systems, 4–5
  energy conservation, 4–5
  lighting, 5
  renewable energy, 6–7
  strategic space and defense applications, 8
  transportation, 5–6
SV-PWM, *See* space vector pulse-width-modulation (SV-PWM)
switches
  justifying as ideal, 30
  switching frequency (f_s), 30
  switching loss, MOSFETs, 28–29
switching power-pole, 13–14
  in a buck DC-DC converter, 14–15
  in DC steady state, 38–42
    regulated switch-mode dc power supplies, 39
  design of/design considerations, 21–37
    capacitor selection, 31
    design tradeoffs, 32–33
    diodes selection, 30–31
    magnetic components, 31
    power diodes, 21–22
    power transistors, 21–22
    switching frequency, 30
    thermal design, 31–32
    transistors selection, 30–31
  and its duty-ratio control, 192

  - hard-switching in, 163–164
  - harmonics in the output of, 193
  - MOSFET in, 25
  - PWM of, 13
- switching-cycle-average, 13
- switch-mode conversion, 12–13
- switchmode dc power supplies, 141–152, *See also* forward converters; Full-bridge converters; half-bridge converters; push-pull converters
  - applications of, 141
  - electrical isolation, need for, 142
  - feedback controllers designing in, 74–97, *See also individual entry*
  - flyback converters, 142–145
  - transformer-isolated dc-dc converters, 142
- switch-mode dc-dc converters, 38–73
  - bi-directional switching power-pole, 61–62
  - Boost converter switching analysis, 45–50
  - Buck-Boost converter analysis, 50–56
  - Buck converter switching analysis, 43–45
  - Ćuk converters, 55–56
  - DC-DC converters regulation by PWM, 58–59
  - design, 38–73
  - interleaving of converters, 58
  - operating principles, 43
  - SEPIC converters, 54–55
  - simplifying assumptions, 42–43
  - switching analysis, 38–73
  - switching power-pole in DC steady state, 38–42
  - synchronous-rectified Buck converter, 57–58
  - topology selection, 56
  - worst-case design, 57
- switch-mode power electronics
  - applications, 172–187
    - in motor drives, 172–187
    - in power systems, 172–187
    - in uninterruptible power supplies, 172–187
  - utility applications of, 185–187
- synchronous Buck converter with ZVS, 166–168
- synchronous-rectified Buck converter, 57–58

T

- TCSC, *See* thyristor-controlled series capacitor (TCSC)
- THD, *See* total harmonic distortion (THD)
- three-phase diode-rectifier bridge, 110–113
- three-phase inverters, 204–211
  - over-modulation, 210–211
  - sine-PWM, 206
    - switching waveforms with, 207
  - space vector PWM (SV-PWM), 206
  - square-wave mode of operation, 210–211
- three-phase, Full-Bridge thyristors, 237–243
  - current harmonics, 239–240
  - L_s effect, 240–243
  - reactive power requirement, 239–240
- thyristor-based current-link HVDC transmission systems, 257–258
- thyristor-controlled series capacitor (TCSC), 259
- thyristors, 230–246, *See also* three-phase, Full-Bridge thyristors
  - phase-controlled, 232–237
  - primitive thyristor rectifier circuits, 231–232
  - single-phase, 232–237
- total harmonic distortion (THD), 99–103, 110
- transfer characteristic, MOSFETs, 27
- transformers, 136–139
  - classification of, 142
  - construction, 156
  - equivalent circuits of, 137–139
  - for a forward converter, 161
- transient inrush currents, avoiding, 113–114
- transmission and distribution (T&D) applications, 257–261
  - flexible AC transmission systems (FACTS), 258–261

transmission and distribution (T&D) applications (*continued*)
  high voltage DC (HVDC) transmission, 257–258
  series-connected devices, 259
  thyristor-based current-link HVDC transmission systems, 257–258
Transportation, 5–6
turn-off characteristic, MOSFETs, 27–28
turn-on characteristic, MOSFETs, 26–27
two-switch forward converters, 147–148

U
unified power flow controller (UPFC), 260–261
uninterruptible power supplies (UPS), 7–8, 184–185, 256
utility applications of power electronics, 7–8, 247–261
  categorizing power electronic systems, 248–250
    current-link systems, 250
    solid-state switches, 249
    voltage-link systems, 249–250
  distributed generation (DG) applications, 250–255, *See also individual entry*
  dual-feeders, 256
  dynamic voltage restorers (DVR), 256
  semiconductor devices, 248
  switch-mode power electronics, 185–187
  transmission and distribution (T&D) applications, 257–261
  uninterruptible power supplies (UPS), 256
utility input rectification using diode rectifiers, 98–115, *See also* diode rectifiers
  deleterious effects of harmonic distortion, 105–107
  displacement power factor (DPF), 103–105
  distortion, 99–107
  'front-end' of power electronic systems, 107
  harmonic guidelines, 105–107
  poor power factor, 105–107
  and power factor (PF), 103–105
  RMS value of distorted current, 99–103
  short-circuit current, 106
  total harmonic distortion (THD), 99–103
    Fourier analysis, obtaining harmonic components by, 101–103
  transient inrush currents at starting, means to avoid, 113–114
  utility supply, 106
utility supply, 106

V
voltage-link structure, 9–15, 249–250
  on load side convertor, 9, 11
  pulse-width modulation (PWM), 13–14
  switch-mode conversion, 12–13
  on utility side, 9

W
wind-electric systems, 7, 250–253
  doubly-fed, wound-rotor induction generators, 251
  induction generators, directly connected to grid, 251
  power electronics connected generator, 252

Z
zero voltage switching (ZVS), 165
  in MOSFET, 165
  synchronous buck converter with, 166–168